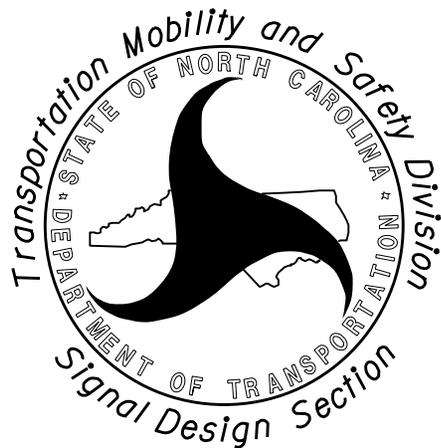


Design Manual

Signal Design Section



Part 1

Summary of Changes to the Signal Design Section Design Manual (July 2021)

General Changes

- Signals & Geometrics is now Signal Design Section
- Removed All Metric Measurement References
- Standards based on 2009 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) and incorporates Notice of Proposed Amendments (NPA) released in December 2020 if they are not in conflict with current MUTCD standards
- Most Sheets Reflect Update Date of 7-21
- Errata and Corrections Dated 12-21

Section 1: Controller and Software

- Removed References to 170 Software
- Updated to current local controller software being used: OASIS, ASC/3, SE-PAC, and Trafficware Apogee (formerly Naztec Apogee)
- Added list highlighting operational issues with various local controller software and where they are used

Section 2: Phasing

- Included Pedestrians in Phasing Orientation
- Added Additional Phasing Orientation for new Style Intersections including DDI and CFI
- Updated Phasing Diagrams for Backup Protect and Flashing Yellow Arrows
- Removed Dallas Phasing
- Added Alternate (TOD/Time of Day) Phasing Info

Section 3: Signal Heads

- Clarification on use of Flashing YELLOW ARROW and 5-Section *Doghouse* heads for both right and left turns
- Clarification on use of Right RED ARROW display
- Added Straight Through GREEN ARROW, U-Turn, and Bi-Modal signal displays
- Added Guidance for Protected/Permissive Dual Left Turns
- Modified some standard signal displays
 - Preferred Practice to use Flashing YELLOW ARROW displays
 - Use of ARROW displays for intersection approaches with no through movements

Design Manual Changes

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-12

PREFACE

A

SHEET 1 OF 3

Section 4: Loops and Detection

- Added High Speed Loop Placement Guidance for 35, 60, and 65 MPH approaches
- Guidance for Microwave and Video Detection

Section 5: Signal Plan Elements

- Updated Drawing Notes
- Removed Timing and Loop Charts for 170 software and Added Timing and Loops Charts for ASC/3 software
- Added Clearance Diagram for Superstreets and U-Turns
- Updated Clearance Time info for use with Flashing YELLOW ARROW left turn displays
- Updated Common Plan Symbols Legend
- Add Info for Naming and Numbering Plan Sheets and CADD Files
- Updated Signal Face ID Details
- Updated Misc. Format Items
 - Added NCBELS Block
 - NCDOT Approval Block
 - Plan Revision vs. Supersede

Section 6: Pedestrian Signal Heads and Crossings

- Added Pushbutton Guidance and Median Pushbuttons
- Added Leading Pedestrian Intervals (LPIs)
- Single Stage vs. 2-Stage and Multi-Stage Crossings
- Added Accessible Pedestrian Signal Heads

Section 7: Beacons

- Renamed from Flashers to Beacons
- Expanded Head Arrangement for Single Lane Intersection Beacon
- Clarified Distance for Loop Placement and Advance Signs for Actuated Beacons
- Added Loop Placement Guidance for 35, 60, and 65 MPH approaches
- Added Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon and Emergency Hybrid Beacon

Section 8: Signs

- Updated Signs used on Signal Plans

Design Manual Changes

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

PREFACE

A

SHEET 2 OF 3

Section 9: Pavement Markings

- Added Crosswalk and Stop Line guidance for:
 - Superstreets
 - Diverging Diamond Interchanges (DDIs)
 - Intersections with Medians and/or Islands

Section 10: (Wood and Metal) Signal Poles

- Updated Metal Pole Loading Schedules
- Added info for Metal Pole Numbering and Labeling on Plan Sheets
 - New and Reused Poles
 - Standard Case Strain Poles

Section 11: Traffic Counts

- Updated Years Shown in Traffic Counts
- Added Sheet for Cross Product Determination

Section 12: Bus Transit Signals

- Removed *Geometric Turn Lane Details*
- Created new section with Guidance for Bus Rapid Transit Signals

Section 13: Preemption

- Updated Preemption Charts to Include Exit Phase and Update Terms
- Removed 170 Software Charts
- Added Charts for SE-PAC, ASC/3, and Trafficware Apogee software
- Updated Ped Clear Before Preempt Time for Emergency Vehicle Preemption (EVP)
- Updated Preemption Signal Heads and Displays, Including Flashing YELLOW ARROW
- Added Info for Pre-Signal and Queue Cutter
- Added Discussion of Simultaneous vs. Advance Preemption and Differences in Timing

Section 14: Closed Loop Signal Systems

- Removed Section; May be replaced by a new section in a Future Revision

Design Manual Changes

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

PREFACE

A

SHEET 3 OF 3

Summary of Changes to the Signal Design Section Design Manual (February 2023)

Section 1: Controller and Software

- Added MAXTIME Software

Section 2: Phasing

- Errata and Corrections Dated 2-23

Section 3: Signal Heads

- Updated Signal Head Displays for Approaches with No Through Movement

Section 5: Signal Plan Elements

- Updated Notes
- Added Loop Chart for MAXTIME Software
- Added Timing Chart for MAXTIME Software
- Updated all Timing Charts to include LPIs

Section 6: Pedestrian Signal Heads and Crossings

- Updated use and timing for Leading Pedestrian Intervals (LPI)

Section 7: Beacons

- Clarified LPIs are normally not used with Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons (HAWK)
- Updated Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (HAWK) for newer/current version of SE-PAC software
- Updated Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon (HAWK) for newer/current version of SE-PAC software

Design Manual Changes

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2023-02

PREFACE

B

SHEET 1 OF 1

Summary of Changes to the Signal Design Section Design Manual (May 2024)

General Changes

- All sheets converted to a center format rather than alternating front and back alignment
- Manual converted to and updated using ORD (Open Roads Designer)
- Standards updated based on compliance with 2023 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)
- Modified reference date of most recent change to yyyy-mm format for all sheets
- Changes for May 2024 show 2024-05 update

Section 1: Controller and Software

- Updated softwares used by various signal systems statewide

Section 2: Phasing

- Labeled Phasing Diagrams (Case 2A, etc) for easier reference
- Added Alternate (TOD/Time of Day) Phasing Info for MAXTIME

Section 3: Signal Heads

- Program all signal displays for All Red Flashing Operation
- Modified or eliminated some standard case signal displays

Section 4: Loops and Detection

- Loop Extend and Delay inputs for MAXTIME shown in .1 seconds to mirror actual input on controller
- Microwave and Video (out of street) detection updated and now referred to "Non Intrusive" Detection

Section 5: Signal Plan Elements

- Updated Plan Notes
- Added List of Special MAXTIME features
- Modified Clearance Information: Opposing through phases (Phases 2+6 and 4+8) are now to have identical Yellow and Red times regardless of speed limit or presence of Flashing Yellow Arrows. Changes coincide with release of new Clearance Calculation worksheet dated 5/1/24.
- Updated Common Plan Symbols Legend

Design Manual Changes

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

PREFACE

C

SHEET 1 OF 2

Section 6: Pedestrian Signal Heads and Crossings

- Modify WALK Times based on MUTCD Guidance
- Added New Guidance for use of Leading Pedestrian Intervals (LPIs)
- Updated Guidance for use of Accessible Pedestrian Signals

Section 7: Beacons

- Added MAXTIME Example of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon and Emergency Hybrid Beacon
- Updated Preferred Sign for use with Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon
- No longer referred to as "HAWK"

Section 8: Signs

- Updated Signs used on Signal Plans, including adding signs required for Bicycle Signals

Section 10: (Wood and Metal) Signal Poles

- Updated info for Metal Pole Numbering and Labeling on Plan Sheets

Section 12: Bus Transit Signals

- Updated use of Signal Face Clearance Chart for BRT Signals

Section 13: Preemption

- Added EV and Railroad Preemption Charts for MAXTIME
- Updated Reference Charts for SE-PAC, ASC/3, and Trafficware Apogee software based on MAXTIME
- Updated Discussion of Advance Preemption and MAXTIME Operation

Section 14: Bicycle Signals

- Created new section for Application of Bicycle Signals

Design Manual Changes

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

PREFACE

C

SHEET 2 OF 2

Topic	Section	# Sheets	Topic	Section	# Sheets
Controller and Software	1.0	2	Pedestrian Signal Heads and Crossings		
Phasing			Pedestrian Heads and Timing	6.0	1
Numbering of NEMA Phases	2.0	8	Pedestrian Pedestals & Pushbuttons	6.1	2
Phasing Diagram Typical	2.1.1-2.1.7	22	Accessible Pedestrian Signal (APS)	6.2	1
Red Revert	2.2	1	Beacons		
Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing	2.3.1	1	Intersection Beacons	7.0	3
Alternate Phasing Diagrams	2.3.2	2	Warning Beacons	7.1	1
Alternate Phasing Loop Charts	2.3.3	4	Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons	7.2	6
Signal Heads			Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacons	7.3	6
Typical Numbering	3.0.1	1	Signs		
General Guidelines	3.0.2	8	Commonly Used Signs	8.0	3
Flashing Signal Heads	3.0.3	1	Lane-Use Control Signs	8.1	1
MUTCD Requirements	3.1	2	Pavement Markings		
Approach Displays and Alignment	3.2	28	Crosswalks	9.0	2
Loops and Detection			Stop Lines	9.1	2
Typical Numbering	4.0	1	(Wood and Metal) Signal Poles		
Loop Placement			Recommended Pole Placement	10.0	1
Main Street Thru Movements	4.1.1	4	Determining Elevation Difference	10.1.1	2
Permitted Only Left Turns	4.1.2	1	Pole Height Determination	10.1.2	3
Exclusive/Permitted Left Turns	4.1.3	2	Loading Schedules for Metal Poles	10.1.3	1
Exclusive Left Turns	4.1.4	1	Metal Pole Numbering and Labeling	10.2	3
Side Street Thru Movements	4.1.5	3	Traffic Counts		
Side Street Right Turns	4.1.6	1	Traffic Count Details	11.0	3
Presence Loops at Stop Lines	4.1.7	1	Cross Products	11.1	1
Loop Wire and Lead-in Calculations	4.2	2	Bus Transit Signals	12.0	2
Non-Intrusive Detection	4.3	4	Preemption		
Signal Plan Elements			Emergency Vehicle Preemption		
Drawing Notes	5.0	5	Phasing	13.0.1	1
Loop Chart Typical	5.1	6	Timing Charts	13.0.2	7
Timing Charts	5.2.1	7	Pushbutton Activated EVP	13.0.3	2
Change and Clearance Intervals	5.2.2	5	Railroad Preemption		
Volume Density Timing Example	5.2.3	1	Phasing	13.1.1	1
Common Drawing Symbols	5.3	1	Timing Charts	13.1.2	7
Signal Face I.D. Details	5.4	1	Signal Heads & Blankout Signs	13.1.3	10
Naming and Numbering Conventions	5.5.1	2	General Info	13.1.4	3
Misc. Drawing Format Items	5.5.2	5	Timing Overview	13.1.5	2
Plan Quantity Calculations	5.6	4	Bicycle Signals	14.0	2

Table of Contents

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2025-02

MAXTIME	OASIS	ASC/3	SE-PAC	Trafficware Apogee
Added Initial [VD-Loop Chart]	N/A	Use Added Initial [VD-Loop Chart]	N/A	Added Init. [VD-Loop Chart]
Added Initial [VD-Timing Chart]	Sec per Actuation [VD-Timing Chart]	Seconds/Actuation [VD-Timing Chart]	Added Initial [VD-Timing Chart]	Added Initial [VD-Timing Chart]
Advance Walk [LPI]	Advanced Walk [LPI]	Delay Green [LPI]	Advance Walk [LPI]	Green/Ped Delay [LPI]
Backup Prevent [Red Revert]	Backup Protect [Red Revert]	Backup Prevent [Red Revert]	N/A	Backup Protect [Red Revert]
Delay	Delay	Delay	Delay	Delay
Delay During Green	Full Time Delay	Green Delay (Type G Detector)	N/A	N/A
Dual Entry	Dual Entry	Dual Entry	Dual Entry	Dual Entry
Dynamic Max	Dynamic Max	Dynamic Max	Dynamic Max	Dynamic Max
Extend	Stretch	Extend	Extend (Stretch)	Extend
Max 1	Maximum Green	Maximum 1	Maximum 1	Maximum 1
Max Recall	Max Recall	Max Recall	Max Recall	Max Recall
Maximum Initial [VD]	Max Variable Initial [VD]	Maximum Initial [VD]	Maximum Initial [VD]	Maximum Initial [VD]
Minimum Gap [VD]	Minimum Gap [VD]	Minimum Gap [VD]	Minimum Gap [VD]	Minimum Gap [VD]
Minimum Initial	Min Green	Minimum Initial	Min Green	Min Green
Min Recall	Min Recall	Vehicle Recall	Min Recall	Min Recall
Non Lock Detector	Vehicle Call Memory	Locking Detector	Vehicle Call Memory	Lock Calls
Passage	Extension	Vehicle Extension	Passage Gap	Gap, Extension
Ped Clear	Don't Walk	Ped Clear	Pedestrian Clear	Pedestrian Clear
Ped Recall	Ped Recall	Ped Recall	Ped Recall	Ped Recall
Phase Omit	Phase Omit	Phase Omit	Phase Omit	Phase Omit
Red Clear	Red Clearance	Red Clear	Red Clear	Red Clear
Red Rest	Red Rest	Red Rest	N/A	Red Rest
Soft Recall	Soft Recall	Soft Recall	Soft Recall	Soft Recall
Switch	Switch	Cross Switch	Switch	Switch (Phase)
Time Before Reduction [VD]	Time Before Reduction [VD]	Time Before Reduction [VD]	Time Before Reduction [VD]	Time Before Reduction [VD]
Time to Reduce [VD]	Time to Reduce [VD]	Time to Reduce [VD]	Time to Reduce [VD]	Time to Reduce [VD]
Yellow Change	Yellow Clearance	Yellow Change Interval	Yellow Change	Yellow Clear

Controller and Software

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

1.0

SHEET 1 OF 2

2023-02

MAXTIME (by QFree)

- Standard NCDOT Signal Software
- Used on Isolated intersections and a majority of state operated signal systems
- Used in Fuquay-Varina, Gastonia, Knightdale, and Wake Forest Signal Systems in 170 cabinets
- Use only with 2070LX Controller

OASIS Software

- Designed exclusively for NCDOT
- Used in Asheville, Chapel Hill-Carrboro, Concord, Goldsboro, Jacksonville, Kinston, Rocky Mount, Salisbury, Wilmington, and Winston-Salem Signal Systems in 170 cabinets
- Not compatible with 2070LX Controller; Use 2070E Controller

ASC3

- Used in Burlington-Graham, Durham, Elizabeth City, Fayetteville, Greenville, and High Point Signal Systems in 170 cabinets
- Used in Cary Signal System with NEMA TS-2 cabinet and equipment
- Use with 2070LX Controllers

SE-PAC

- Used in Hickory and Raleigh Signal Systems in 170 cabinets
- No Full Time Delay Programming
- No Red Revert Programming
- No Red Rest Programming
- Cannot Modify Detector Inputs for Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing

Trafficware Apogee (Formerly Naztec Apogee)

- Used in Greensboro Signal System in 170 cabinet
- No Full Time Delay Programming
- Cannot Modify Detector Inputs for Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing

Controller and Software

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

1.0

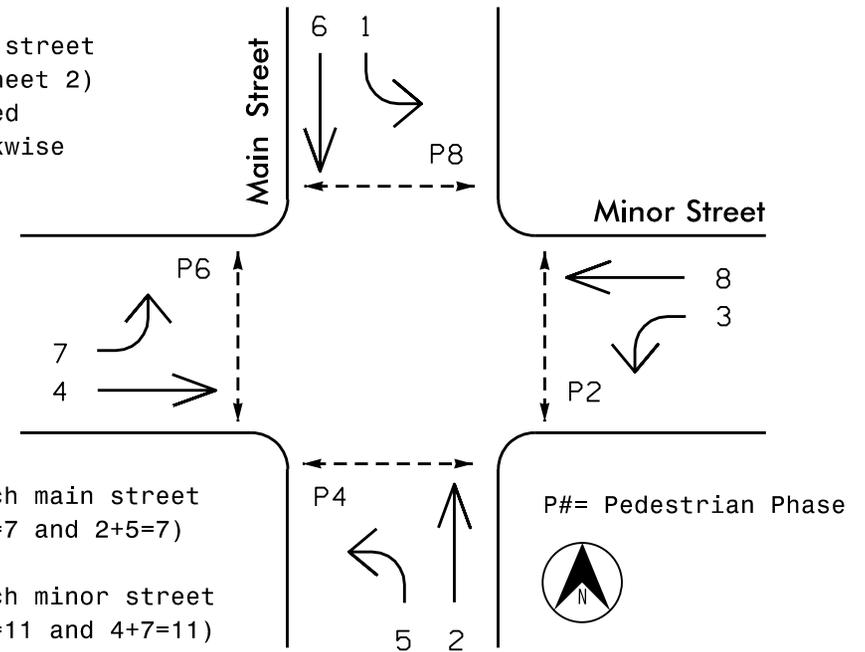
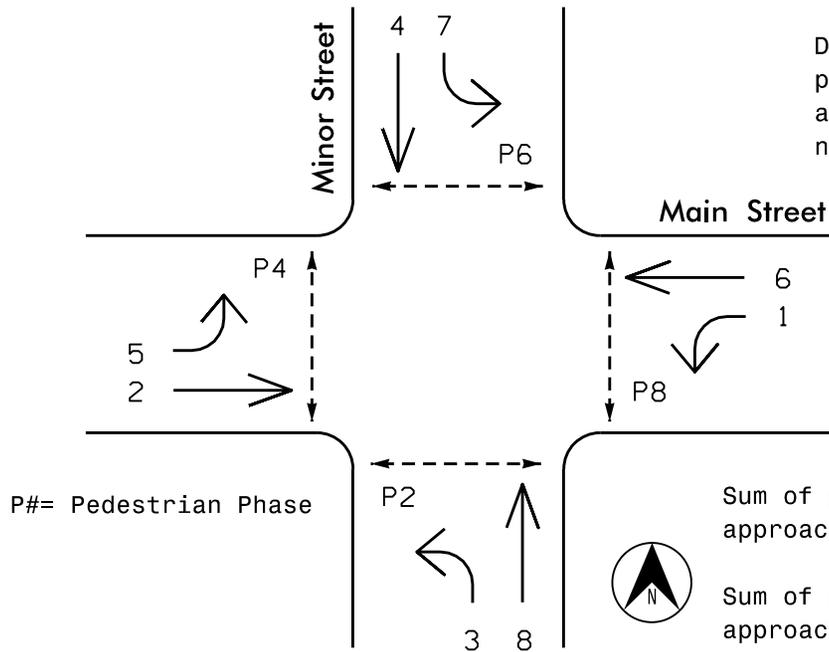
SHEET 2 OF 2

2024-05

Standard NEMA Orientation
Dual Ring Cabinet
Major Street Oriented East–West

Standard NEMA Orientation
Dual Ring Cabinet
Major Street Oriented North–South

Determine main street
phase 2 (see sheet 2)
and then proceed
numbering clockwise



Phase Numbering

- Phase 2 - Eastbound through movement
- Phase 4 - Southbound through movement
- Phase 6 - Westbound through movement
- Phase 8 - Northbound through movement

Pair turning movements with the through movements if an exclusive left turn phase (protected or protected/permissive) is not used. If location is being added to an existing system, match phase numbering to the system.

Phase Numbering

- Phase 2 - Northbound through movement
- Phase 4 - Eastbound through movement
- Phase 6 - Southbound through movement
- Phase 8 - Westbound through movement

Pair turning movements with the through movements if an exclusive left turn phase (protected or protected/permissive) is not used. If location is being added to an existing system, match phase numbering to the system.

Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

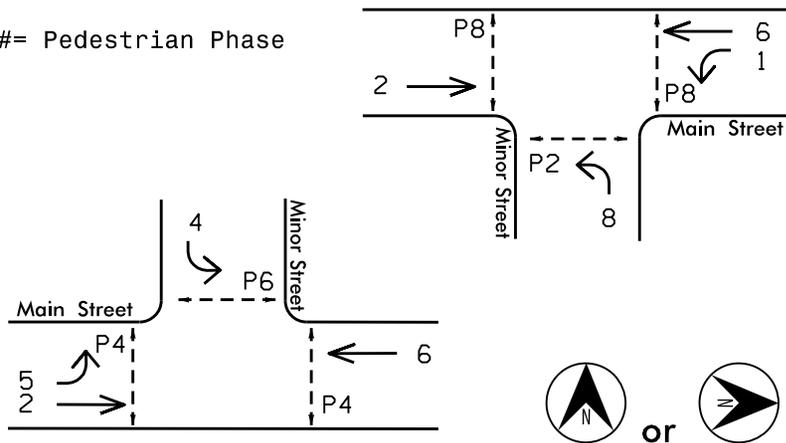
2.0

SHEET 1 OF 8

2021-07

Determining Movement Phase Numbers Tee Intersections

P# = Pedestrian Phase



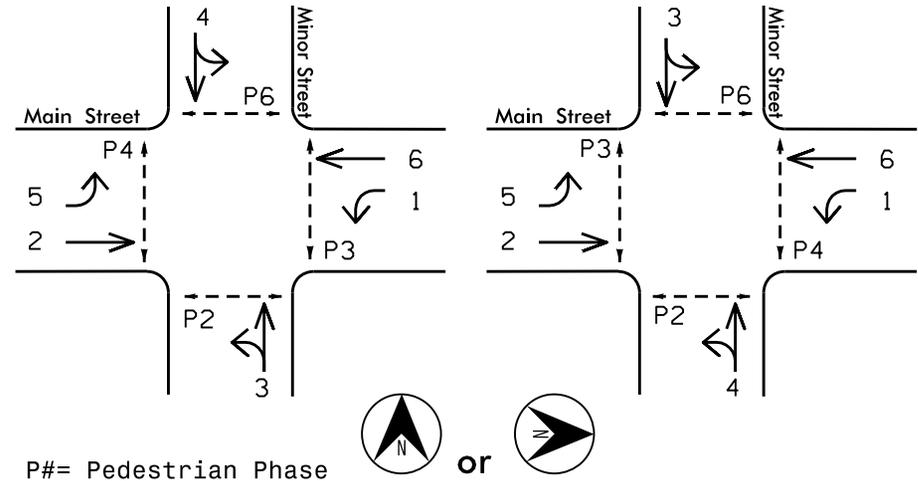
Phase Numbering

Movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1.

- Phase 2 - Eastbound or Northbound through movement
- Phase 4 - Southbound or Eastbound Stem of Tee movement
- Phase 6 - Westbound or Southbound through movement
- Phase 8 - Northbound or Westbound Stem of Tee movement

Pedestrian phases normally operate and are named with the adjacent parallel through movement.

Determining Movement Phase Numbers Split Side Streets



P# = Pedestrian Phase

Phase Numbering

Main street movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1.

For side street movement numbering:

- If one approach is desired to be serviced first, label it phase 3 and the other approach phase 4.
- If there is no desire for either approach to be serviced first, label phase 4 for the eastbound or southbound movement and phase 3 for the westbound or northbound movement.

Pedestrian phases normally operate and are named with the adjacent parallel through movement.

Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

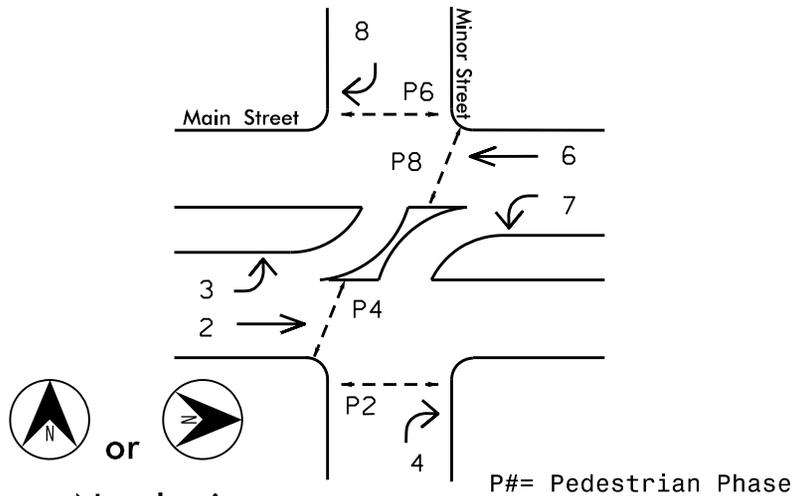
STD. NO.

2.0

SHEET 2 OF 8

2021-07

Determining Superstreet Phase Numbers Cross Intersections w/ "Leftovers"



Phase Numbering

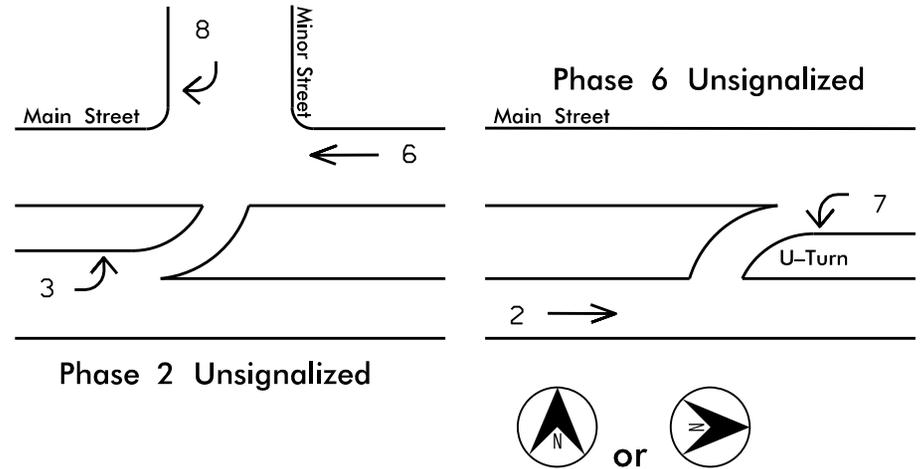
This convention may be required for use with some types of signal equipment and software

Main street through movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1.

- For left turn and side street movement numbering:
- Phase should be an odd number on the opposite side of NEMA barrier (3 or 7).
 - Sum of main street phases used at a superstreet signal should total 9 (2+7=9 or 3+6=9).
 - Program phases 3+8 and/or 4+7 for Dual Entry.
 - At a cross intersection, each "pair" of movements may be operated by separate controllers and cabinets to facilitate system coordination.

U-Turns may be permitted or prohibited as part of the left turn move and may vary by intersection.

Determining Superstreet Phase Numbers U-Turn Only and Tee Intersections



Phase 2 Unsignalized

Phase 6 Unsignalized

Phase Numbering

Main street through movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1.

No signal heads needed for through movement adjacent to left turn movement if there is no signalized interacting movement.

For left turn movement numbering:

- Phase should be an odd number on the opposite side of NEMA barrier (3 or 7).
- Sum of main street phases used at a superstreet signal should total 9 (2+7=9 or 3+6=9).
- Program phases 3+8 and/or 4+7 for Dual Entry.

Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

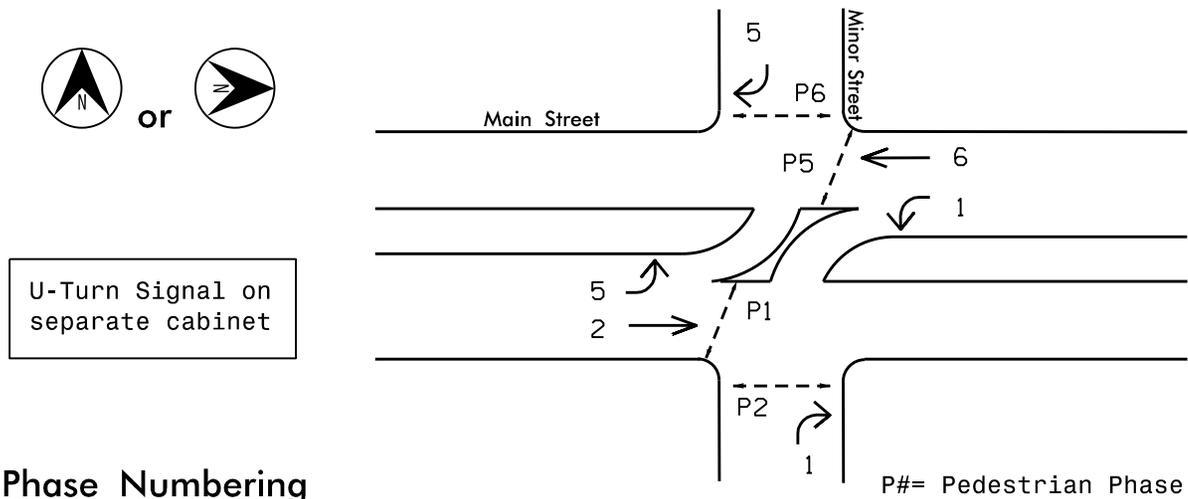
2.0

SHEET 3 OF 8

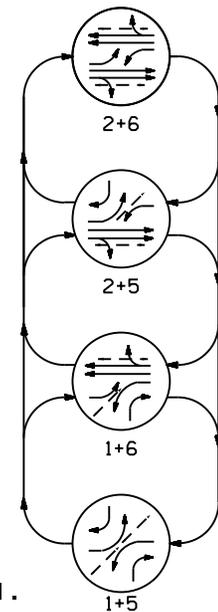
2024-05

Superstreet Phase Numbering Using One Cabinet Cross Intersections w/“Leftovers”

Some types of signal equipment and software will allow for both sides of a leftover at a superstreet with a cross intersection to operate and control the entire intersection with one controller and cabinet. The phasing does not need to cross the barrier or require special programming to maintain coordination. Any adjacent u-turn signals, if present, will need to operate on an independent cabinet and controller from the main crossover and be phased as shown on the previous sheet. When equipment allows and it is desirable to control both leftovers with one cabinet and controller, the phasing shown below may be used.



PHASING DIAGRAM



Phase Numbering

This convention may be used with some types of signal equipment and software.

Main street through movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1.

For left turn and side street movement numbering:

- Right turns are not required to be signalized. They can be STOP, YIELD, or free flow if design allows.
- Left turn and right turn overlap (if signalized) should be numbered the same phase. Phase should be an odd number that corresponds to traditional NEMA through phase (1 with 6) or (5 with 2).
- Operational phasing pairs are 2+6, 1+6, 2+5, and 1+5. Do not program phases for Dual Entry.

U-Turns may be permitted or prohibited as part of the left turn move and may vary by intersection.

Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.0

SHEET 4 OF 8

2021-07

Determining Movement Phase Numbers Reverse RCI – No Side Street Through Movements

Phase Numbering

Movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1 and as shown below:

Phase 2 - Eastbound or Northbound Through Movement
Phase 6 - Westbound or Southbound Through Movement

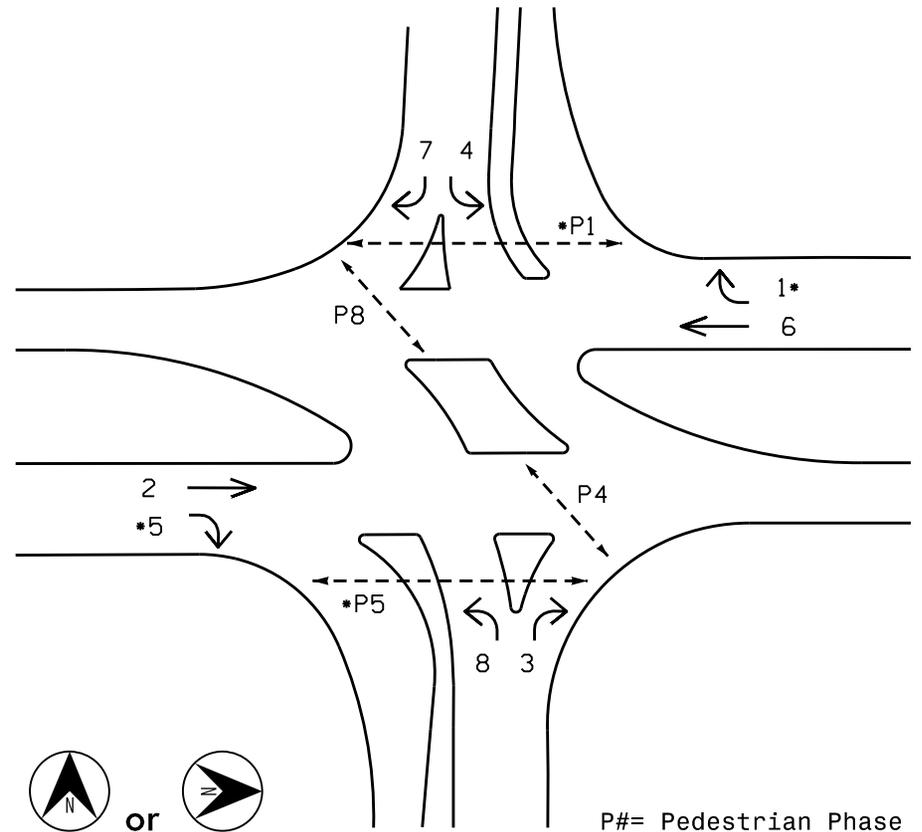
Phase 3 - Westbound or Northbound Right Turn
Phase 4 - Eastbound or Southbound Left Turn
Phase 7 - Eastbound or Southbound Right Turn
Phase 8 - Westbound or Northbound Left Turn

- Movements shown by Phases 1 and 5 may be unsignalized free flow if no pedestrian crosswalk is marked.
- If left turns are allowed off of main street, they should be phases 1 and 5 and the corresponding right turns shall operate with corresponding through phase.
- Do Not program any phase for Dual Entry.

Pedestrian movements:

- Pedestrian phases 4 and 8 should be designed as a 2 stage crossing.
- Pedestrian crossings across right turns (phase 1 and/or 5) could be unsignalized if those vehicle movements are operated as Yield or Free Flow movements.

* Phases 1 and 5 provide for a protected (exclusive) pedestrian crossing with no vehicle interactions. These could also operate with permissive phase 2 and 6 right turn interactions if desired. As noted above, phases 1 and 5 may also be used for main street left turn phases if needed.



Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

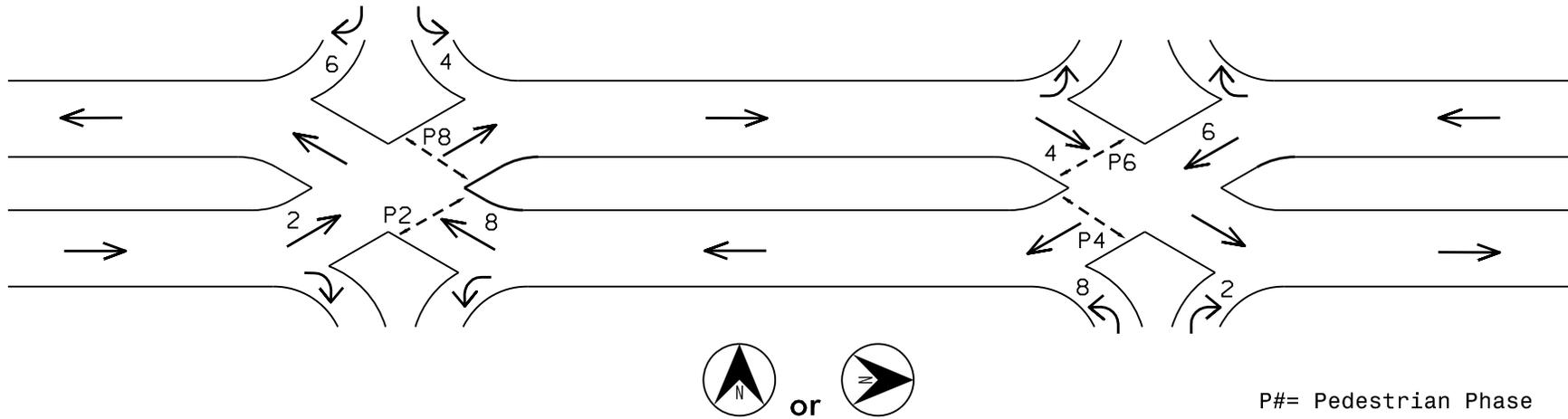
2024-05

STD. NO.

2.0

SHEET 5 OF 8

Determining Movement Phase Numbers Diverging Diamond Intersections



Phase Numbering

Movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1 and as shown below:

- Phase 2 - Eastbound or Northbound Entrance Crossover
- Phase 4 - Eastbound or Northbound Exit Crossover
- Phase 6 - Westbound or Southbound Entrance Crossover
- Phase 8 - Westbound or Southbound Exit Crossover

- Sum of phases used at a DDI crossover signal should total 10 (2+8=10 or 4+6=10).
- Each "pair" of crossover movements may be operated by separate controllers and cabinets to facilitate system coordination.
- All Phases should be programmed for Red Rest.
- Program phases 2+6 and/or 4+8 for Dual Entry as needed.

Ramp movements:

- Turning movements onto ramps are usually unsignalized.
- Movements from ramps may be signalized, free flow, or a STOP or YIELD condition based on individual design.
- If movements off ramps are signalized, number phases as shown.
- A Timed Overlap (TOL) or dummy phase may be necessary between normal phases to allow extra clearance time if distances between crossover and ramps are excessive.

Pedestrian phases normally operate and are named with the adjacent parallel through movement.

Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.0

SHEET 6 OF 8

Determining Movement Phase Numbers Continuous Flow Intersections (CFI)

Phase Numbering

Movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1 and as shown below:

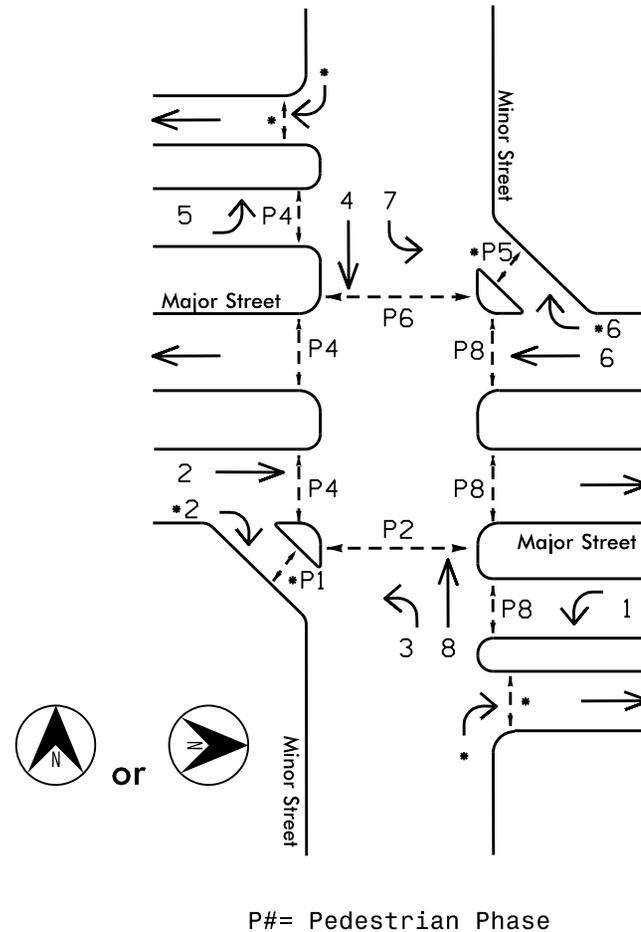
- Phase 1 - Major Street WB or SB Left Turn
- Phase 2 - Major Street EB or NB Through and Right Turn
- Phase 3 - Minor Street WB or NB Left Turn
- Phase 4 - Minor Street EB or SB Through Movement
- Phase 5 - Major Street EB or NB Left Turn
- Phase 6 - Major Street WB or SB Through and Right Turn
- Phase 7 - Minor Street EB or SB Left Turn
- Phase 8 - Minor Street WB or NB Through Movement

Phases 2 and 6 Through Movements shall operate as concurrent overlaps during phase 1 and/or phase 5.

* Indicates may also be an unsignalized (Yield or Free Flow) movement

Pedestrian Movements

- Crossings on minor street right turns onto ramps for major street are usually unsignalized.
- Crossings of major street right turn bays may be signalized or a Yield condition based on individual intersection design.
- Pedestrian crossings for phase 4 and/or phase 8 may need to be multi-stage, but should be designed to provide as efficient a pedestrian crossing as possible.



Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

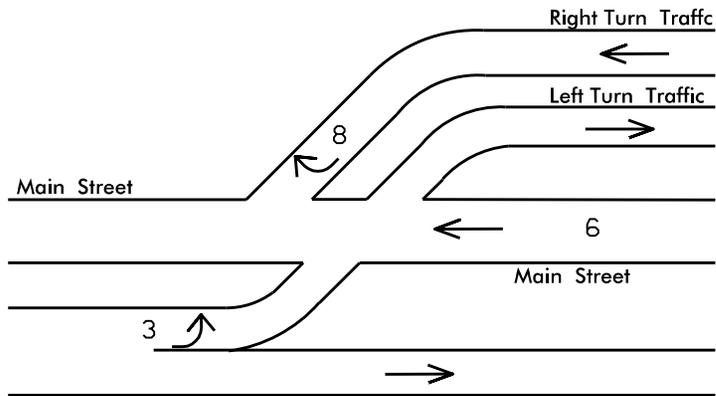
STD. NO.

2.0

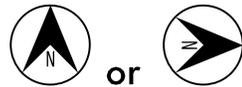
SHEET 7 OF 8

2021-07

Continuous Flow Intersections (CFI) Crossover Before Intersection



Phase 2 Unsignalized



Phase Numbering

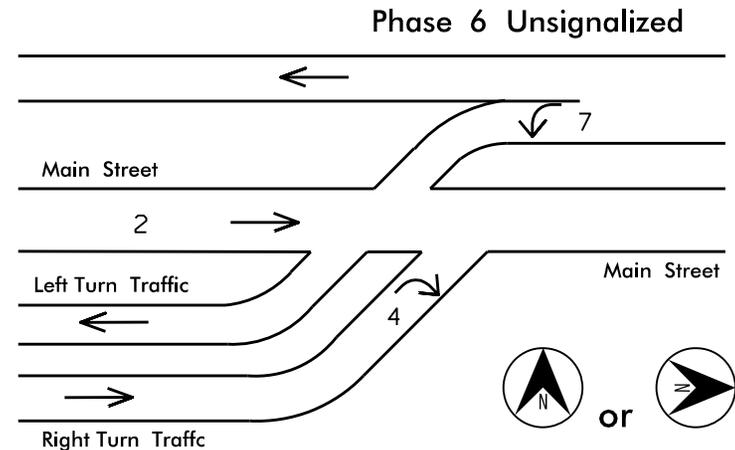
No signal heads needed for (EB/NB) through movement adjacent to left turn crossover movement.

For crossover movement numbering:

- Main street through movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1. SB/WB Through movement should be main phase 6.
- Left Turn Phase should be an odd number on the opposite side of NEMA barrier (3).
- Right Turn may be Yield or Free Flow based on roadway design. If signalized, it should be a side street through phase compatible with main street left turn phase (8).
- Program phases 3+8 for Dual Entry.

Each crossover may be operated by separate controllers and cabinets to facilitate coordination.

Continuous Flow Intersections (CFI) Crossover Before Intersection



Phase 6 Unsignalized



Phase Numbering

No signal heads needed for (WB/SB) through movement adjacent to left turn crossover movement.

For crossover movement numbering:

- Main street through movement numbering will conform to standard NEMA phasing shown on Sheet 1. NB/EB Through movement should be main phase 2.
- Left Turn Phase should be an odd number on the opposite side of NEMA barrier (7).
- Right Turn may be Yield or Free Flow based on roadway design. If signalized, it should be a side street through phase compatible with main street left turn phase (4).
- Program phases 4+7 for Dual Entry.

Each crossover may be operated by separate controllers and cabinets to facilitate coordination.

Numbering of NEMA Phases

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.0

SHEET 8 OF 8

2021-07

CASE 2A
2-Phase
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

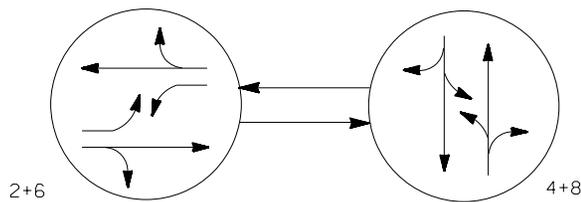


TABLE OF OPERATION

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE		
	2 + 6	4 + 8	FLASH

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 2B
2-Phase
Tee Intersection
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

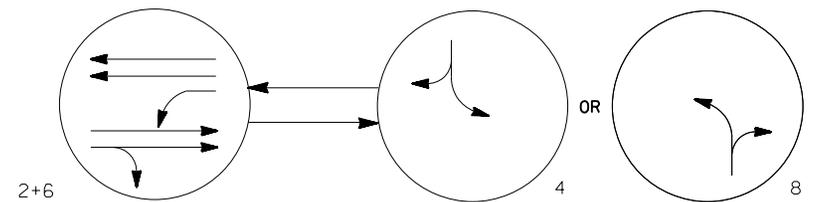


TABLE OF OPERATION

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE		
	2 + 6	*	FLASH

* 4 or 8 (Minor Street)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 2-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

CASE 3A
3-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected or Protected/Permissive
at Cross Intersection
Without Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

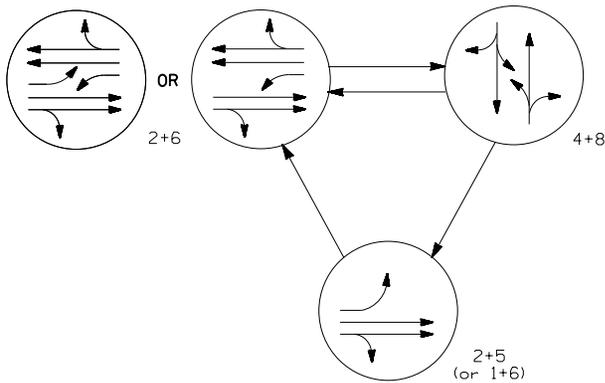


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	*	2+6	4+8	

Use appropriate omit note(s)

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 3B
3-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected or Protected/Permissive
at Cross Intersection
With Flashing Yellow Arrow
OR With Backup Protection

PHASING DIAGRAM

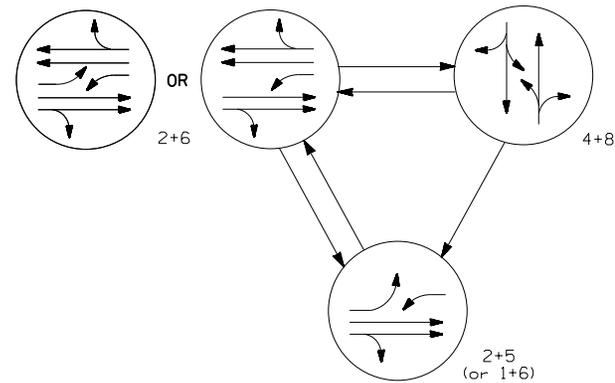


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	*	2+6	4+8	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s) OR Backup Protection (Red Revert) notes

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 3-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.2

SHEET 1 OF 3

CASE 3C
3-Phase
Minimum Recall
Split-Side Street
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

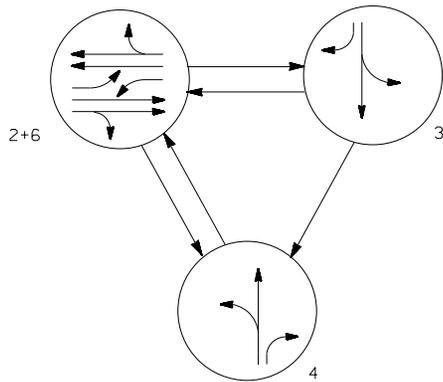


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	2+6	3	4	

Use appropriate phase reversal note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 3D
3-Phase
Soft Recall
Protected or Protected/Permissive
at Intersection
With Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

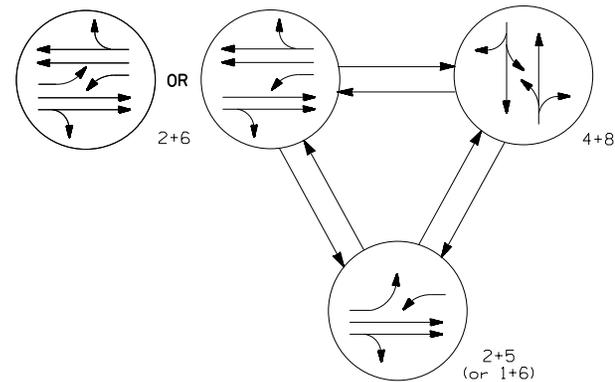


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	*	2+6	4+8	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 3-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.2

SHEET 2 OF 3

CASE 3E
3-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected or Protected/Permissive
at Tee Intersection
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

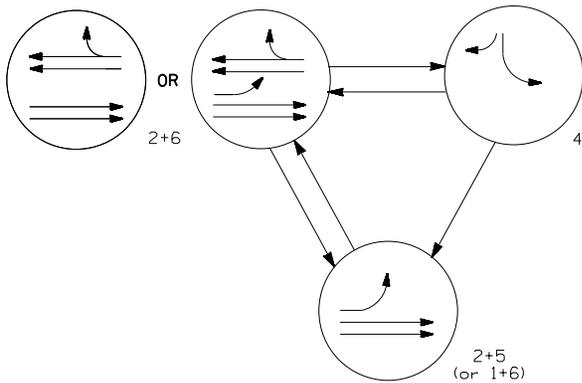


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	*	2+6	4	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 3F
3-Phase
Minimum Recall
Lagging Left Operation
Protected or Protected/Permissive
at Tee Intersection
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrow

PHASING DIAGRAM

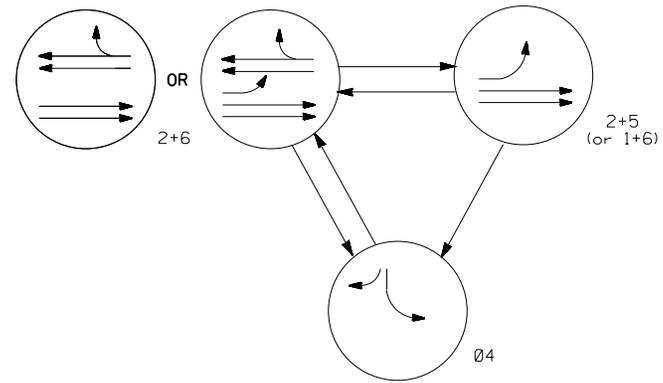


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	2+6	*	4	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 3-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.2

SHEET 3 OF 3

CASE 4A

4-Phase

Minimum Recall

Protected or Protected/Permissive Main Street

Split-Side Street

Without Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

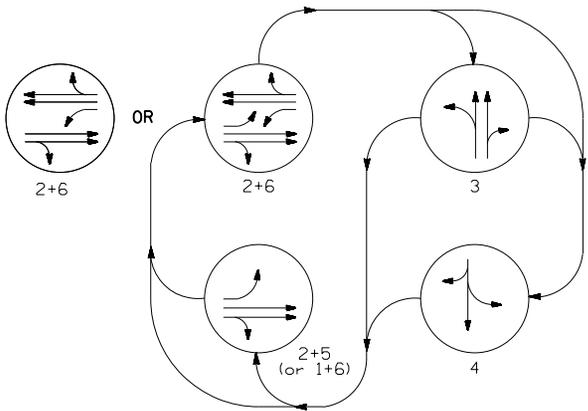


TABLE OF OPERATION					
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				FLASH
	*	2 + 6	3	4	

Use appropriate omit and phase reversal note(s)

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 4B

4-Phase

Minimum Recall

Protected or Protected/Permissive Main Street

Split-Side Street

With Flashing Yellow Arrows

OR With Backup Protection

PHASING DIAGRAM

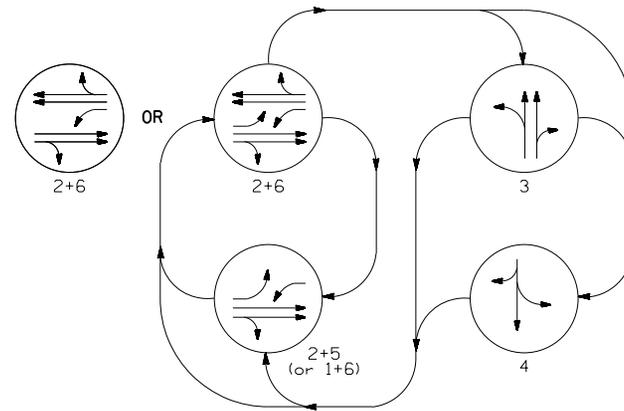


TABLE OF OPERATION					
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				FLASH
	*	2 + 6	3	4	

Use appropriate lead/lag OR Backup Protection (Red Revert) and phase reversal note(s)

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 4-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.3

SHEET 1 OF 4

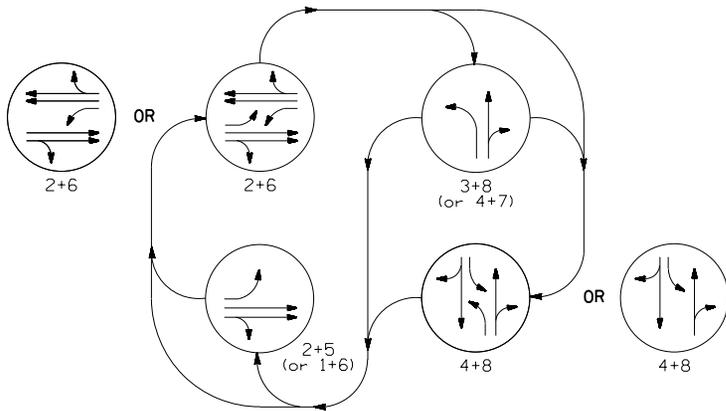
CASE 4C

4-Phase

Minimum Recall

**Protected or Protected/Permissive Main Street
Protected/Permissive Side Street
Without Flashing Yellow Arrows**

PHASING DIAGRAM



Use appropriate omit note(s)

TABLE OF OPERATION

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				FLASH
	*	2 + 6	*	4 + 8	

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)
** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

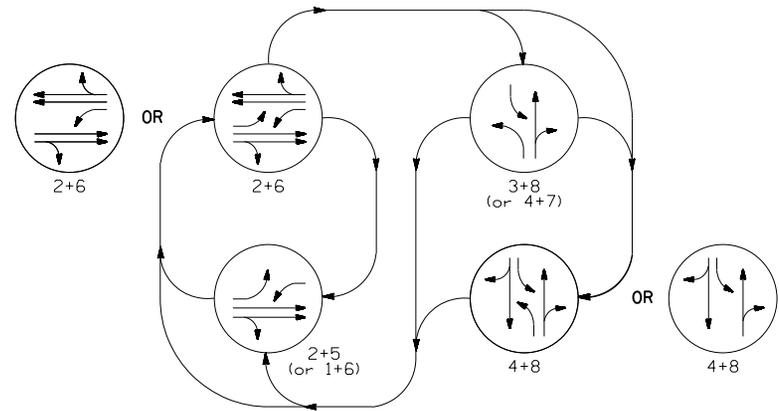
CASE 4D

4-Phase

Minimum Recall

**Protected or Protected/Permissive Main Street
Protected or Protected/Permissive Side Street
With Flashing Yellow Arrows
OR With Backup Protection**

PHASING DIAGRAM



Use appropriate lead/lag OR Backup Protection (Red Revert) and phase omit note(s)

TABLE OF OPERATION

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				FLASH
	*	2 + 6	*	4 + 8	

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)
** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 4-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

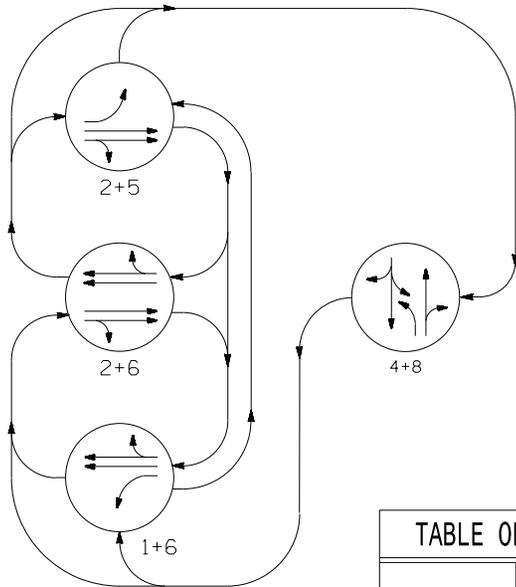
2.1.3

SHEET 2 OF 4

2024-05

CASE 4E
4-Phase
Minimum Recall
Lead-Lag Operation

PHASING DIAGRAM



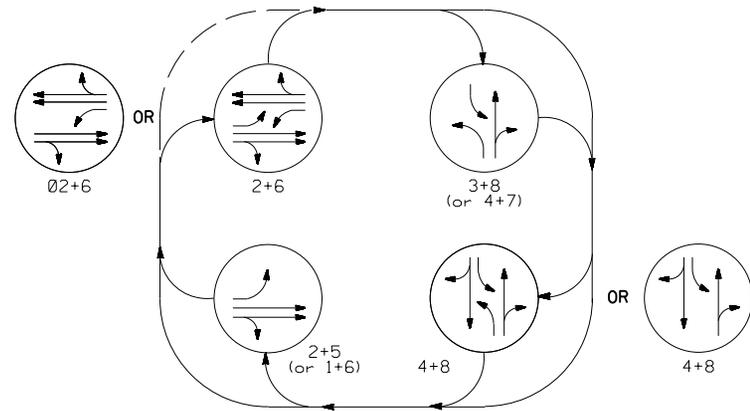
Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

TABLE OF OPERATION					
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				FLASH
	1 + 6	2 + 6	2 + 5	4 + 8	

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 4F
4-Phase
Soft Recall
Protected or Protected/Permissive Main Street
Protected or Protected/Permissive Side Street
With Flashing Yellow Arrows
OR With Backup Protection

PHASING DIAGRAM



Use appropriate lead/lag OR Backup Protection (Red Revert) note(s)

TABLE OF OPERATION					
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				FLASH
	* 2 + 6	* 3 + 8	4 + 8	2 + 5	

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)
 ** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 4-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.1.3

SHEET 3 OF 4

2024-05

CASE 4G
4-Phase
Soft Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Split-Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM

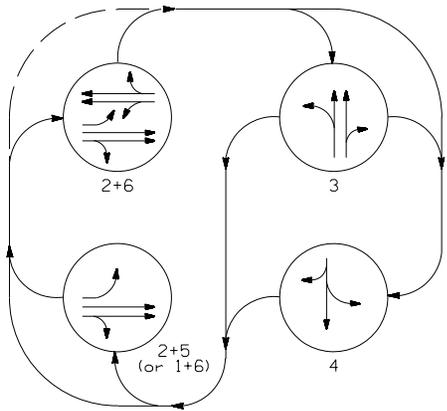


TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	*	2 + 6	3	

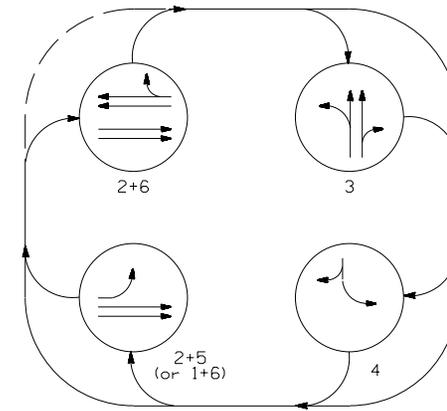
*Use appropriate omit note(s)
and phase reversal note(s)*

* 02+5 or 01+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE
SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE
PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 4H
4-Phase
Soft Recall
Protected Main Street
Split-Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM



*Phase 3
approach is
one-way only*

TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			FLASH
	*	2 + 6	3	

*Use appropriate lead/lag
and phase reversal note(s)*

* 2+5 or 1+6 (Major Street Lefts)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE
SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE
PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 4-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.3

SHEET 4 OF 4

CASE 5A
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Without Flashing Yellow Arrows
Without Backup Protection

PHASING DIAGRAM

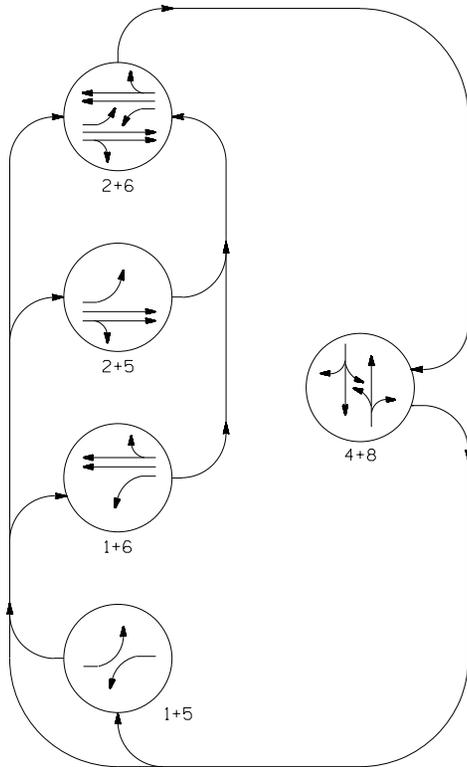


TABLE OF OPERATION						
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	

Use appropriate omit note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 5B
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Without Flashing Yellow Arrows
With Backup Protection

PHASING DIAGRAM

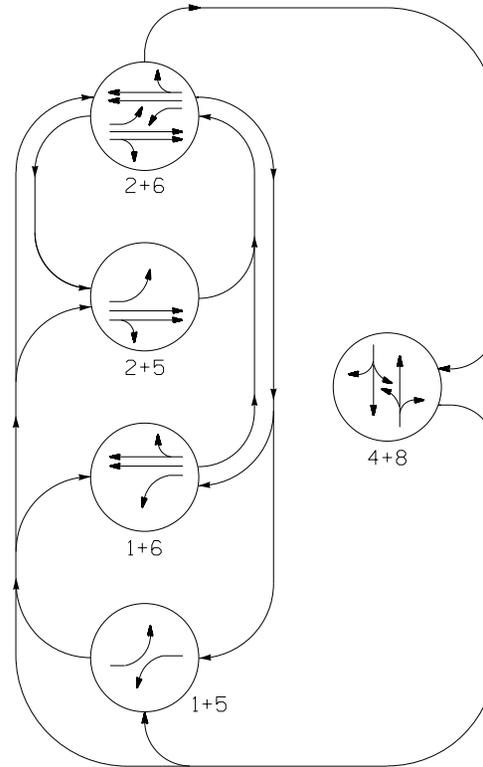


TABLE OF OPERATION						
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	

Use backup protect note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 5-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.4

SHEET 1 OF 4

CASE 5C
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
With Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

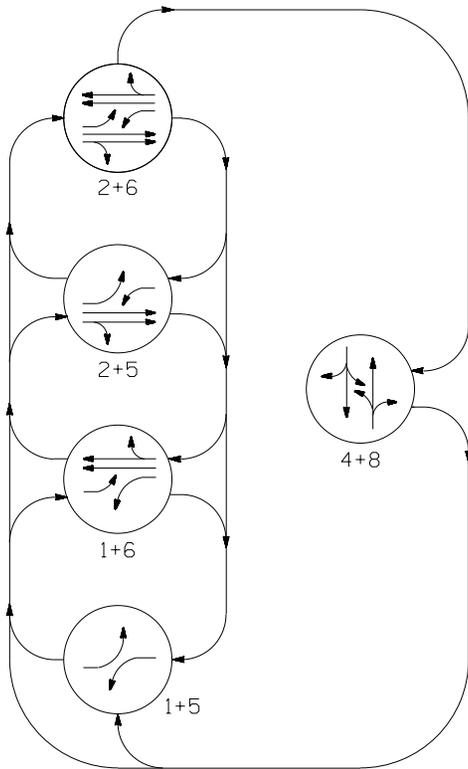


TABLE OF OPERATION						
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 5D
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected Main Street

PHASING DIAGRAM

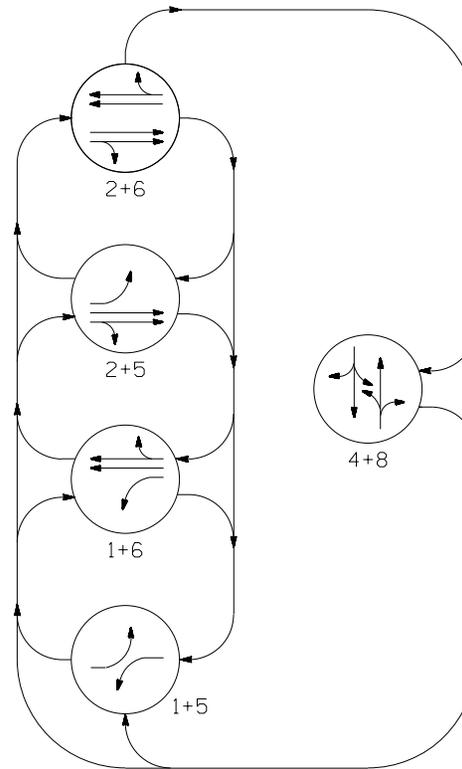


TABLE OF OPERATION						
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 5-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.4

SHEET 2 OF 4

CASE 5E
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Lead-Lag Operation Main Street
Protected/Permissive Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM

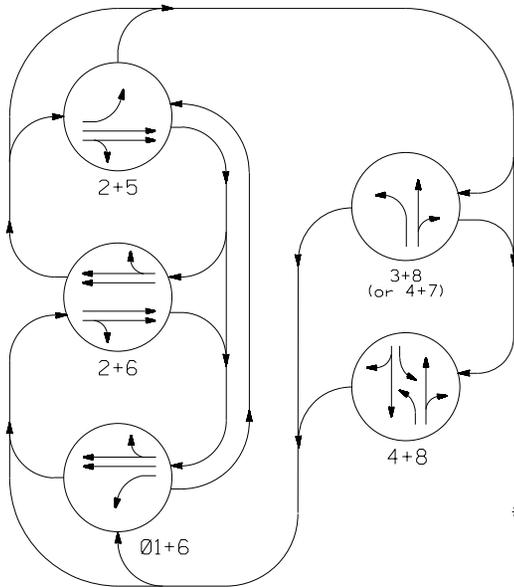


TABLE OF OPERATION					
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				
	1 + 6	2 + 6	2 + 5	* * *	4 + 8

** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

*Use appropriate lead/lag,
 phase omit, and/or
 phase reversal note(s)*

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 5F
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Lead-Lag Operation Main Street
Split Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM

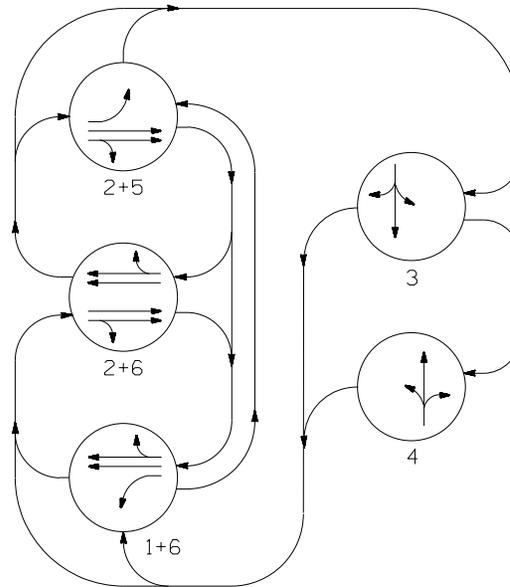


TABLE OF OPERATION					
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				
	1 + 6	2 + 6	2 + 5	3	4

*Use appropriate lead/lag
 and phase reversal note(s)*

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 5-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.4

SHEET 3 OF 4

CASE 5G
5-Phase
Soft Recall
Protected Main Street
OR Protected/Permissive Main Street
With Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

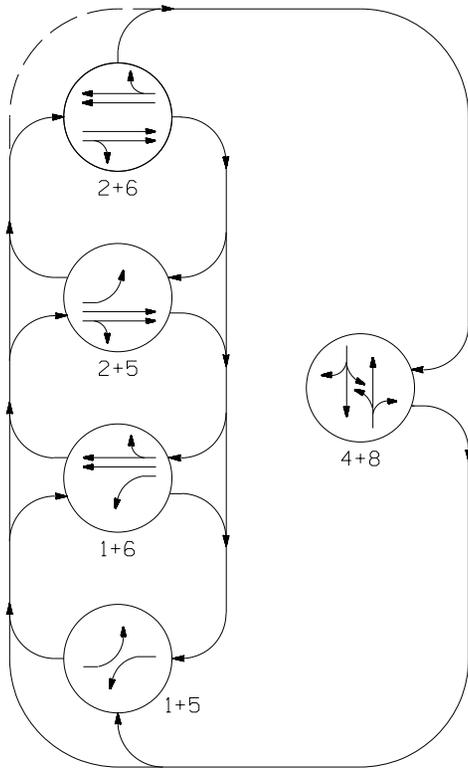


TABLE OF OPERATION						
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	

Use appropriate lead/lag note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 5H
5-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected or Protected/Permissive Side Street
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

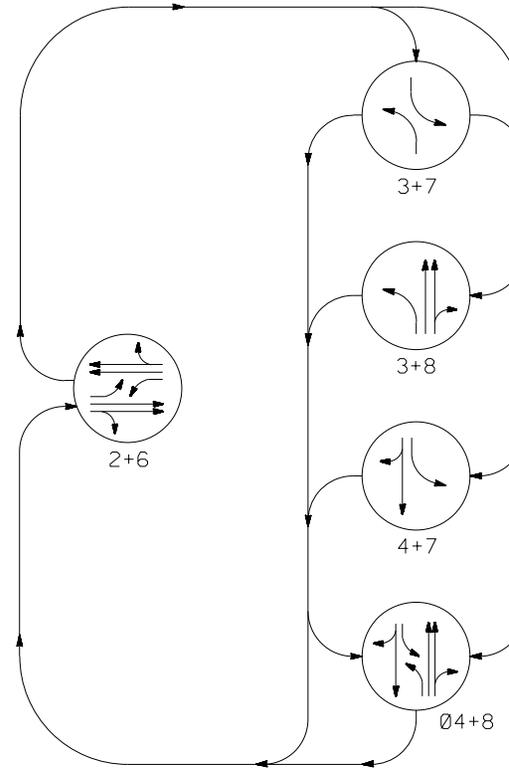


TABLE OF OPERATION						
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					FLASH
	2 + 6	3 + 7	3 + 8	4 + 7	4 + 8	

Use appropriate lead/lag or phase omit note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 5-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.4

SHEET 4 OF 4

CASE 6A
6-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Split Side Street
Without Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

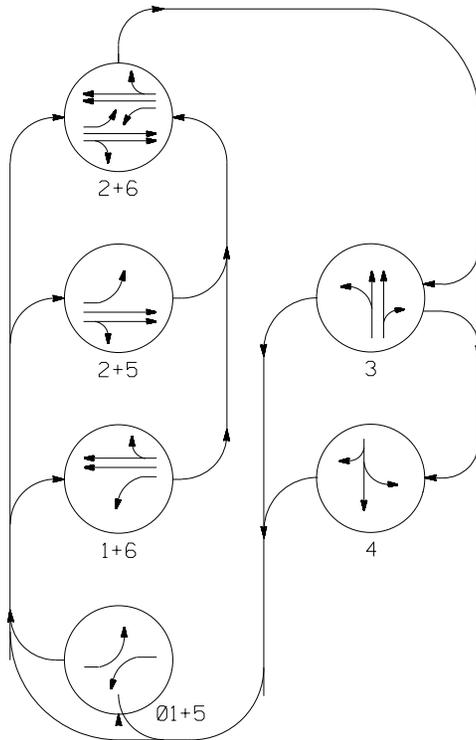


TABLE OF OPERATION							
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE						FLASH
	1+5	1+6	2+5	2+6	3	4	

Use appropriate omit and phase reversal note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 6B
6-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Protected/Permissive Side Street
Without Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

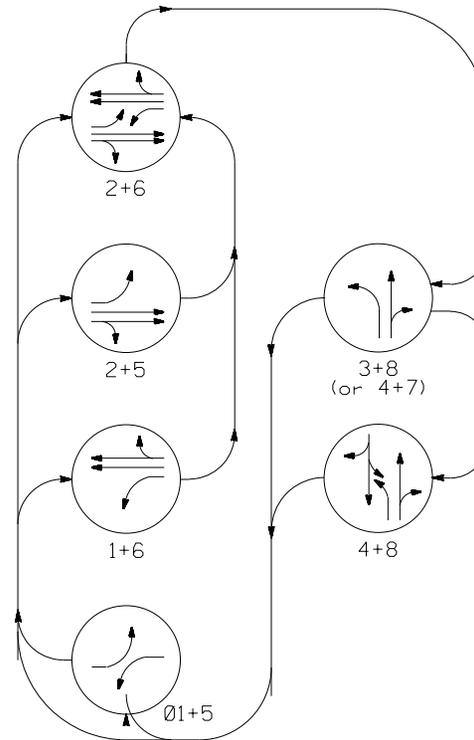


TABLE OF OPERATION							
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE						FLASH
	1+5	1+6	2+5	2+6	* * *	4+8	

** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

Use appropriate omit note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 6-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.5

SHEET 1 OF 4

CASE 6C
6-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Split Side Street
With Red Revert

PHASING DIAGRAM

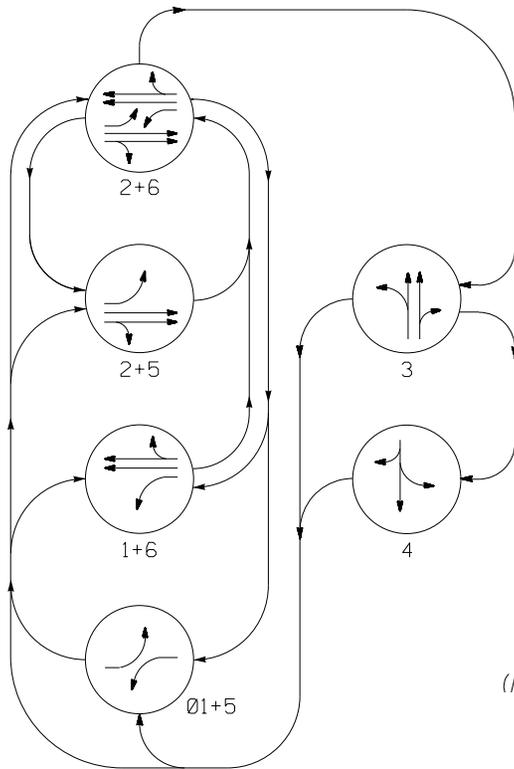


TABLE OF OPERATION							
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE						FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	3	4	

Use appropriate Backup Protection (Red Revert) and phase reversal note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 6D
6-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Protected/Permissive Side Street
With Red Revert

PHASING DIAGRAM

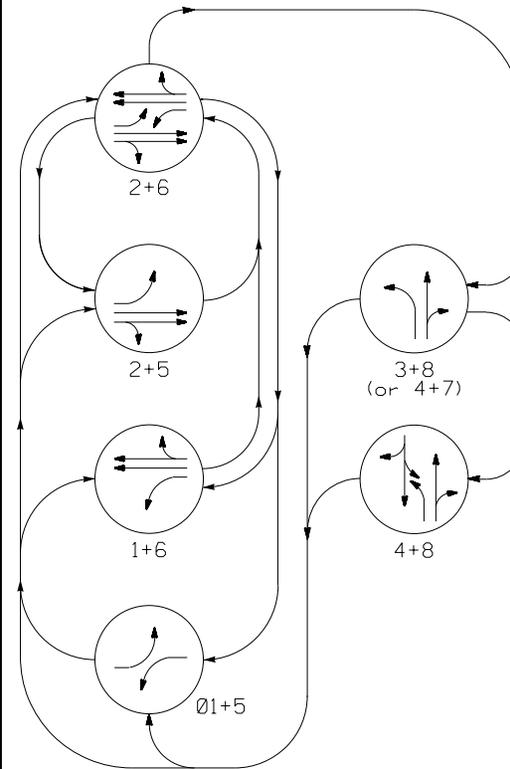


TABLE OF OPERATION							
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE						FLASH
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	* + *	4 + 8	

** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

Use appropriate Backup Protection (Red Revert) and phase omit note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 6-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.5

SHEET 2 OF 4

CASE 6E
6-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected Main Street
OR Protected/Permissive Main Street
With Flashing Yellow Arrows
Split Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM

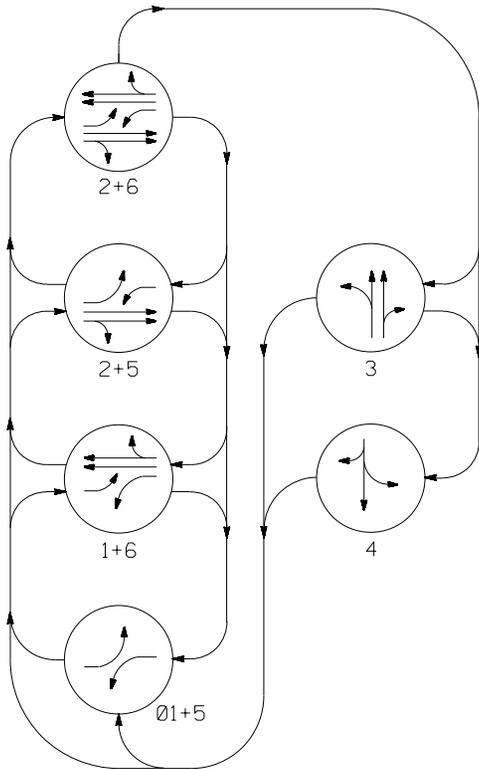


TABLE OF OPERATION		PHASE					
		1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	3	4
SIGNAL							
FACE							

Use appropriate lead/lag and phase reversal note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 6F
6-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected Main Street
OR Protected/Permissive Main Street
With Flashing Yellow Arrows
Protected/Permissive Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM

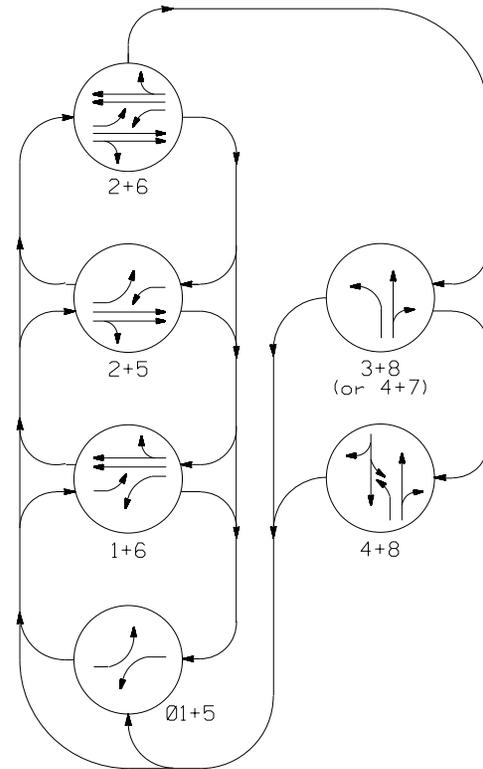


TABLE OF OPERATION		PHASE					
		1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	* + *	4 + 8
SIGNAL							
FACE							

** 3+8 or 4+7 (Minor Street Lefts)

Use appropriate lead/lag and/or phase omit note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 6-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.
2.1.5
SHEET 3 OF 4

**CASE 8A
8-Phase**

**Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
Without Flashing Yellow Arrows
Protected or Protected/Permissive Side Street**

PHASING DIAGRAM

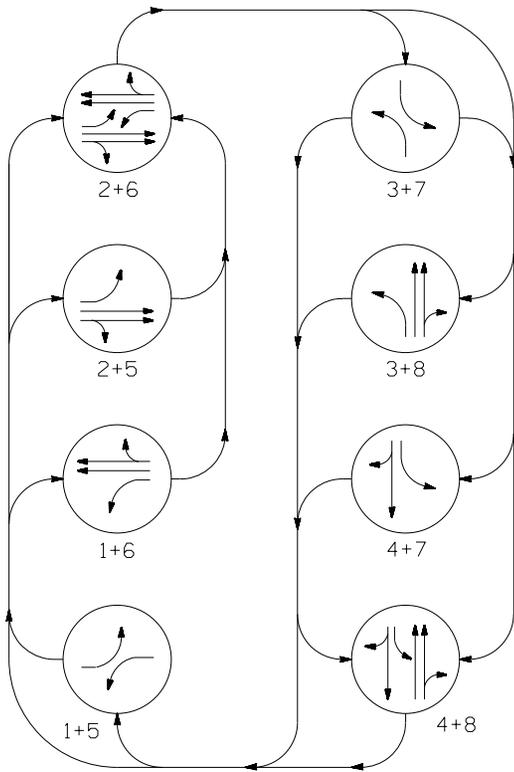


TABLE OF OPERATION									
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE								
	1+5	1+6	2+5	2+6	3+7	3+8	4+7	4+8	FLASH

Use appropriate omit note(s)

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

**CASE 8B
8-Phase**

**Minimum Recall
Protected/Permissive Main Street
With Backup Protection
Protected or Protected/Permissive Side Street**

PHASING DIAGRAM

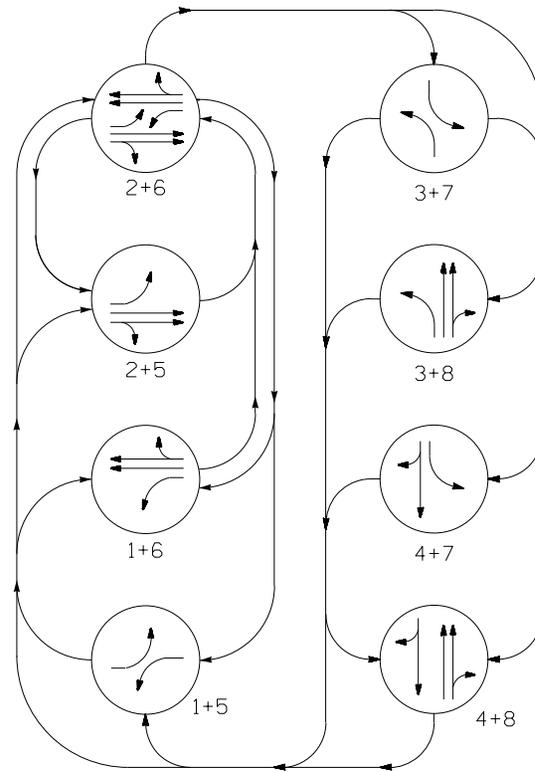


TABLE OF OPERATION									
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE								
	1+5	1+6	2+5	2+6	3+7	3+8	4+7	4+8	FLASH

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 8-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

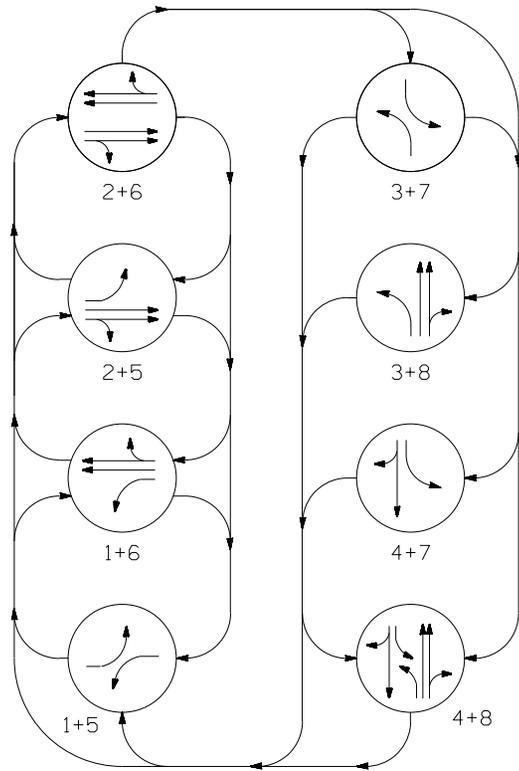
STD. NO.

2.1.7

SHEET 1 OF 4

CASE 8G
8-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected Main Street
Protected/Permissive Side Street
With or Without Flashing Yellow Arrows

PHASING DIAGRAM

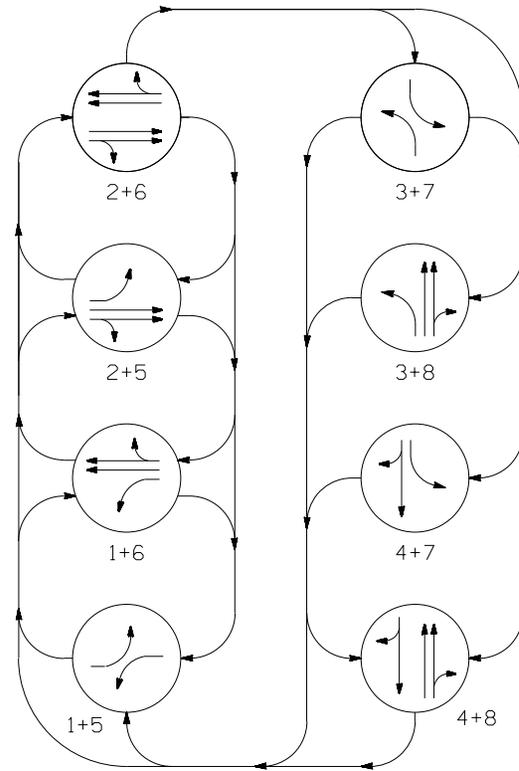


SIGNAL FACE		PHASE								FLASH
		1+5	1+6	2+5	2+6	3+7	3+8	4+7	4+8	

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

CASE 8H
8-Phase
Minimum Recall
Protected Main Street
Protected Side Street

PHASING DIAGRAM



SIGNAL FACE		PHASE								FLASH
		1+5	1+6	2+5	2+6	3+7	3+8	4+7	4+8	

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

Phasing Typical: 8-Phase Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.1.7

SHEET 4 OF 4

Red Revert Backup Protection

Yellow Trap and Dynamic Backup Control

A "yellow trap" occurs when a traffic signal cycles directly from concurrent through phases to a fully protected phase opposing a permitted phase (also known as "backing up"). This situation is avoided in a signal design whenever possible. Typically, phase omits or forcing the signal to cycle through the side street (even if there are no vehicle calls) to serve the protected phase have been used to protect against a "yellow trap."

Backup Protection (Red Revert/Backup Prevent)

Backup Protection is a feature that allows the signal to cycle from a permissive left turn phase on the main street to a protected phase and avoid a "yellow trap." In 2070 OASIS and MAXTIME software, it is known as Red Revert. In ASC/3 software, it is known as Backup Prevent. Backup Protection simulates an all red "dummy" phase by clearing the through phase(s) to red for a brief interval before cycling to the adjacent protected left turn phase and then returning to green again; the opposing through phase will stay red for the duration of the protected turning phase.

The time that the adjacent through phase displays red before returning to green is a function of the backup protect time. Typically the backup protect time is programmed to (at least) 5 seconds to avoid the appearance of improper operation.

Conditions for Use

1. Used primarily with 2070 OASIS, ASC/3, and MAXTIME Software
2. Cannot be used with older NEMA TS-1, TS-2, 170, 2033, or other 2070 software (such as SE-PAC or Trafficware Apogee)
3. Used only on the main street (phases 2+6)
4. May be used when there is one or two protected/ permissive phases (1 and/or 5) on the main street
5. Use in conjunction with 5-section (doghouse) heads or where left turn phase has only one opposing lane.
6. Use in place of phase omit and clearing through the side street.
7. Do NOT use with Railroad Preemption if the main street is the approach that crosses the tracks and is used in the Track Clearance Phase.

When Used On Plans:

- Typically set red revert time for phase 2 and/or phase 6 to 5.0 seconds.
- Default red revert time for all other phases is 2.0 seconds.
- Use the following note on plans:
Enable backup protect for phase 2 (and/or 6) to allow the controller to clear from phase 2+6 to phase 2+5 (and/or 1+6) by progressing through an all red display.

Red Revert Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.2

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing Notes

Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing is a useful tool when a protected turn mode is required during certain times of day, but the signal may operate in a permissive mode at other times of the day. While Alternate Phasing options may be shown on the signal plan, it is not required that any or all of them be used, or how long they are used. The use of Alternate Phasing should be at the discretion of the Division Traffic Engineer. This discretion may be delegated to the local municipal traffic engineer if the signal operates as part of a municipal signal system.

Phasing Designation

The Default Phasing is always the least restrictive mode. Normally all permissive movements are allowed during this phasing. Even though the use of permissive turns is encouraged, never restrict phasing so that only permissive phases are served and the ability to serve a protected turn phase during a cycle if needed is disabled.

The number and need for alternate phases may vary. Most commonly, the alternate phase restricts permissive left turns to a protected only mode. This may be for one, any, or all turn phases. One phasing program may restrict permissive left turns on all approaches. A second phasing program may allow protected/permissive lefts on the side street but restrict permissive lefts on the main street. Another phasing program may allow protected/permissive lefts on the main street but restrict permissive lefts on the side street. Alternate phasing may used for only one approach on a street; one approach may be protected only while the other approach operates in a permissive (or protected/permissive) mode. Another phasing program may allow for the use of an exclusive pedestrian phase during certain hours. If more than one alternate phase program is used at an intersection, they should be numbered in a sequence from least restrictive to most restrictive.

When an alternate phase is used, the signal head should be set to flash based on its default phase. The flashing operation of a signal head does not change based a Alternate Phasing (Time of Day) plan.

Preemption Operation

If Alternate Phasing is utilized at a location with (railroad or emergency) preemption, this may also affect the operation of the signal during preemption. It may be necessary to provide Alternate Phasing diagrams for the Preemption phasing in addition to the Preemption phasing based on Default phasing operation.

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

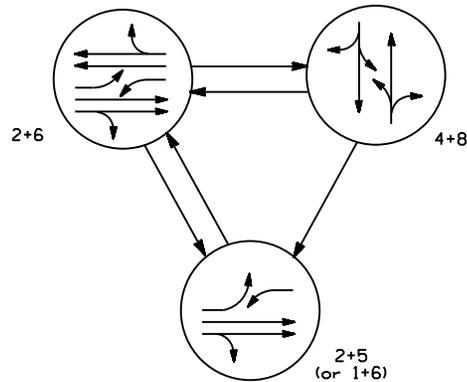
2.3.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

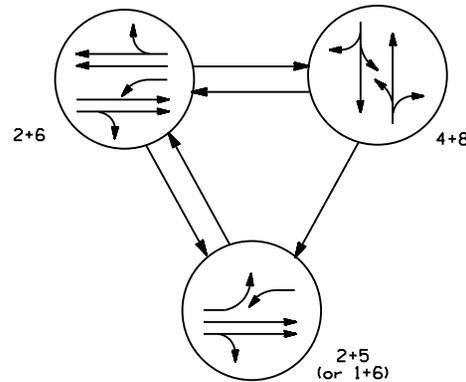
2021-07

**3 Phase
Protected/Permissive Left One Direction
Permissive Only Left Other Direction**

DEFAULT PHASING DIAGRAM



ALTERNATE PHASING DIAGRAM



Phase 5 may be lagged (Phase 1 if 1+6 is used)

THIS ASSUMES A 4-SECTION FYA IS USED FOR THE LEFT TURN ON ONE APPROACH (PHASE 5) AND A 3-SECTION FYA IS USED FOR THE LEFT TURN ON THE OTHER APPROACH OF MAIN STREET

NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

DEFAULT PHASING TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			
	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	FLASH
51	←	← F Y	←R	←R
61	F Y	F Y	←R	←R

ALTERNATE PHASING TABLE OF OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			
	2 + 5	2 + 6	4 + 8	FLASH
51	←	←R	←R	←R
61	F Y	F Y	←R	←R

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

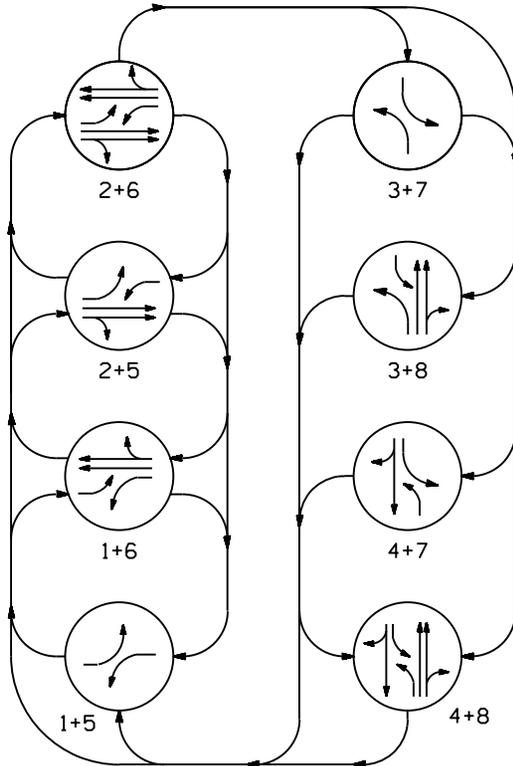
2.3.2

SHEET 1 OF 2

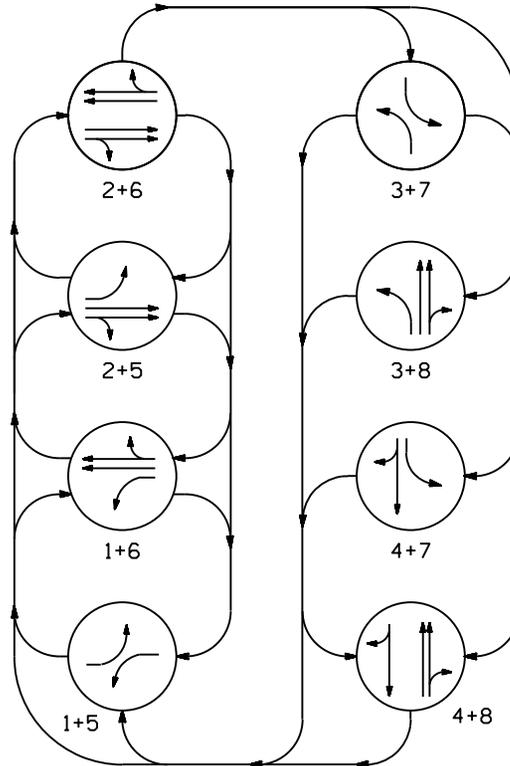
2024-05

**8 Phase
Protected/Permissive Default Phasing
Protected Only Alternate Phasing**

DEFAULT PHASING DIAGRAM



ALTERNATE PHASING DIAGRAM



NOTE: TRAFFIC MOVEMENTS ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE PURPOSES ONLY

**DEFAULT PHASING
TABLE OF OPERATION**

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE								
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	3 + 7	3 + 8	4 + 7	4 + 8	FLASH
11	←	←	F _Y	F _Y	→	→	→	→	→
31	→	→	→	→	←	←	F _Y	F _Y	→
51	←	F _Y	←	F _Y	→	→	→	→	→
71	→	→	→	→	←	F _Y	←	F _Y	→

**ALTERNATE PHASING
TABLE OF OPERATION**

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE								
	1 + 5	1 + 6	2 + 5	2 + 6	3 + 7	3 + 8	4 + 7	4 + 8	FLASH
11	←	←	→	→	→	→	→	→	→
31	→	→	→	→	←	←	→	→	→
51	←	→	←	→	→	→	→	→	→
71	→	→	→	→	←	→	←	→	→

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.3.2

SHEET 2 OF 2

2024-05

MAXTIME with 170 Cabinet

MAXTIME DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART												
DETECTOR					PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	CALL PHASE	DELAY TIME	EXTEND TIME	EXTEND	ADDED INITIAL	CALL	DELAY DURING GREEN	NEW CARD
1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	15.0 **	-	X	-	X	-	-
					6 #	3.0	-	X	-	X	X	-
1B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	1	15.0	-	X	-	X	-	X
2A	6X6	420	5	X	2	-	-	X	X	X	-	X
3A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	3	15.0 *	-	X	-	X	-	X
					8 #	-	-	X	-	X	-	X
4A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	4	-	-	X	-	X	-	X
5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	15.0 *	-	X	-	X	-	X
					2 #	3.0	-	X	-	X	X	X
6A	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	-	-	X	X	X	-	-
7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	7	15.0 **	-	X	-	X	-	X
					4 #	3.0	-	X	-	X	-	X
8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	10.0	-	X	-	X	-	X

Reduce for Clip Delay During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing
 Delay During Green During Permissive Phase Only

Disable Delay/No Clip During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing
 No Clip Delay During Permissive Phase

Disable Delay/No Clip During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing
 Delay During Green During Permissive Phase Only

Reduce for Clip Delay During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing
 Clip Delay During Permissive Phase

* Disable Delay During Alternate Phasing Operation.
 ** Reduce Delay to 3 Seconds During Alternate Phasing Operation.
 # Disable Phase Call For Loop(s) During Alternate Phasing Operation.

See Std. 5.1, Sheet 1 for Full Loop Detector Programming Chart Information

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

2.3.3

SHEET 1 OF 5

2070 OASIS with 170 Cabinet

OASIS 2070 LOOP & DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART												
INDUCTIVE LOOPS					DETECTOR PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	PHASE	CALLING	EXTENSION	FULL TIME DELAY	STRETCH TIME	DELAY TIME	SYSTEM LOOP	NEW CARD
1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	Y	Y	-	-	15 **	-	-
					6 #	Y	Y	Y	-	3	-	-
1B	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	1	Y	Y	-	-	15	-	Y
2A/S1	6X6	420	5	Y	2	Y	Y	-	-	-	Y	Y
3A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	3	Y	Y	-	-	15 *	-	Y
					8 #	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	Y
4A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	4	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	Y
5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	5	Y	Y	-	-	15 *	-	Y
					2 #	Y	Y	Y	-	3	-	Y
6A	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-
7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	7	Y	Y	-	-	15 **	-	Y
					4 #	Y	Y	-	-	3	-	Y
8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	8	Y	Y	-	-	10	-	Y

Reduce for Clip Delay During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

Full Time Delay During Permissive Phase Only

Disable Delay/No Clip During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

No Clip Delay During Permissive Phase

Disable Delay/No Clip During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

Full Time Delay During Permissive Phase Only

Reduce for Clip Delay During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

Clip Delay During Permissive Phase

* Disable Delay During Alternate Phasing Operation.

** Reduce Delay to 3 Seconds During Alternate Phasing Operation.

Disable Phase Call For Loop(s) During Alternate Phasing Operation.

See Std. 5.1, Sheet 2 for Full Loop Detector Programming Chart Information

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION

TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.3.3

SHEET 2 OF 5

2024-05

2070 ASC/3

ASC/3 DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART												
DETECTOR					PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	PHASE	CALLING	EXTEND TIME	DELAY TIME	USE ADDED INITIAL	TYPE	SYSTEM LOOP	NEW CARD
1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	Yes	-	15 **	-	S	-	-
					6 #	Yes	-	3	-	G	-	-
1B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	1	Yes	-	15	-	S	-	X
2A/S1	6X6	420	5	X	2	Yes	-	-	X	N	X	X
3A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	3	Yes	-	15 *	-	S	-	X
					8 #	Yes	-	-	-	S	-	X
4A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	4	Yes	-	-	-	S	-	X
5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	Yes	-	15 *	-	S	-	X
					2 #	Yes	-	3	-	G	-	X
6A	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	Yes	-	-	X	N	-	-
7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	7	Yes	-	15 **	-	S	-	-
					4 #	Yes	-	3	-	S	-	X
8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	Yes	-	10	-	S	-	X

Reduce for Clip Delay During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

Full Time Delay During Permissive Phase Only

Disable Delay/No Clip During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

No Clip Delay During Permissive Phase

Disable Delay/No Clip During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

Full Time Delay During Permissive Phase Only

Reduce for Clip Delay During Alternate (Protected Only) Phasing

Clip Delay During Permissive Phase

* Disable Delay During Alternate Phasing Operation.

** Reduce Delay to 3 Seconds During Alternate Phasing Operation.

Disable Phase Call For Loop(s) During Alternate Phasing Operation.

NOTE: The operation of Alternate (TOD) Phasing for ASC/3 software is the same for both a 170 platform and the NEMA TS-2 platform used in the Cary Signal System. The individual charts are different, but the same programming principles apply.

See Std. 5.1, Sheet 3 (170 Cabinet) or Sheet 4 (NEMA Cabinet) for Full Loop Detector Programming Chart Information

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.3.3

SHEET 3 OF 5

2024-05

SE-PAC 2070

SE-PAC 2070 LOOP & DETECTOR UNIT INSTALLATION CHART																					
INDUCTIVE LOOPS						DETECTOR PROGRAMMING															
LOOP NO.	SIZE (ft)	TURNS	DIST. FROM STOP LINE (ft)	NEW	EXISTING	ASSIGNED PHASE	TIMING		OPERATION MODE								SWITCH	SYSTEM LOOPS	STATUS		
							DELAY	EXTEND (STRETCH)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7			NEW	EXISTING	
									VEHICLE	PEDESTRIAN	1 CALL	STOP A	STOP B	PROT/PER LEFT	PROT/PER THROUGH	AND					
1A	6X40	2-4-2	0	-	X	1	5 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
1B	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	1	15 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
2A/S1	6X6	5	420	X	-	2	- SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-	X	-
3A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	3	5 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
4A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	4	- SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
5A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	5	5 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
6A	6X6	5	300	-	X	6	- SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
7A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	7	3 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
8A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	8	10 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-

NOTE: SE-PAC software cannot be programmed for variable phasing or Full Time Delay of the detector loops. When Alternate (TOD) Phasing is used, the detector loop should not call or extend the permissive phase; it should only be programmed to call and extend the protected turn phase with a 5 second delay. This 5 second delay serves to provide a clip delay for the loop, if applicable. Even if no clip delay is required, the 5 second delay serves to provide a brief delay prior to calling the protected phase during protected/permissive operation (normally 15 seconds).

See Std. 5.1, Sheet 5 for Full Loop Detector Programming Chart Information

Alternate Phasing Operation

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.3.3

SHEET 4 OF 5

2024-05

Trafficware Apogee 2070

LOOP & DETECTOR UNIT INSTALLATION CHART													
TRAFFICWARE APOGEE SOFTWARE 2070 CONTROLLER													
INDUCTIVE LOOPS					DETECTOR PROGRAMMING								
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	PHASE	SWITCH (PHASE)	DELAY TIME	STRETCH TIME	CALLING	EXTENSION	ADDED INIT.	SYSTEM LOOP	NEW CARD
1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	-	5	-	X	X	-	-	-
1B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	1	-	15	-	X	X	-	-	X
2A/S1	6X6	300	5	X	2	-	-	-	X	X	X	X	X
3A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	3	-	5	-	X	X	-	-	X
4A	6X40	0	5	X	4	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	X
5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	-	5	-	X	X	-	-	X
6A	6X6	300	EXIST	-	6	-	-	-	X	X	X	-	-
7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	7	-	5	-	X	X	-	-	X
8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	-	10	-	X	X	-	-	X

NOTE: Trafficware Apogee software cannot be programmed for variable phasing or Full Time Delay of the detector loops. When Alternate (TOD) Phasing is used, the detector loop should not call or extend the permissive phase; it should only be programmed to call and extend the protected turn phase with a 5 second delay. This 5 second delay serves to provide a clip delay for the loop, if applicable. Even if no clip delay is required, the 5 second delay serves to provide a brief delay prior to calling the protected phase during protected/permissive operation (normally 15 seconds).

See Std. 5.1, Sheet 6 for Full Loop Detector Programming Chart Information

Alternate Phasing Operation

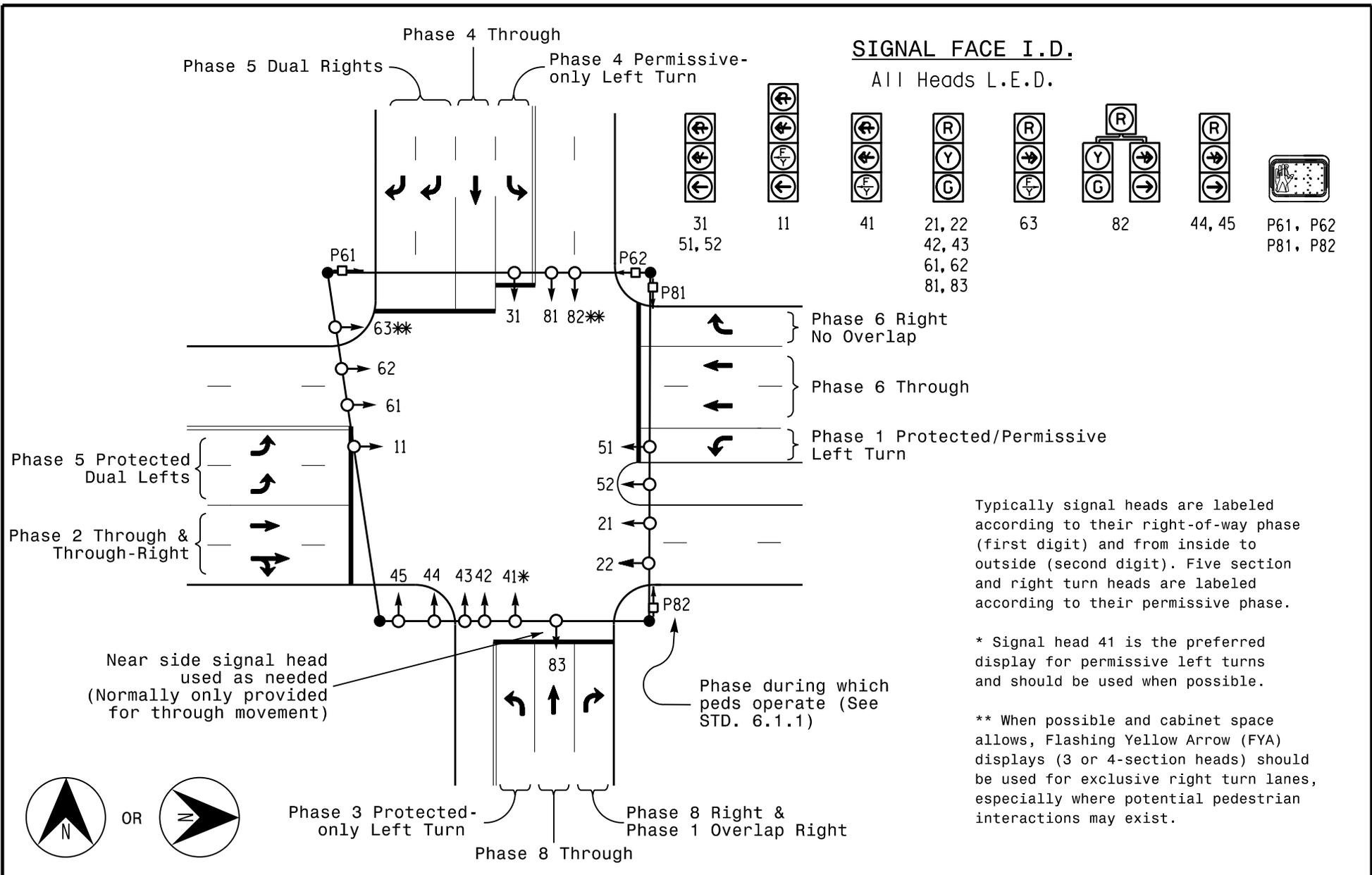
SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

2.3.3

SHEET 5 OF 5

2024-05



Typical Numbering of Signal Heads

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

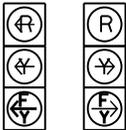
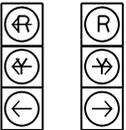
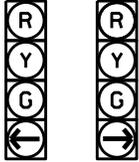
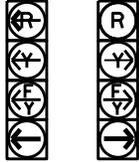
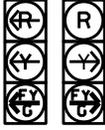
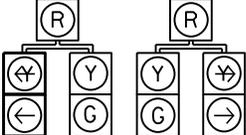
STD. NO.

3.0.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

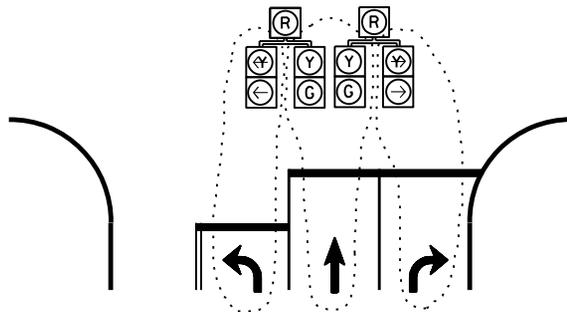
2024-05

Signal Head Types

SIGNAL HEAD	 3-Section	 3-Section	 3-Section	 4-Section Vertical	 4-Section	 3-Section Bi-Modal (Bottom Section)	 5-Section
USAGE	All situations where other signal heads are not recommended	Permitted Turn OR No Through Movement	Protected Turn OR No Through Movement	Split Phasing RR Clearance EV Preempt	Protected/Permissive Turn OR Alternate Phasing	Protected/Permissive Turn w/ Vertical Clearance or Metal Pole Issues	Protected/Permissive (Left) Turn; Right Turn Overlap
PLACEMENT	Lane Line or Lane \mathcal{C}	Lane \mathcal{C}	Lane \mathcal{C}	Lane Line or Lane \mathcal{C}	Lane \mathcal{C}	Lane \mathcal{C}	Lane Line

Number of Signal Faces

A minimum of two signal faces is required for the through movement. This total includes the through signal face belonging to the 5-section "shared" head that may control adjacent left or right turn lanes. When possible, one signal face should be used for each exclusive turn lane. On approaches with multiple through lanes, or a through lane and a shared through-turn lane, one signal face should be used for each through lane.



The display shown has two signal heads each of which is comprised of two signal faces for a total of four signal faces. The two faces with CIRCULAR displays belong to the through move, and each face with ARROWS belong to the left and right turn moves. Since the two center faces control the through (major) movement, it is in conformance with the above requirement.

Clarification: A 5-section head is an assembly of two signal faces which share a common CIRCULAR RED indication.

Per Section 4D.05 of the 2023 MUTCD, if the 85th percentile, posted, statutory, or design speed is 45 MPH or more, one signal head should be used per each through lane on the approach.

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

3.0.2

SHEET 1 OF 8

Use of Flashing YELLOW ARROW Signal Heads for Left Turns

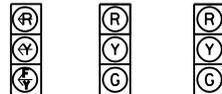
A flashing YELLOW ARROW (FYA) face is the preferred signal display for exclusive permissive left turns in North Carolina. While comparable to a CIRCULAR GREEN in meaning and use, the flashing YELLOW ARROW has proven in studies to have better driver comprehension and compliance and a safer crash record. The flashing YELLOW ARROW is an exclusive display for turning vehicles and should be used for an exclusive left turn lane whenever a permissive left turn is allowed.

If a left turn operates only in permissive mode and has an exclusive turn lane, a 3-section signal head with a flashing YELLOW ARROW in the bottom section should be used. If a left turn is to operate in a protected/permissive or variable (alternate) phasing mode, where both protected and permissive left turn movements may be allowed, a 4-section signal head should be used. In some cases, a 3-section bi-modal signal face may be used in place of a 4-section signal head for a protected/permissive left turn.

The flashing YELLOW ARROW head should be centered over the exclusive left turn lane(s). Note that the flashing YELLOW ARROW head is an exclusive head for controlling the left turn, and at least two (2) signal heads are still required for the through movement. A flashing YELLOW ARROW display cannot be used for a permissive left turn when the left turn is part of combined through and left turn lane. When FYAs are used for left turns, the yellow and red clearance times should be the same for concurrent through phases (2+6 and/or 4+8).

In limited cases where a flashing YELLOW ARROW is not used for the permissive left turn display, a shared 3-section head of CIRCULAR displays may be used. When used, the 3-section CIRCULAR display head should be located on the lane line between the exclusive left turn and through (or shared through-right) lane.

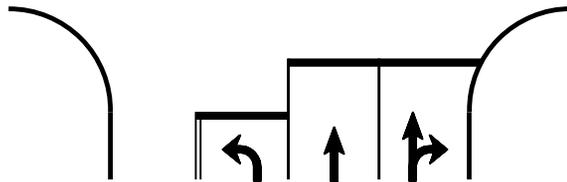
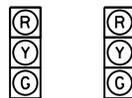
Flashing YELLOW
ARROW Head for
Left Turn



Flashing YELLOW ARROW displays for left turns shall be used when possible:

- When the turn lanes are offset (separated) from the through lanes
- When the opposing travel lanes use (3-section or 4-section) FYAs, are fully protected (single or dual) lefts, or other situations where signal phasing may allow for a lagging protected left turn and/or a "yellow trap" may otherwise be an issue during clearance.
- Where turning vehicles may interact with pedestrians in a crosswalk
- Along corridors, where other FYA displays are used for left turns
- To reinforce, along with a sign, a mandatory turn is required from an extended lane or a "lane drop" situation, or where a turn is required but the lane may continue beyond the intersection.
- At Railroad Preempt locations, which may eliminate the need for blankout signs.

Shared CIRCULAR
GREEN for Permissive
Left Turn



General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

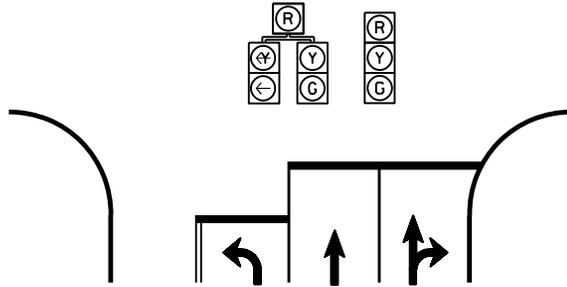
3.0.2

SHEET 2 OF 8

2024-05

Use of 5-Section Left Turn Signal Faces

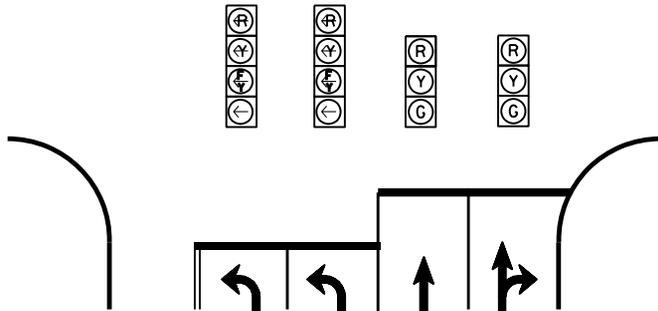
Traditionally, a 5-section "doghouse" head has been used for protected/permissive left turning movements. This head uses a combination of CIRCULAR and ARROW displays, and is often used as a "shared" head between the turning movement and the through movement, although the head has also been used exclusively for the turning left movement.



The 5-section head has a combination of ARROW and CIRCULAR displays, all of which work to control the left turn movement. When mounted over a lane line and used as a shared head, the CIRCULAR displays also serve to control the through (major) movement, counting as one of the two signal faces required for the through (major) movement. In limited situations, it may be necessary to use the 5-section head for protected/permissive left turn movements. When used, it should be part of a shared head arrangement. In no case should a 5-section head be used as exclusive head to control a left turn movement.

Protected/Permissive Dual Left Turn Signal Display

Dual Left Turns have traditionally always operated in a protected only mode. In some situations, it may be advantageous to operate a dual left turn in a protected/permissive mode without sacrificing safety. If used, the protected/permissive mode should be part of an Alternate Phasing option that also includes an option for protected only left turns if needed.



Protected/Permissive Dual Lefts may be considered:

- Good sight distance of opposing traffic
- Opposing speed \leq 45 MPH
- 2 or fewer opposing through or through/right lanes
- Low opposing volume or cross product
- No pedestrian interactions with permissive turn mode

The use of Protected/Permissive Dual Left Phasing must be approved by:

- State Signals Engineer
- Regional Traffic Engineer
- Division Traffic Engineer
- Municipal Traffic Engineer, if applicable

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

3.0.2

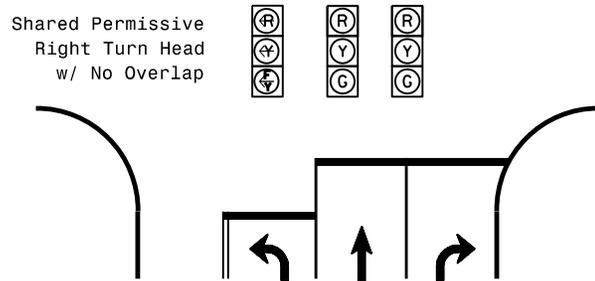
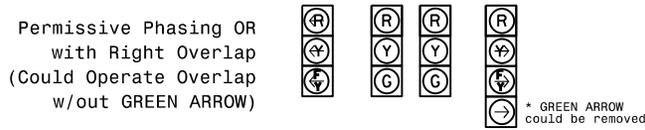
SHEET 3 OF 8

Use of Flashing YELLOW ARROW Signal Heads for Right Turns

A Flashing YELLOW ARROW (FYA) face is the preferred signal display for exclusive permissive right turns in North Carolina. While comparable to a CIRCULAR GREEN in meaning and use, the flashing YELLOW ARROW has proven benefits over the use of the CIRCULAR GREEN display for permissive turns. The flashing YELLOW ARROW is intended to be an exclusive display for turning vehicles and should be used for an exclusive right turn lane whenever a permissive right turn is allowed. While the flashing YELLOW ARROW is the preferred display for a permissive right turn, it is still acceptable to use a shared CIRCULAR GREEN display for a permissive right turn in an exclusive turn lane. When a CIRCULAR GREEN display is used, it should be in a shared signal head mounted over the lane line.

If a right turn operates only in permissive mode and has an exclusive turn lane, a 3-section signal head with a flashing YELLOW ARROW in the bottom section should be used. If a right turn operates in a protected/permissive mode, also known as overlap with an adjacent protected left turn, a 4-section signal head may be used. In some cases, a 3-section bi-modal signal head may be used in place of a 4-section signal head. In addition, in some situations where a right overlap movement is used, a flashing YELLOW ARROW display may be used for the overlap. In these situations, a 3-section head may be used instead of a 4-section head, as the GREEN ARROW is not displayed.

The flashing YELLOW ARROW head should be centered over the right turn lane(s). Note that the flashing YELLOW ARROW face is an exclusive display for controlling the right turn, and 2 signal heads containing CIRCULAR RED, YELLOW, and GREEN displays are still required for the through movement. A flashing YELLOW ARROW display cannot be used for a permissive right turn when the right turn is part of a combined through and right turn lane.



Flashing YELLOW ARROW displays for right turns should be used:

- When the turn lanes are offset (separated) from the through lanes
- Where turning vehicles in an exclusive turn lane may interact with pedestrians in a crosswalk
- For right overlaps if the right turn has to yield to any interacting U-Turn movements
- To reinforce, along with a sign, a mandatory turn is required from an extended right lane or a "lane drop" situation, or where a turn is required but the lane may continue beyond the intersection

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

3.0.2

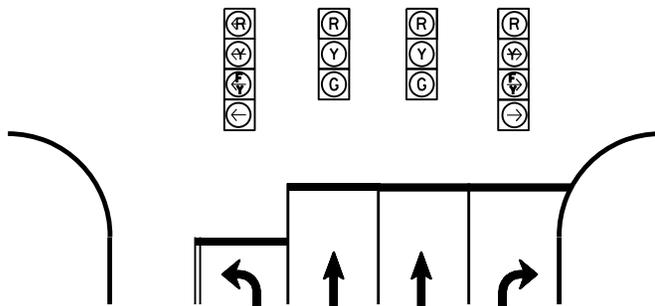
SHEET 4 OF 8

Use of 5-Section "Doghouse" Signal Head for Right Turns

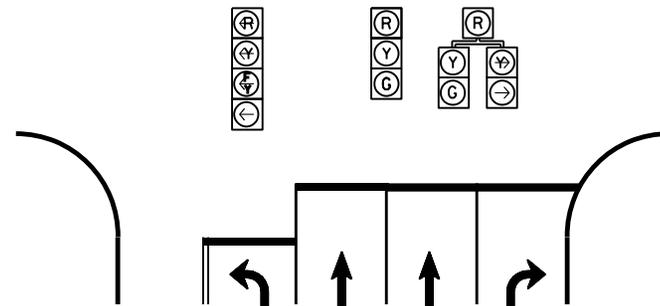
A 5-section "doghouse" head has previously been used for protected/permissive turning movements (a right turn overlap). While the flashing YELLOW ARROW (FYA) is the preferred display for right turns, it may not always be possible to use this display. Some signal cabinets are limited by the number of load switches available to monitor displays and outputs. Most cabinets have load switches to only support the use of 4 FYA displays, which normally require 2 load switches per FYA. Since left turns are typically exposed to more interactions, priority is given to using FYAs for left turn displays. When multiple phases use FYAs for left turns, there is typically not enough load switches remaining to support FYA right turn displays. As a result, the 5-section "doghouse" display is still used for many right turn overlaps.

The 5-section head is an assembly of 2 signal faces, a combination of ARROW and CIRCULAR displays but share a common CIRCULAR RED indication, all of which work to control the designated turn movement. When used, the head should be mounted over the lane line and be used as part of a shared head arrangement. When used as a shared head, the CIRCULAR displays also serve to control the through (major) movement, counting as one of the two signal faces required for the through (major) movement. As noted, it may often be necessary to use the 5-section head for right turn overlap movements. A 5-section head should not be used as an exclusive head to control a right turn movement.

Flashing YELLOW ARROW for Right Turn



5-Section Head for Right Turn



In the cases shown in Std. 3.2, the Flashing YELLOW ARROW signal heads for right turns are the preferred display. A shared 5-section display may be used for the right turn if needed. In most situations, for consistency, do not mix right turn flashing YELLOW ARROW displays and 5-section heads for compatible approaches.

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

3.0.2

SHEET 5 OF 8

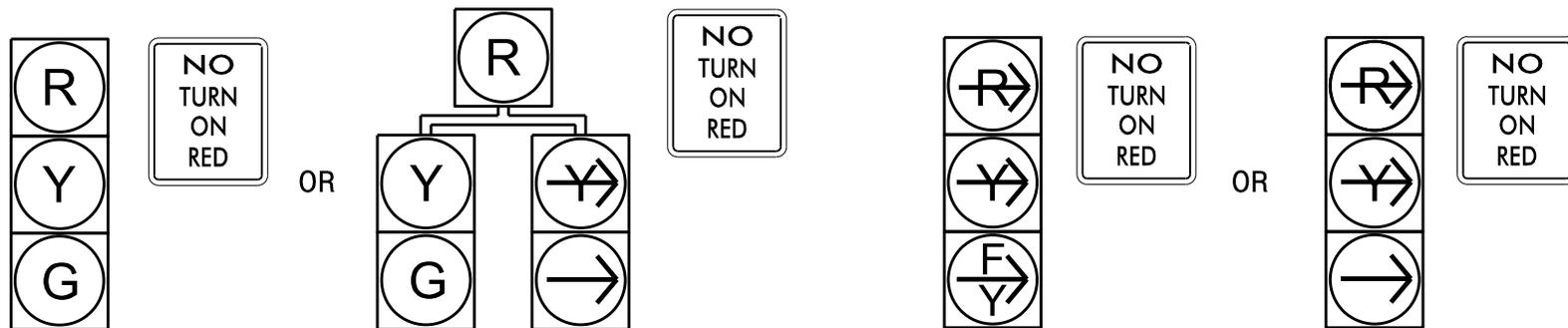
Use of CIRCULAR RED vs. RED ARROW

(Section 4A.03 of the 2023 MUTCD)

The MUTCD states that vehicles facing a steady RED ARROW signal indication shall stop at the marked stop line and shall remain stopped until a signal indication to proceed is displayed. A vehicle shall NOT make a turn on a (left or right) RED ARROW unless a sign (or other traffic control device) is in place permitting such a move.

Per NC General Statute 20-158, vehicles facing a steady red light (signal) shall stop at the marked stop line and shall remain stopped until a signal indication to proceed is displayed unless the vehicle is turning right. A vehicle is permitted to make a right on red, subject to applicable traffic laws and yielding the right of way to other roadway users, unless a traffic control device, such as a sign, is in place prohibiting a turn on red. This statute does not distinguish between a CIRCULAR RED and a RED ARROW display, in effect allowing a right turn on a RED ARROW unless a prohibition sign is used. In North Carolina, vehicles are prohibited from making a left turn on red from a one way street onto another one way street at all times.

It shall be NCDOT practice to display a CIRCULAR RED indication in all signal heads and allow right turns on red whenever practical. This may include the use of a CIRCULAR RED indication in a signal head otherwise containing a steady GREEN ARROW and/or flashing YELLOW ARROW and a steady YELLOW ARROW indication (an exclusive right turn signal head). Where a right turn on red is prohibited and an exclusive right turn signal head is used, a RED ARROW indication may be displayed. To avoid driver confusion and comply with the NC General Statutes, a "NO TURN ON RED" (R10-6) sign shall be mounted adjacent to the signal head whenever a right turn on red is prohibited, whether a CIRCULAR RED or RED ARROW signal indication is displayed.



Shared Right Turn Signal Head

Exclusive Right Turn Signal Head (May also be 4-Section)

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-10

STD. NO.

3.0.2

SHEET 6 OF 8

Use of Straight-Through GREEN ARROW

As provided in Section 4F.01 of the MUTCD, a steady straight-through GREEN ARROW may be used instead of a CIRCULAR GREEN display on an approach to discourage a turn that would be a wrong way movement:

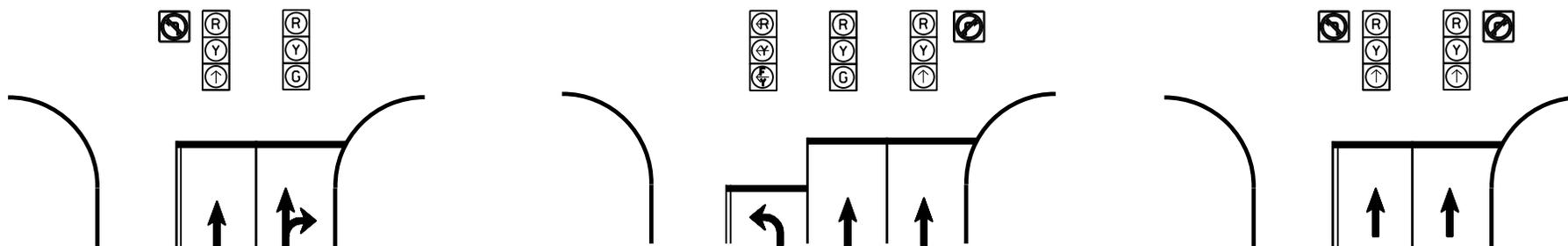


- On an approach intersecting a one way street
- On an approach intersecting a (freeway) interchange exit ramp
- On an approach with a unique geometric design that prohibits turns
- Other locations where a right and/or left turn is prohibited or not possible.

The use of a straight-through GREEN ARROW shall be in a 3-section head that use CIRCULAR YELLOW and CIRCULAR RED sections. The use of a signal head(s) with a straight-through GREEN ARROW may be displayed with an adjacent signal head using all CIRCULAR displays and count as one of the required through heads for that approach. If no turns are allowed or possible on an approach at an intersection, all of the required signal heads for that approach may display a straight-through GREEN ARROW in place of a CIRCULAR GREEN. The use of a straight-through GREEN ARROW signal display shall be a supplement to any required turn prohibition signs posted at the intersection.



A single-section straight-through GREEN ARROW may be used over a lane or approach that has no vehicle or pedestrian interactions and is otherwise free flow with no stopping or yielding (as opposed to remaining unsignalized), however, these single-section GREEN ARROW displays are rarely used in North Carolina.



No Left Turn Allowed

No Right Turn Allowed

No Turns Allowed
(Sign R3-3 may be used in place of R3-1 and R3-2 signs)

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

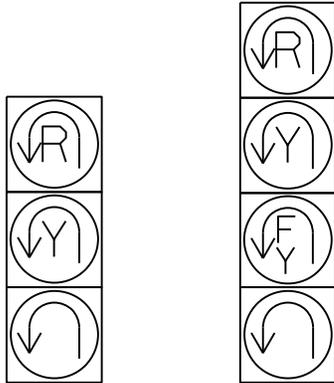
2024-05

STD. NO.

3.0.2

SHEET 7 OF 8

Use of U-Turn Display and Bi-Modal Signal Faces



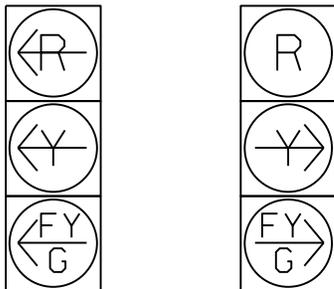
U-Turn Signal Displays

A U-Turn Display should be used for any lane that is designated exclusively for a U-Turn move. No other movement should be allowed from that lane. If used, a U-TURN ARROW should be used in place of all corresponding left or right turn steady or flashing ARROW sections in that signal face and have the same meaning as the turn ARROW of the same color, except that a CIRCULAR RED display may still be used in a right turn head.

Bi-Modal Signal Display

The 3-section bi-modal signal display is an alternative protected/permissive display to the 4-section head. It should be used when a protected/permissive display with a Flashing YELLOW ARROW is desirable, but use of a 4-section head is not practical:

= Bi-modal Section



- Vertical Clearance Issues where a 4-section head would be too low to clear traffic and the span can not be raised
- Other overhead utility conflicts prevent the use of a 4-section head
- Existing metal pole and/or mast arm loadings that do not support the additional load of a 4-section head.

When used, the bi-modal section shall be the bottom section, capable of displaying both a Flashing YELLOW ARROW and steady GREEN ARROW, though not simultaneously. The steady YELLOW ARROW (middle) section shall not be used for a Flashing YELLOW ARROW in a bi-modal display.

General Guidelines for Signal Head Usage

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

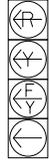
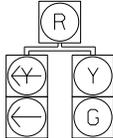
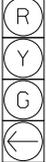
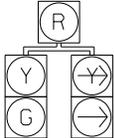
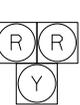
STD. NO.

3.0.2

SHEET 8 OF 8

Programming for Flashing Operation of Signal Heads

Signals may flash during certain types of malfunctions or equipment failures. For statewide consistency, traffic signal heads should be set to flash the displays shown in the event of flashing operation:

SIGNAL HEAD													
FLASH													

Flashing display does not change if a RED ARROW is used in place of a CIRCULAR RED for right turn displays.

Program all signal heads on the same approach to flash concurrently.

During the burn-in period for new signal installations, major street signal heads may flash yellow. Refer to the Signals and Intelligent Transportation Systems PSPs.

General Guidelines for Flashing Signal Heads

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

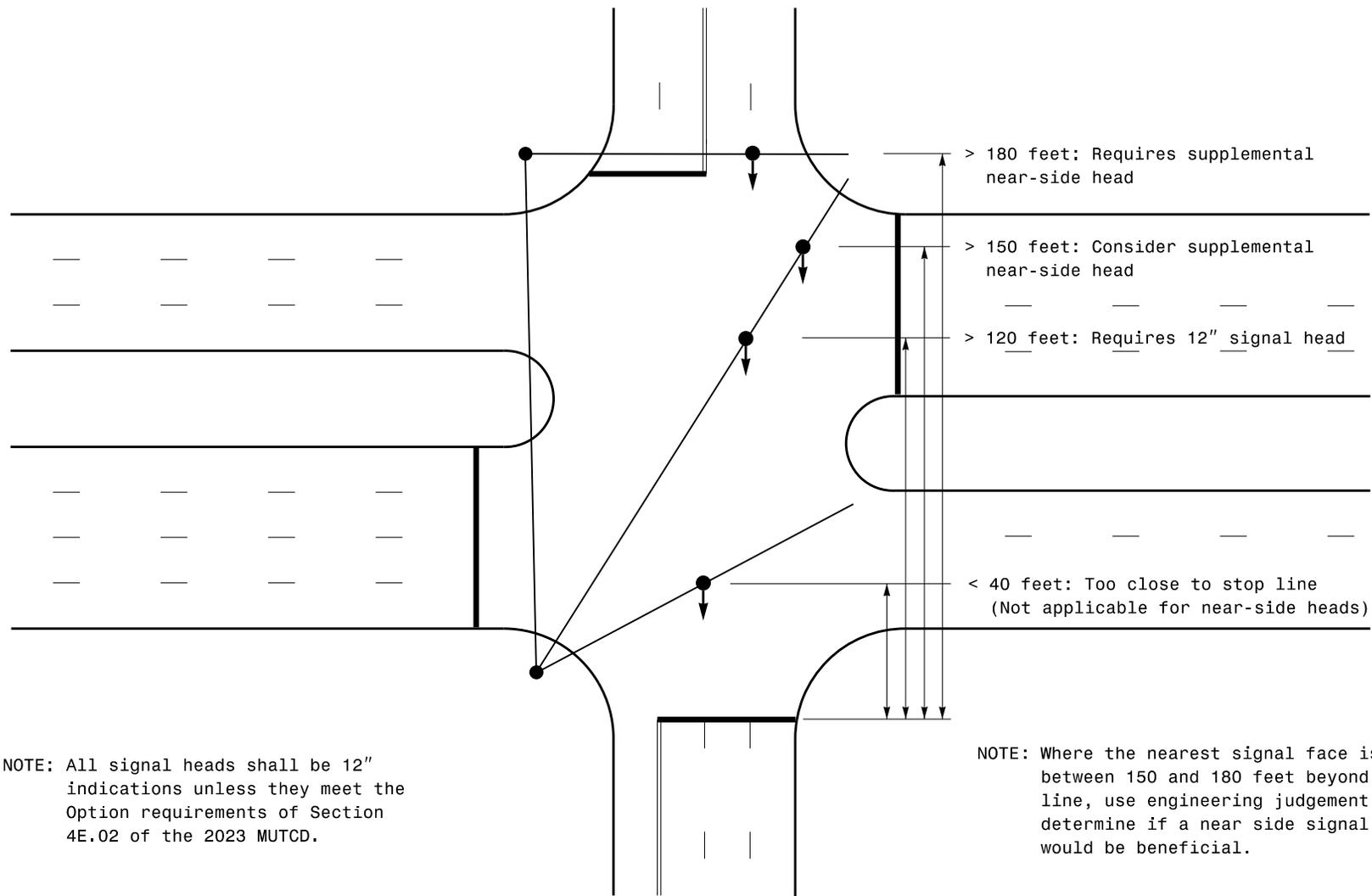
STD. NO.

3.0.3

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

Allowable Signal Head Distance from Stop Line



NOTE: All signal heads shall be 12" indications unless they meet the Option requirements of Section 4E.02 of the 2023 MUTCD.

NOTE: Where the nearest signal face is located between 150 and 180 feet beyond the stop line, use engineering judgement to determine if a near side signal head would be beneficial.

Reference: Section 4D.08 of the 2023 MUTCD.

MUTCD Requirements for Signal Heads

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

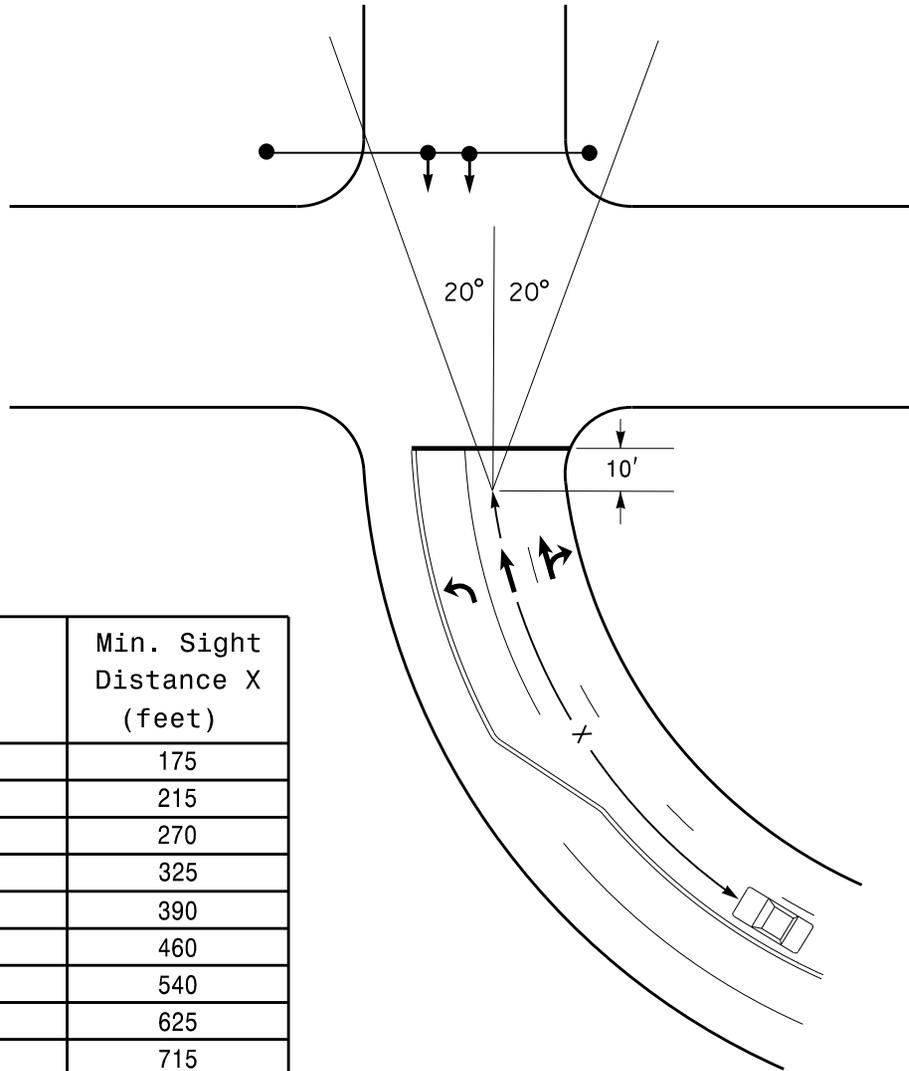
STD. NO.

3.1

SHEET 1 OF 2

2024-05

Signal Face Visibility Parameters



To conform to Section 4D.07 of the 2023 MUTCD, locate one, and preferably both, signal heads within a cone of vision extending 20 degrees to the left and right of the centerline of all the approach lanes in the direction of travel.

To conform to Section 4D.06 of the 2023 MUTCD, the driver should be able to continuously view the signal face from the minimum sight distance for the 85th percentile speed.

Where this visibility requirement cannot be met, erect a suitable sign (such as a Signal Ahead Sign) to warn approaching traffic (Section 4D.06 of the 2023 MUTCD) or install a supplemental near side head.

Speed (MPH)	Min. Sight Distance X (feet)
20	175
25	215
30	270
35	325
40	390
45	460
50	540
55	625
60	715

Reference: Table 4D-2 of the 2023 MUTCD.

MUTCD Requirements for Signal Heads

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.1

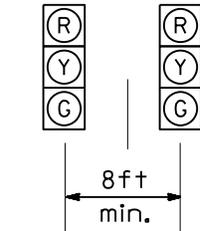
SHEET 2 OF 2

2024-05

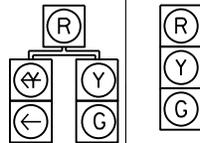
CASE 1

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

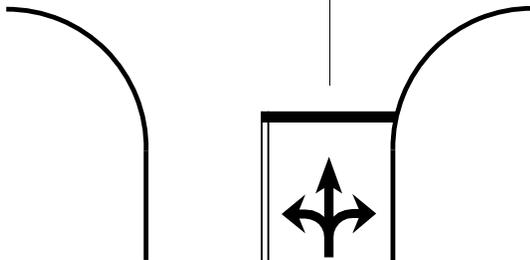
1A - Permissive Only
Left Turn



1B - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn



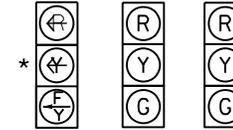
Lane
℄



CASE 2

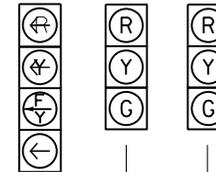
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

2A - Permissive Only
Left Turn

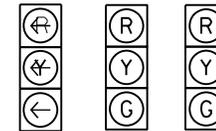


* Preferred
Practice

2B - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn



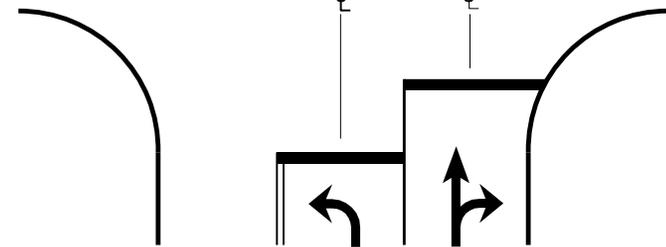
2C - Protected
Left Turn



8ft
min.

Lane
℄

Lane
℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

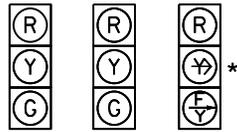
SHEET 1 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 3 (1 OF 2)

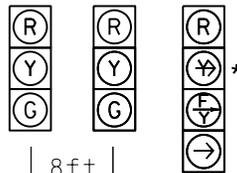
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

3AF - Permissive Only
Left Turn with
or without Right
Turn Overlap



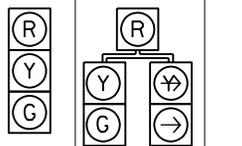
* Preferred Practice

3AP - Permissive Only
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred Practice

3AR - Permissive Only
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap

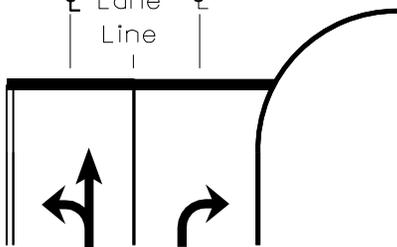


8ft
min.

8ft
min.

Lane Lane

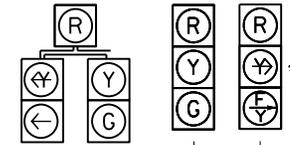
┆ Lane Line ┆



CASE 3 (2 OF 2)

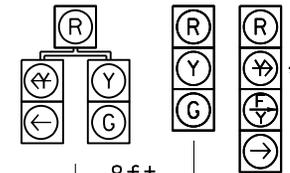
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

3BF - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn with
or without Right
Turn Overlap



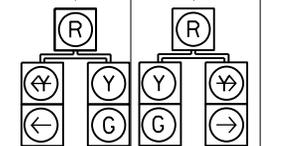
* Preferred Practice

3BP - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred Practice

3BR - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap

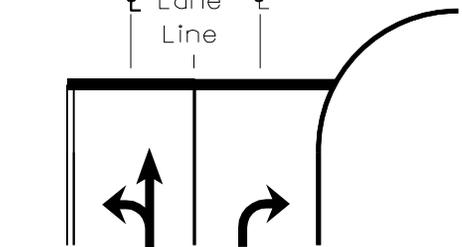


8ft
min.

8ft
min.

Lane Lane

┆ Lane Line ┆



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

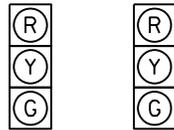
SHEET 2 OF 28

2021-07

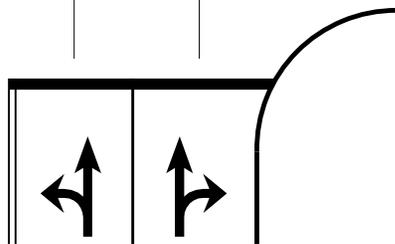
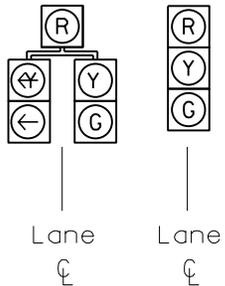
CASE 4

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

4A - Permissive Only
Left Turn



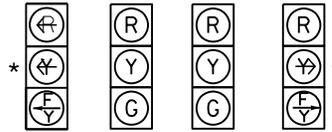
4B - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn



CASE 5 (1 OF 3)

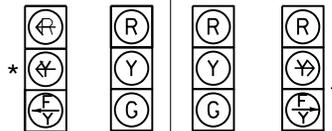
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

5AF - Permissive Only
Left Turn with
or without Right
Turn Overlap



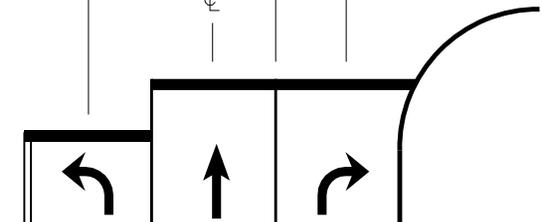
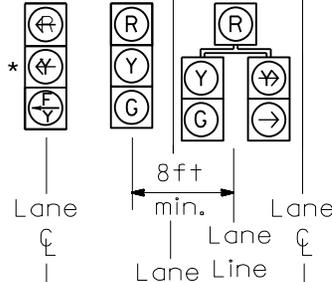
* Preferred
Practice

5AP - Permissive Only
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred
Practice

5AR - Permissive Only
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

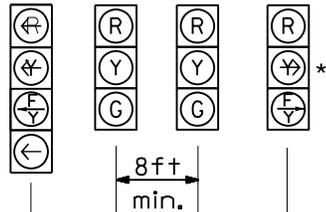
SHEET 3 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 5 (2 OF 3)

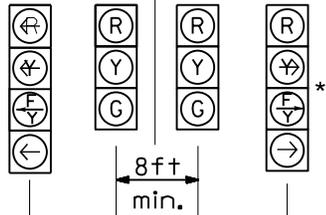
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

5BF - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn with
or without Right
Turn Overlap



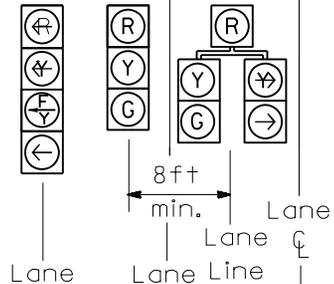
* Preferred Practice

5BP - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred Practice

5BR - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



Lane

8ft min.

Lane

Lane

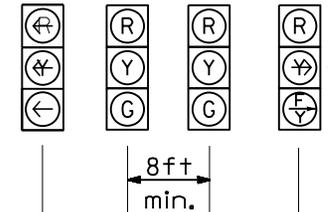
Lane

Lane

CASE 5 (3 OF 3)

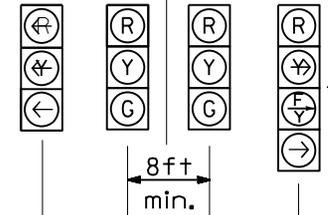
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

5CF - Protected
Left Turn with
or without Right
Turn Overlap



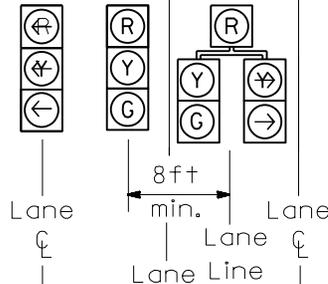
* Preferred Practice

5CP - Protected
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred Practice

5CR - Protected
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



Lane

8ft min.

Lane

Lane

Lane

Lane

Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

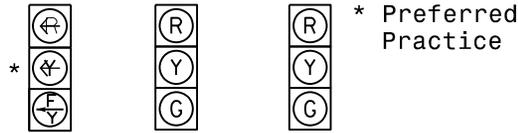
SHEET 4 OF 28

2021-07

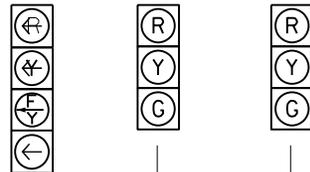
CASE 6

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

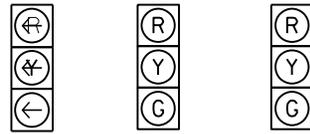
6A - Permissive Only
Left Turn



6B - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn



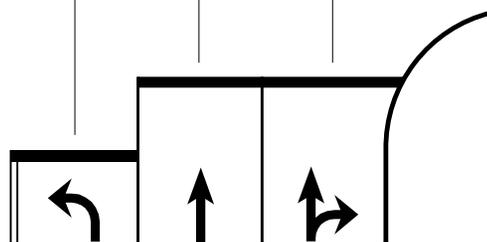
6C - Protected
Left Turn



Lane
ℓ

Lane
ℓ

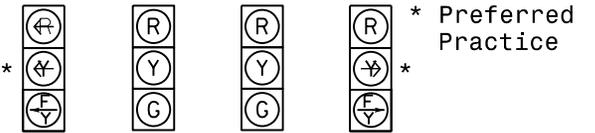
Lane
ℓ



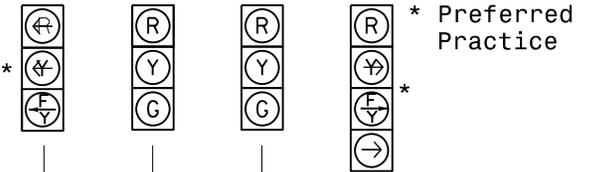
CASE 7 (1 OF 3)

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

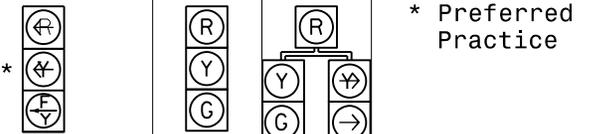
7AF - Permissive Only
Left Turn with
or without Right
Turn Overlap



7AP - Permissive Only
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap



7AR - Permissive Only
Left Turn
with Right
Turn Overlap

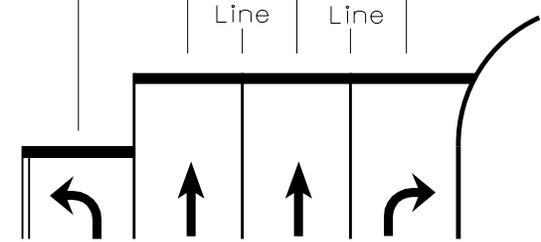


Lane
ℓ

Lane
ℓ

Lane
ℓ

Lane
ℓ



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

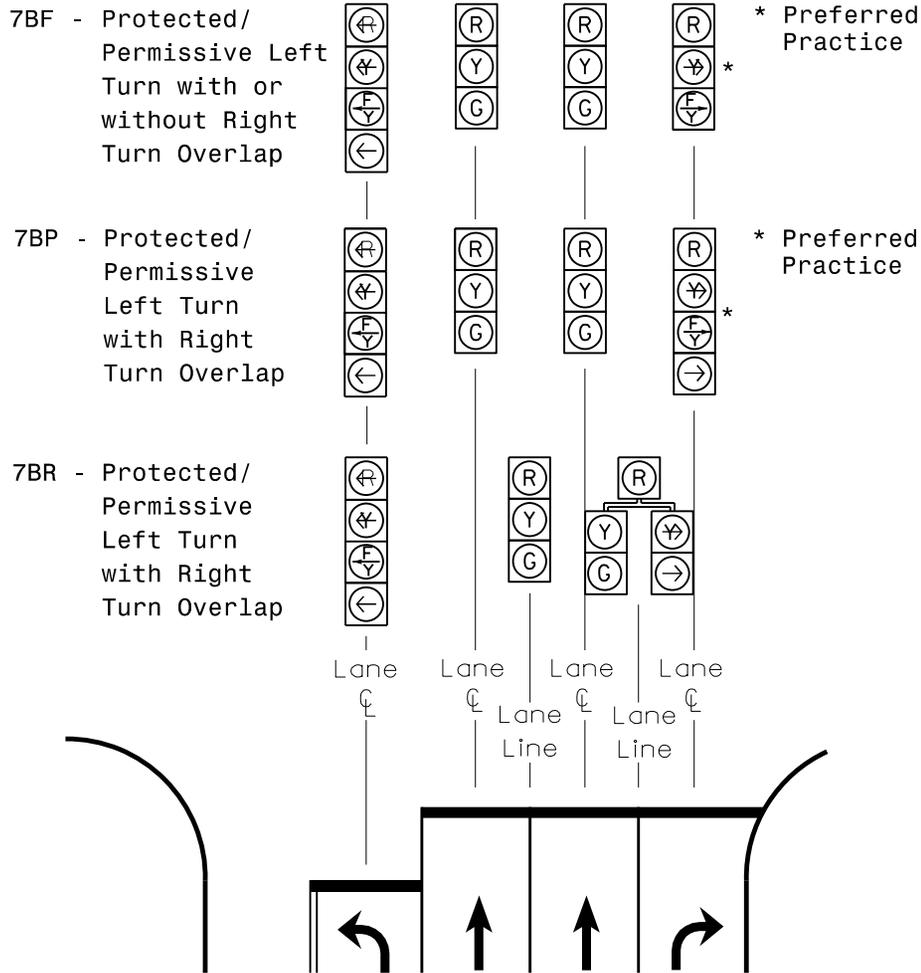
3.2

SHEET 5 OF 28

2021-07

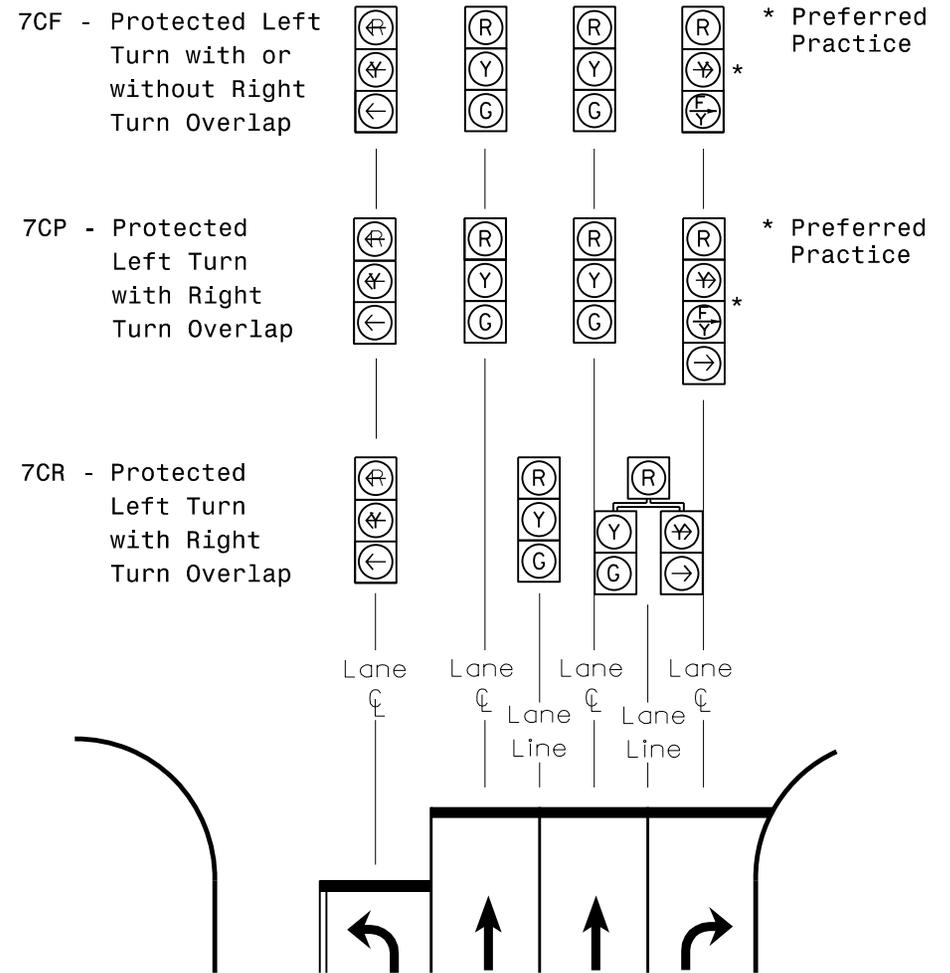
CASE 7 (2 of 3)

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration



CASE 7 (3 OF 3)

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

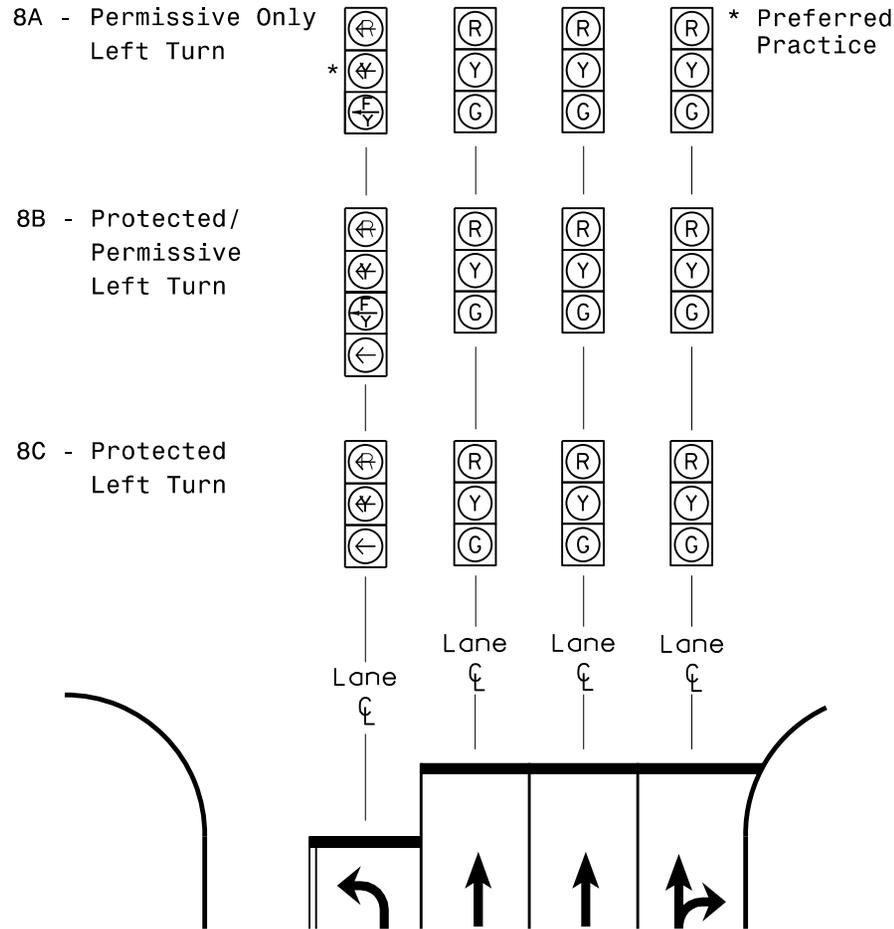
3.2

SHEET 6 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 8

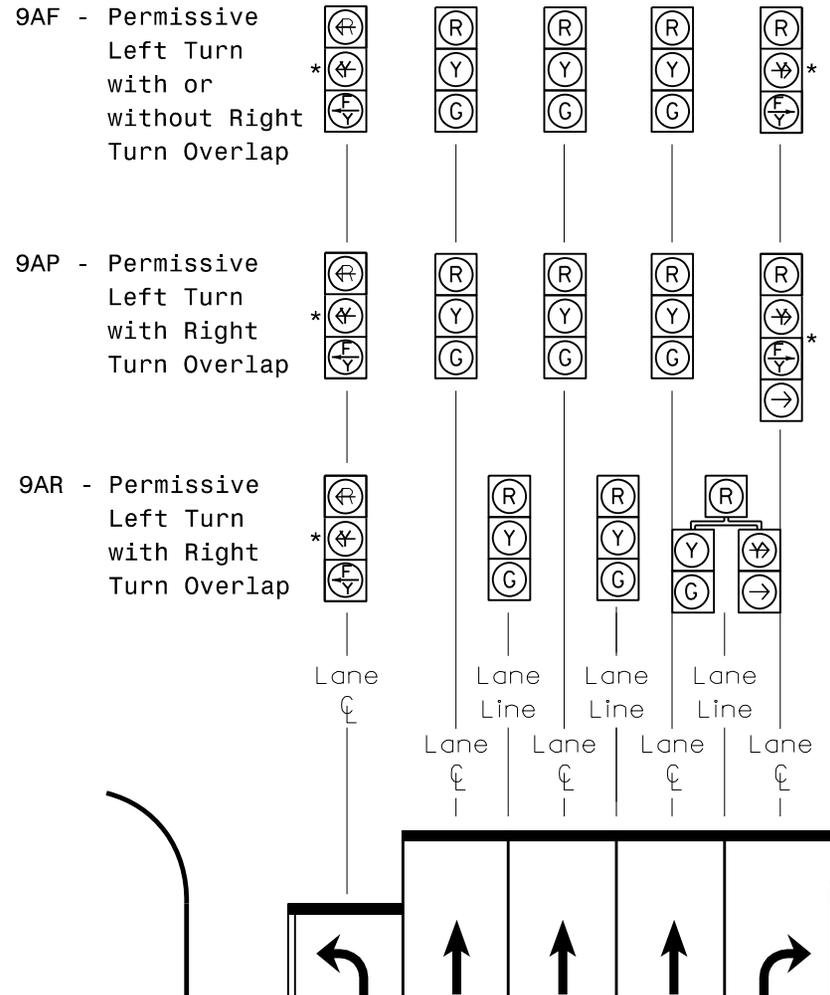
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration



CASE 9 (1 OF 3)

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

* Preferred Practice



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

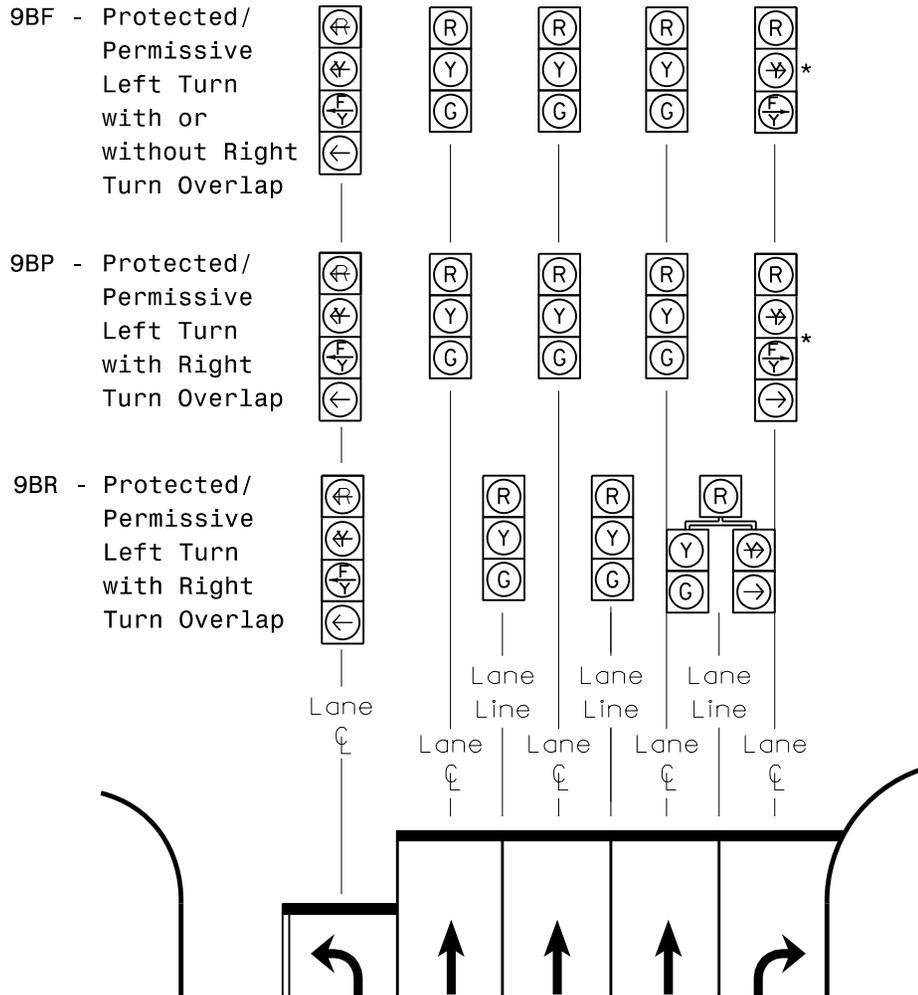
SHEET 7 OF 28

2024-05

CASE 9 (2 OF 3)

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

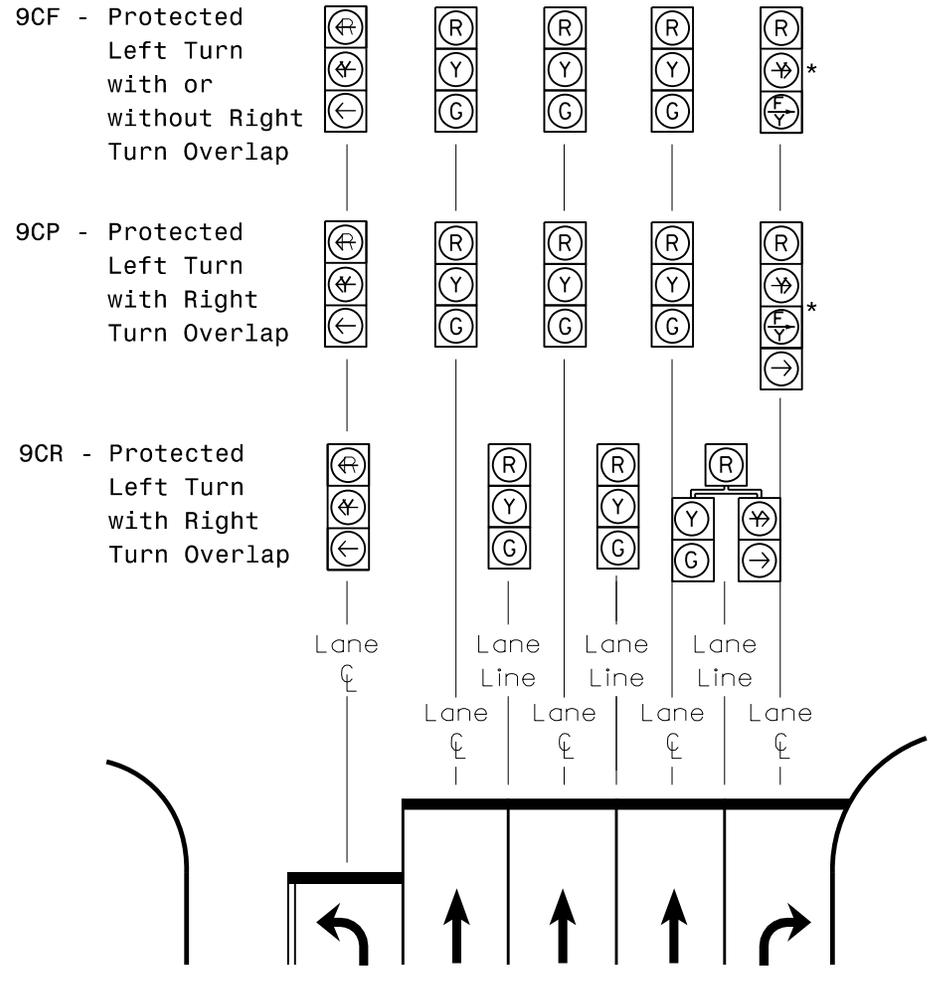
* Preferred Practice



CASE 9 (3 OF 3)

Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

* Preferred Practice



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

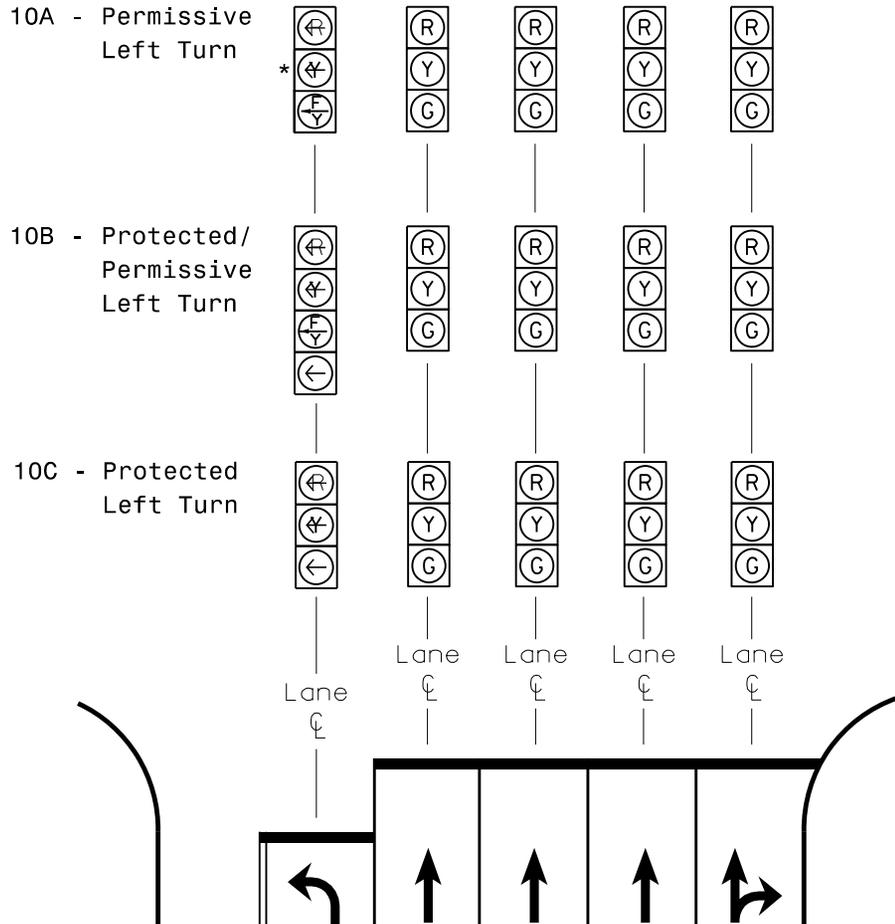
SHEET 8 OF 28

2024-05

CASE 10

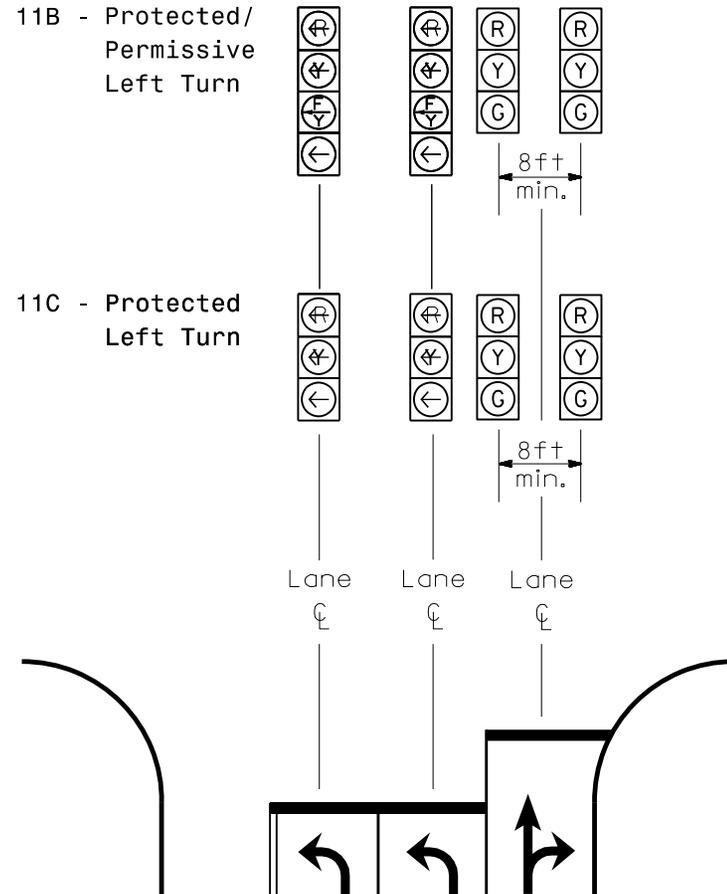
Standard Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration

* Preferred Practice



CASE 11

Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration for Dual Left Turn Movements



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

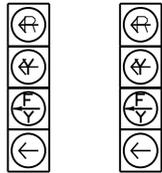
SHEET 9 OF 28

2024-05

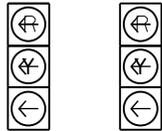
CASE 12

Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration for Dual Left Turn Movements

12B - Protected/
Permissive
Left Turn



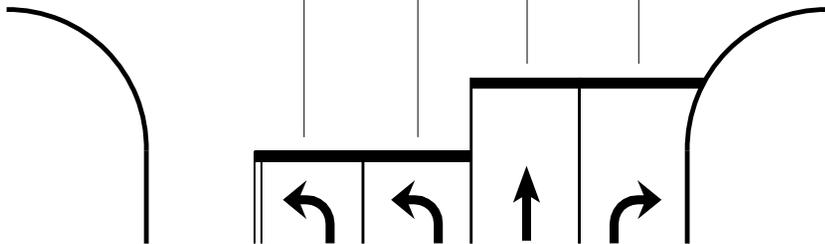
12C - Protected
Left Turn



For through
and right lane
signal heads,
see corres-
ponding
diagram for
exclusive
left turns
(Cases 5-10)

Lane
℄

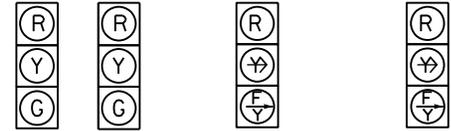
Lane
℄



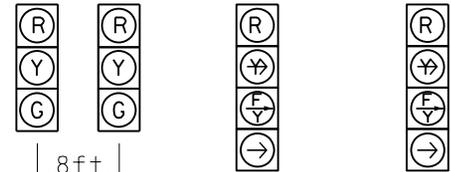
CASE 13

Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration for Dual Right Turn Movements

13AF - Permissive
Left with
or without
Right Turn
Overlap

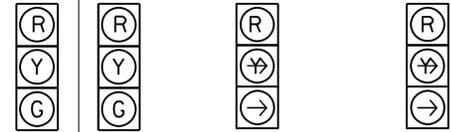


13AP - Permissive
Left with
Right Turn
Overlap



8ft+
min.

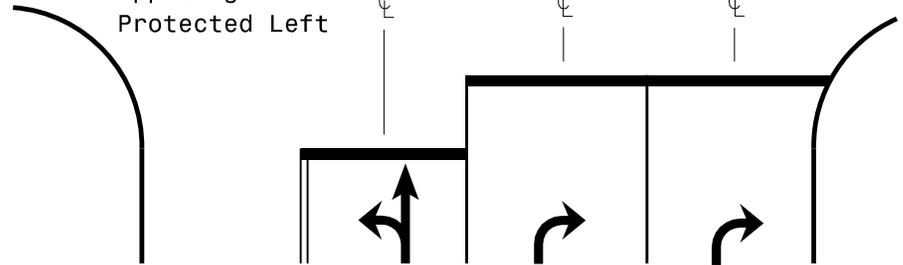
13AR - Permissive
Left with
or without
Right Turn
Overlap and/or
No Peds AND
Opposing
Protected Left



Lane
℄

Lane
℄

Lane
℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

SHEET 10 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 14

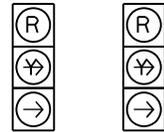
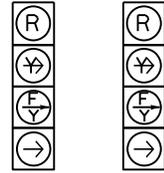
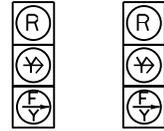
Main or Side Street Signal Head Configuration for Dual Right Turn Movements

14F - With or without
Right Turn
Overlap, with
Peds and/or
Opposing
Permissive Left

14P - With Right
Turn Overlap,
with Peds
and/or Opposing
Permissive Left

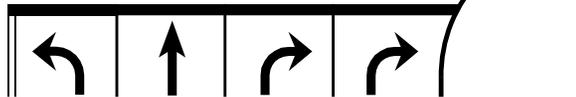
14R - With or without
Right Turn
Overlap and/or
No Peds AND
Opposing
Protected Left

For thru and
left lane
signal heads,
see corres-
ponding
diagram for
main street
movements
(Cases 5-9)



Lane
⊥

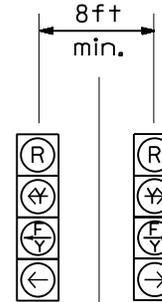
Lane
⊥



CASE 15 (1 OF 3)

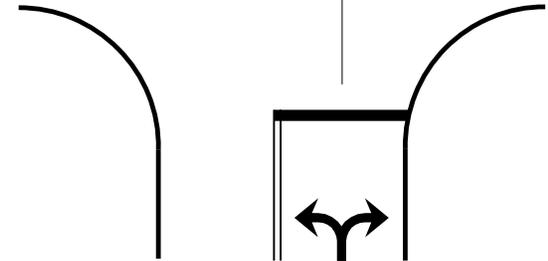
No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

15BP - Use when each turning
movement interaction may
vary each cycle based
on the presence or lack
of pedestrians



* Preferred
Practice for
(Actuated)
Pedestrian
Interaction(s)
[Vary Display]

Lane
⊥



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

SHEET 11 OF 28

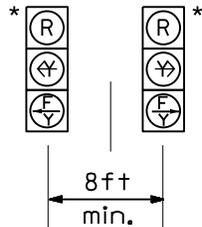
2024-05

CASE 15 (2 OF 3)

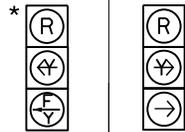
**No Through Movement
Signal Head Configuration**

* A 4-Section FYA may be used for signal head if a display based on pedestrian demand is desired

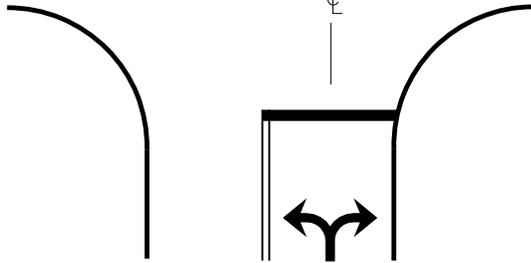
15A - Pedestrian and/or Vehicle interaction for both turning movements*



15AR - Pedestrian and/or Vehicle interaction for Left Turn*; NO Pedestrian AND Vehicle conflict for Right Turn



Lane
℄

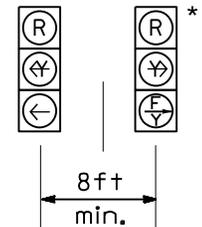


CASE 15 (3 OF 3)

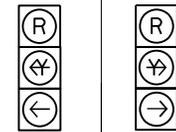
**No Through Movement
Signal Head Configuration**

* A 4-Section FYA may be used for signal head if a display based on pedestrian demand is desired

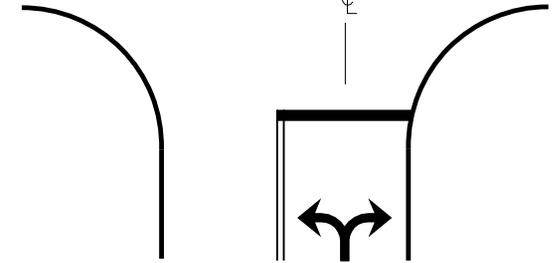
15C - NO Pedestrian AND Vehicle interaction for Left Turn; Pedestrian and/or vehicle interaction for Right Turn*



15CR - NO Pedestrian AND Vehicle interaction for both turning movements



Lane
℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

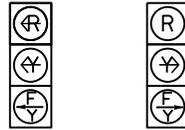
SHEET 12 OF 28

2024-05

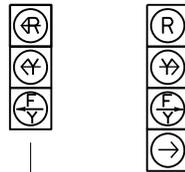
CASE 16 (Case 1 of 3)

**No Through Movement
Signal Head Configuration**

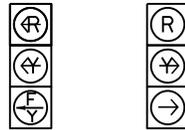
16A - Interacting Vehicle
or Ped Movements
for Both Turns



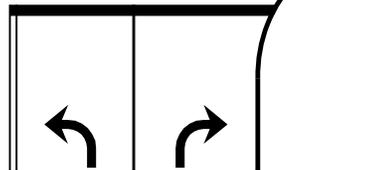
16AP - Interacting Vehicle
or Ped Movements
for Left Turn;
Interactions may vary
for Right Turn



16AR - Interacting Vehicle
or Ped Movements
for Left Turn;
No vehicle and
ped interaction for
Right Turn



Lane
℄
Lane
℄



NOTE: A second display
for the designated major
movement (either left
or right) is required.
Pole/side mount this
signal head to avoid
image of dual turn display.

Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

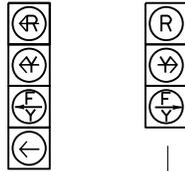
SHEET 13 OF 28

2024-05

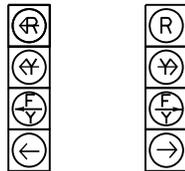
CASE 16 (Case 2 of 3)

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

16B - Interactions may vary for one or left turn; Interacting Vehicle or Ped Movements for Right Turn

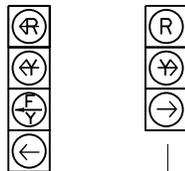


16BP - Interactions may vary for one or both turns



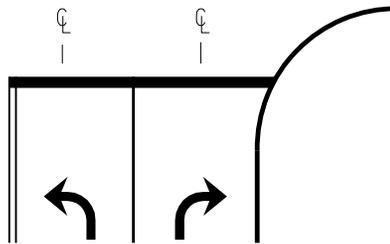
* Preferred Practice for (Actuated) Pedestrian Interaction(s) [Vary Display]

16BR - Interactions may vary for one or left turn; No Interacting Vehicle or Ped Movements for Both Turns



Lane
℄

Lane
℄

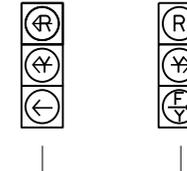


NOTE: A second display for the designated major movement (either left or right) is required. Pole/side mount this signal head to avoid image of dual turn display.

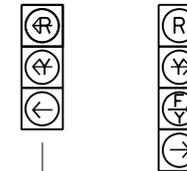
CASE 16 (Case 3 of 3)

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

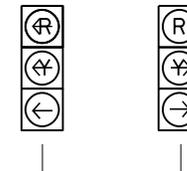
16C - No Interacting Vehicle or Ped Movements for Left Turn; Interacting Vehicle or Ped Movements for Right Turn



16CP - No Interacting Vehicle or Ped Movements for Left Turn; Interactions may vary for Right Turn

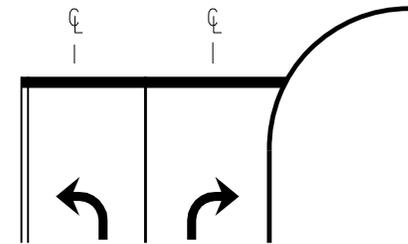


16CR - No Interacting Vehicle or Ped Movements for Both Turns



Lane
℄

Lane
℄



NOTE: A second display for the designated major movement (either left or right) is required. Pole/side mount this signal head to avoid image of dual turn display.

Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

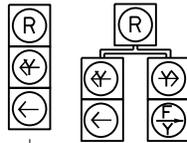
SHEET 14 OF 28

2023-02

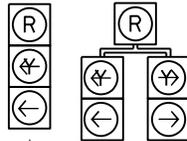
CASE 17

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

17CP - With Right Turn
with Peds

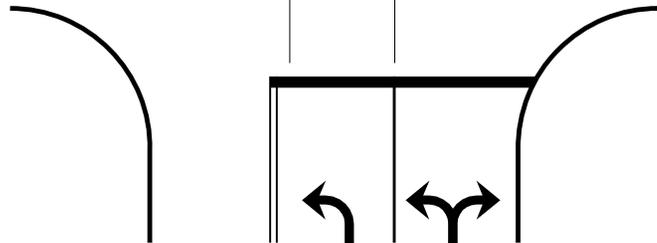


17C - Without Peds



8ft
min.

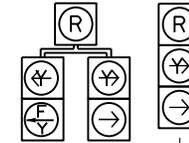
Lane
Line



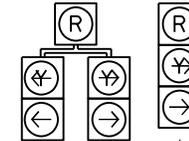
CASE 18 (1 OF 2)

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

18AR - With Left Turn
with Peds

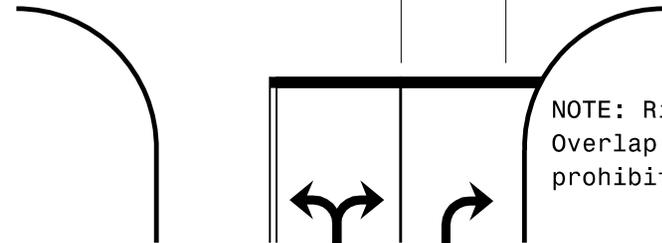


18CR - Without Peds



8ft
min.

Lane
Line



NOTE: Right Turn
Overlap
prohibited

Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

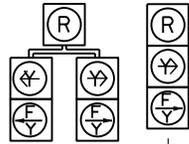
SHEET 15 OF 28

2024-05

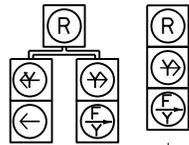
CASE 18 (2 OF 2)

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

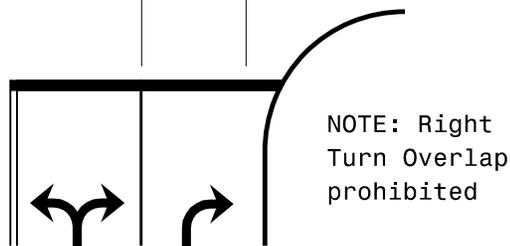
18AF - Both Turns
with Peds



18CF - Left Turn
without Peds,
Right Turn
with Peds



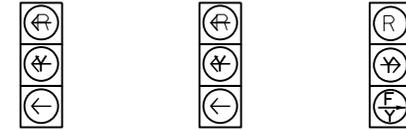
Lane
Line ← 8ft
min. →



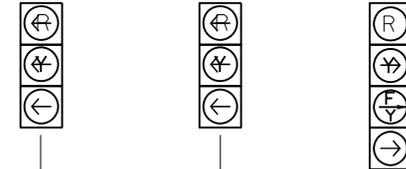
CASE 19

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

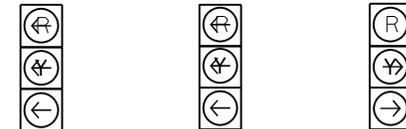
19CF - With or without
Right Turn
Overlap, Right
Turn with Peds



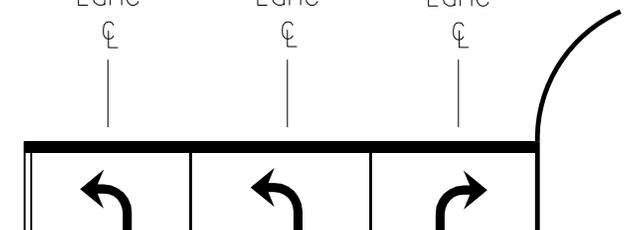
19CP - With Right
Turn Overlap,
Right Turn
with Peds



19CR - With or without
Right Turn
Overlap,
without Peds



Lane
℄ Lane
℄ Lane
℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

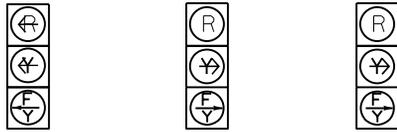
SHEET 16 OF 28

2024-05

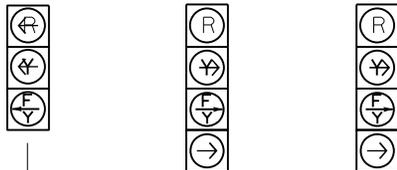
CASE 20 (1 OF 2)

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

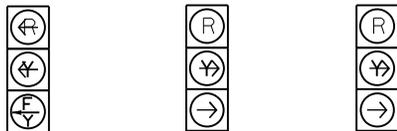
20AF - Both Turn
with Peds,
with or without
Right Turn
Overlap



20AP - Both Turns
with Peds,
with Right
Turn Overlap



20AR - Left Turn with
Peds, with or
without Right
Turn Overlap,
without Right
Turn Peds



Lane
℄

Lane
℄

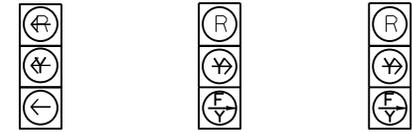
Lane
℄



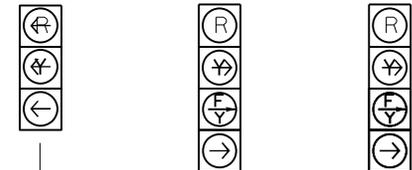
CASE 20 (2 OF 2)

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

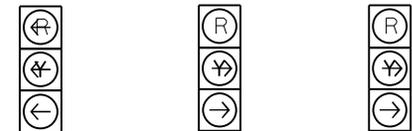
20CF - Left Turn
without Peds,
with or without
Right Turn
Overlap AND Right
Turn with Peds



20CP - Left Turn
without Peds,
with Right Turn
Overlap AND
Right Turn
with Peds



20CR - Without Peds,
with or
without
Right Turn
Overlap



Lane
℄

Lane
℄

Lane
℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION

TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

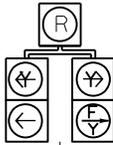
SHEET 17 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 21

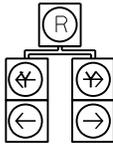
No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

21CF - With Right
Turn Peds



* Preferred Practice

21CR - No Peds or
Opposing
Movements



* Preferred Practice

Lane
℄

Lane
℄

Lane
℄

NOTE:
Right
Turn
Overlap
prohibited



CASE 22

No Through Movement Signal Head Configuration

22CF - With or
without
Right Turn
Overlap,
Right Turn
with Peds



22CP - With Right
Turn Overlap,
Right Turn
with Peds



22CR - With or
without
Right Turn
Overlap,
without Peds



Lane
℄

Lane
℄

Lane
℄

Lane
℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

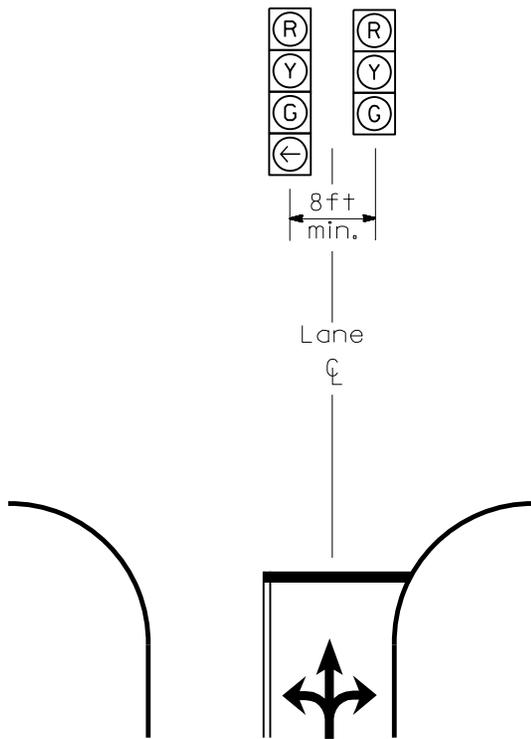
3.2

SHEET 18 OF 28

2024-05

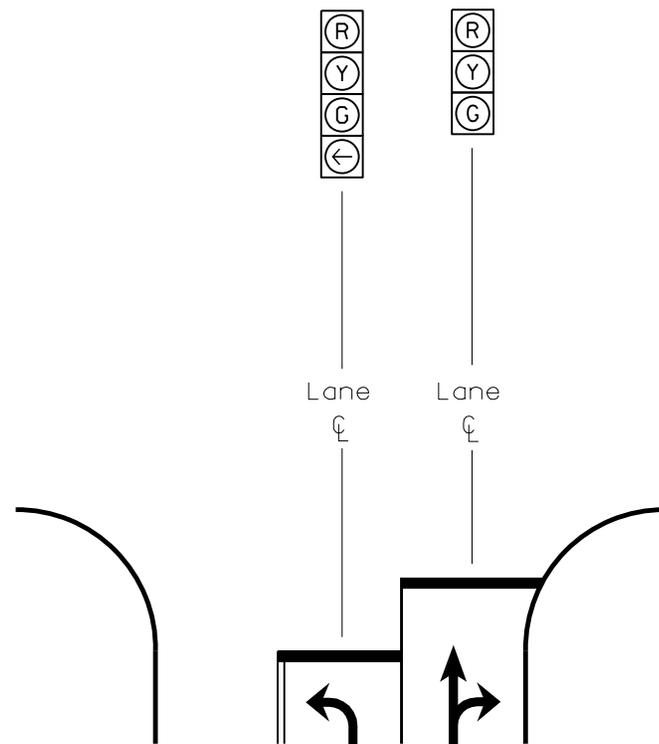
CASE 23

Split Phasing
Signal Head Configuration



CASE 24

Split Phasing
Signal Head Configuration



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

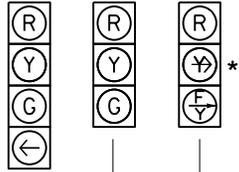
SHEET 19 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 25

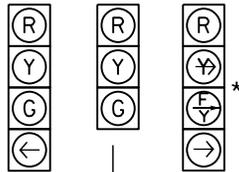
Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

25CF - With or without
Right Turn Overlap



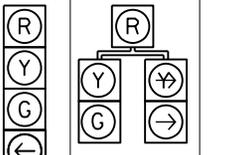
* Preferred Practice

25CP - With Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred Practice

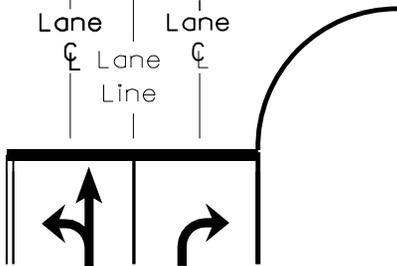
25CR - With Right
Turn Overlap



8ft
min.

8ft
min.

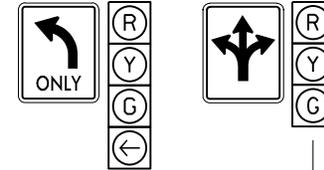
Lane Lane
℄ Lane
Line



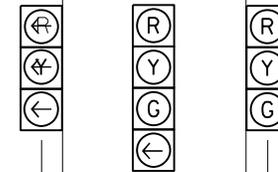
CASE 26

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

26CS - With Signs



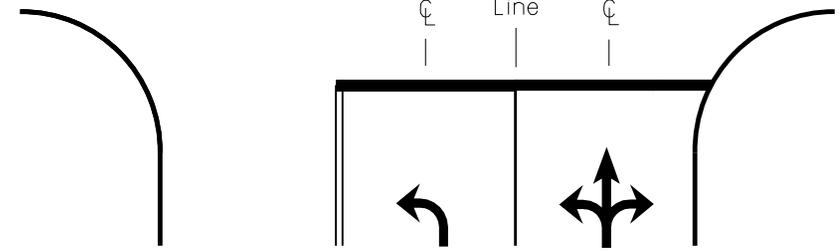
26C - No Signs,
Left Turn
is Major
Movement



* Preferred Practice

8ft
min. 8ft
min.

Lane Lane Lane
℄ Line ℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

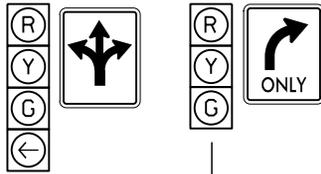
SHEET 20 OF 28

2021-07

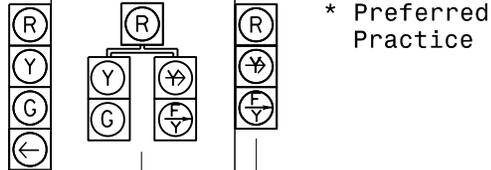
CASE 27

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

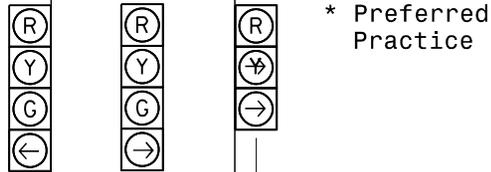
27CS - With Signs



27CF - No Signs,
Right Turn
with Peds

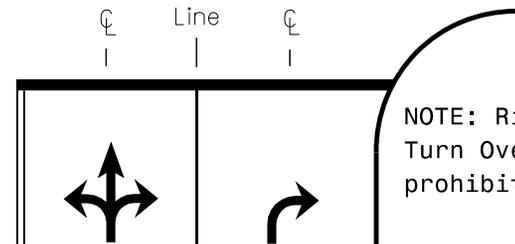


27CR - No Signs,
No Peds,
Right Turn
is Major
Movement



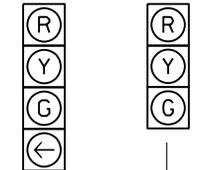
8ft min. 8ft min.

Lane Lane Lane
℄ Line ℄

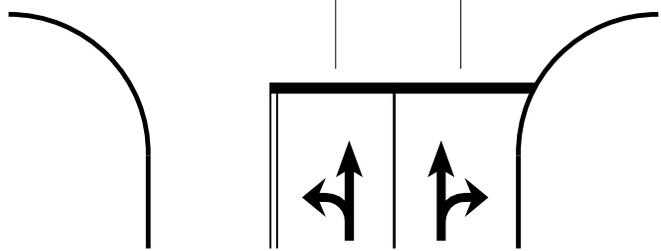


CASE 28

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration



Lane Lane
℄ ℄



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

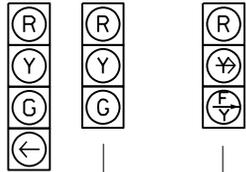
SHEET 21 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 29

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

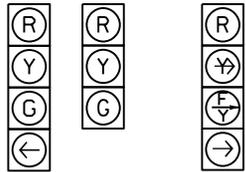
29CF - With or
without Right
Turn Overlap



* Preferred Practice

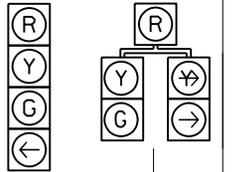
8ft
min.

29CP - With Right
Turn Overlap

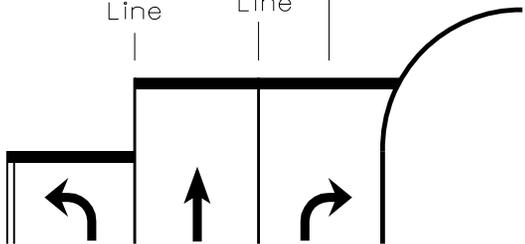


* Preferred Practice

29CR - With Right
Turn Overlap

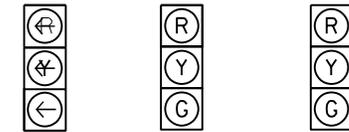


Lane Line
Lane Line
Lane ζ

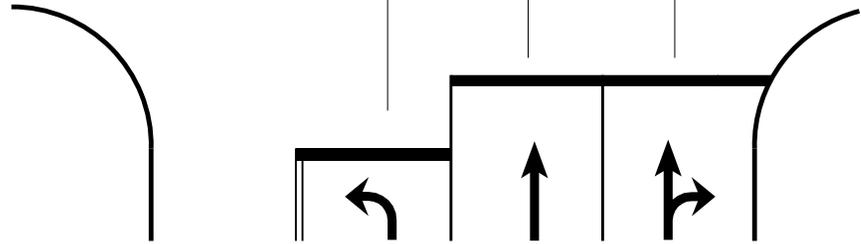


CASE 30

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration



Lane ζ
Lane ζ
Lane ζ



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

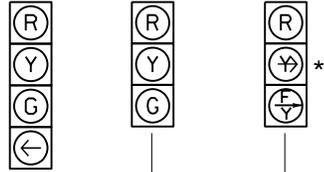
SHEET 22 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 31

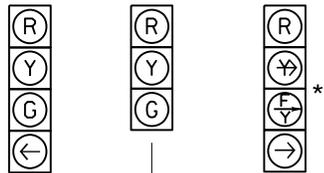
Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

31CF - With or
without Right
Turn Overlap



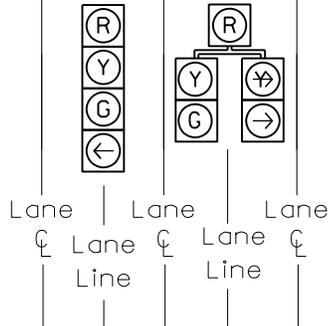
* Preferred Practice

31CP - With Right
Turn Overlap

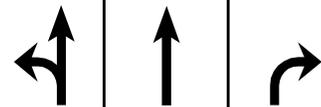


* Preferred Practice

31CR - With Right
Turn Overlap

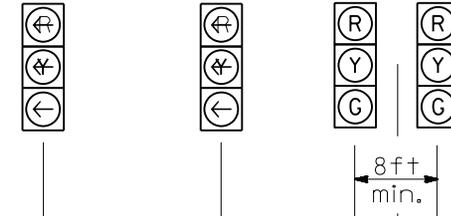


Lane
Lane
Lane
Lane
Lane

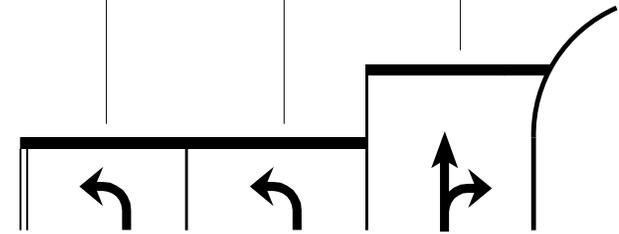


CASE 32

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration



Lane
Lane
Lane



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

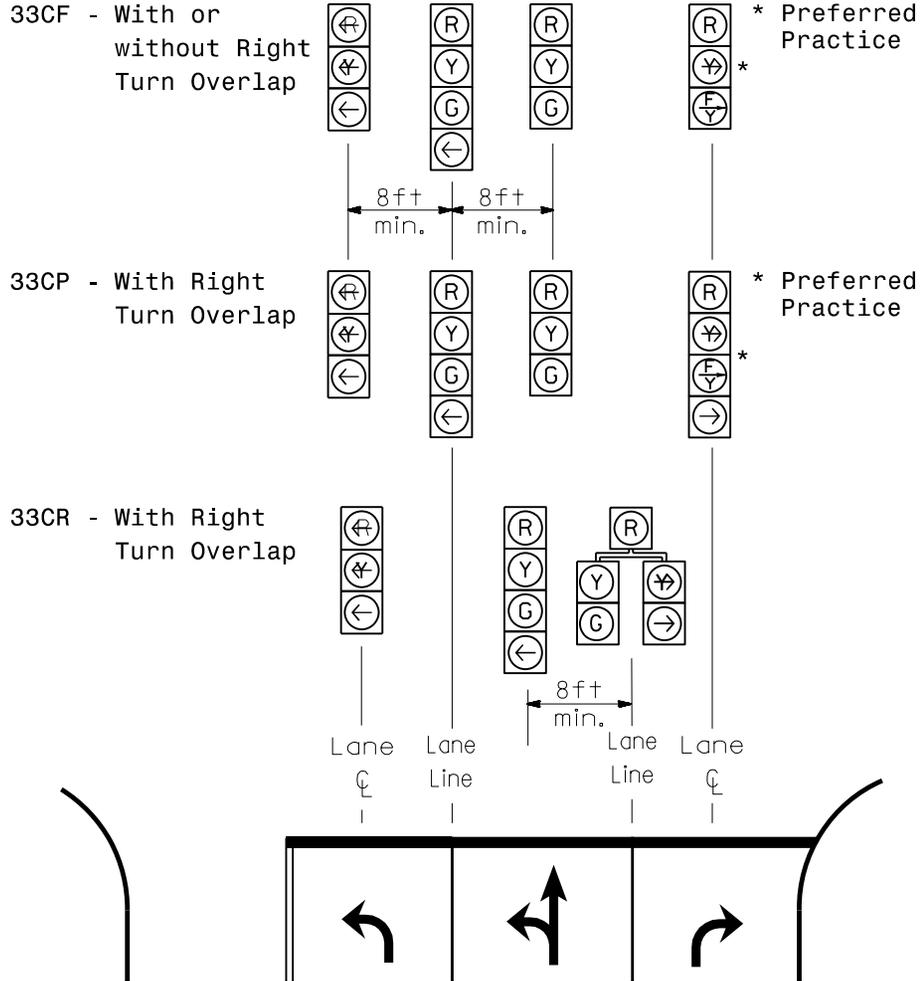
3.2

SHEET 23 OF 28

2021-07

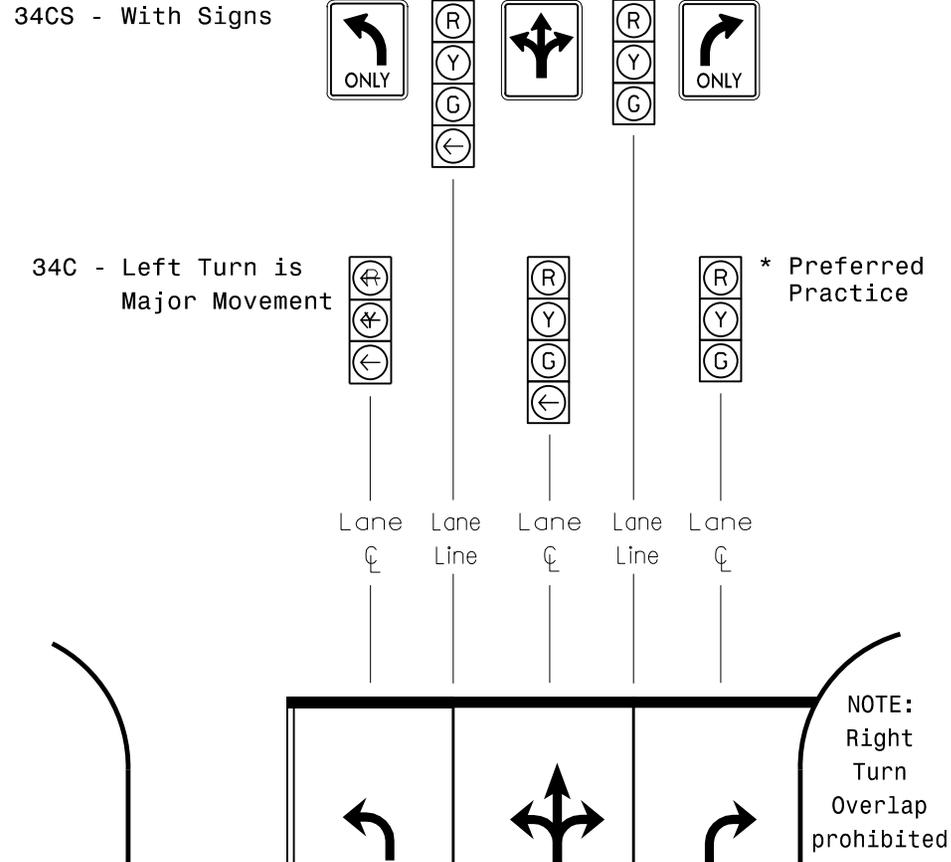
CASE 33

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration



CASE 34

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

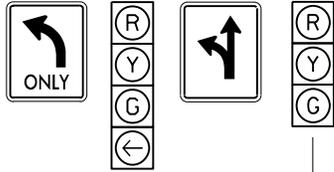
SHEET 24 OF 28

2021-07

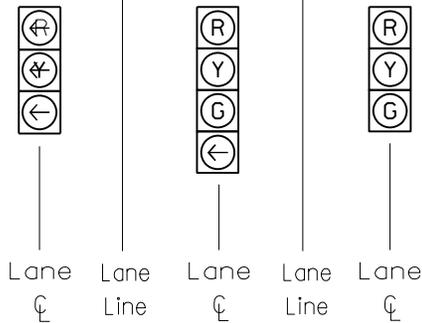
CASE 35

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

35CS - With Signs

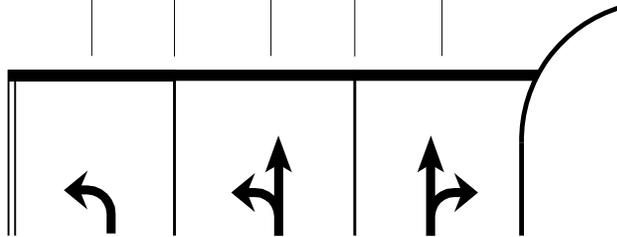


35C - Without Signs



* Preferred Practice

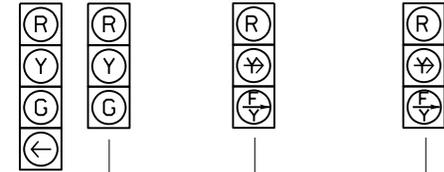
Lane 1
Lane 2
Lane 3
Lane 4
Lane 5



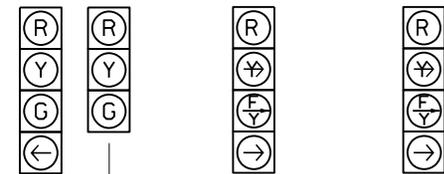
CASE 36

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

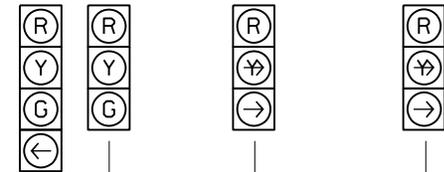
36CF - With or without Right Turn Overlap, Right Turn with Peds



36CP - With Right Turn Overlap, Right Turn with Peds

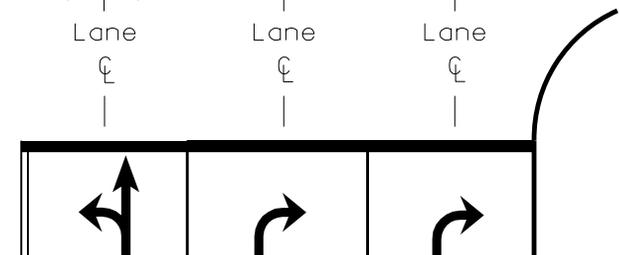


33CR - With or without Right Turn Overlap, without Peds



8ft min.

Lane 1
Lane 2
Lane 3



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

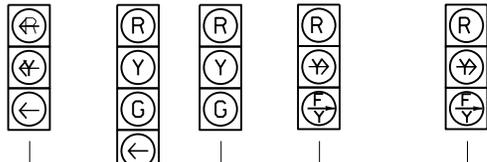
SHEET 25 OF 28

2021-07

CASE 37

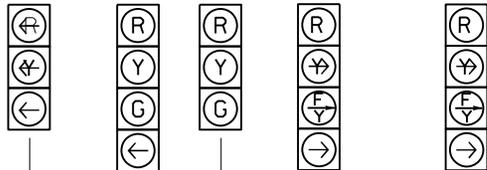
Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

37CP - Without
Right Turn
Overlap AND
with Right
Turn Peds



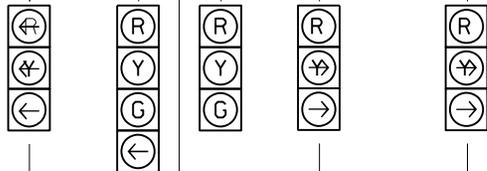
8ft+
min.

37CRF - With or
without
Right Turn
Overlap,
with Right
Turn Peds



8ft+
min.

37CR - With or
without
Right Turn
Overlap;
without Peds

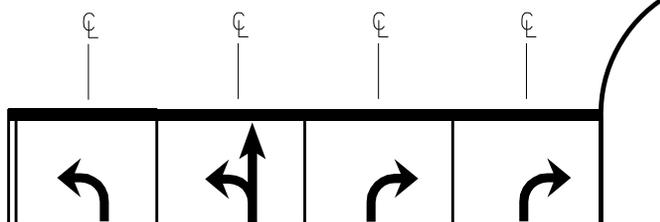


Lane
℄

Lane
℄

Lane
℄

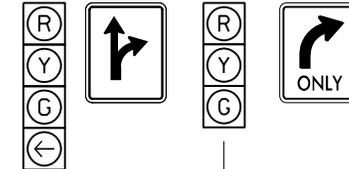
Lane
℄



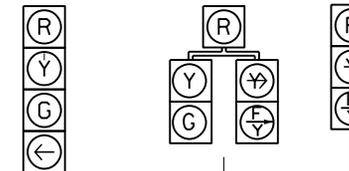
CASE 38

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

38CS - With Signs

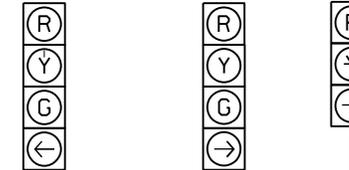


38CF - With Peds



* Preferred
Practice

38CR - No Peds

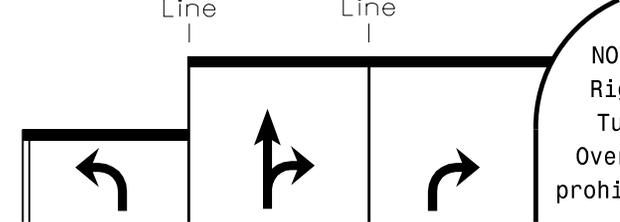


* Preferred
Practice

Lane
Line

Lane
Line

8ft+
min.



NOTE:
Right
Turn
Overlap
prohibited

Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

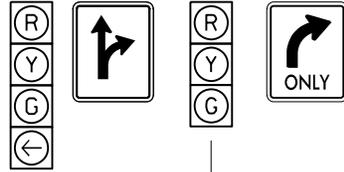
SHEET 26 OF 28

2021-07

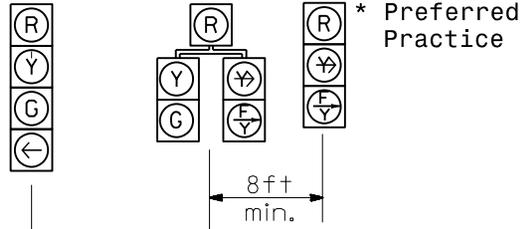
CASE 39

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

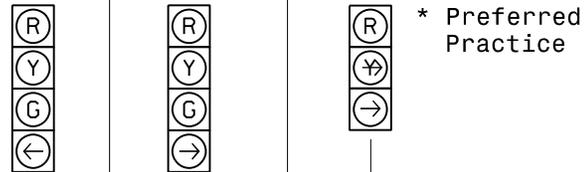
39CS - With Signs



39CF - With Peds



39CR - No Peds

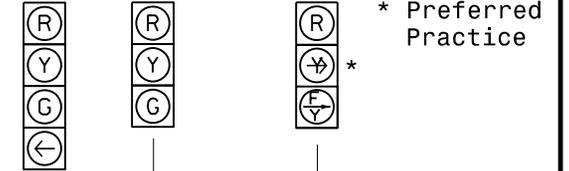


NOTE:
Right
Turn
Overlap
prohibited

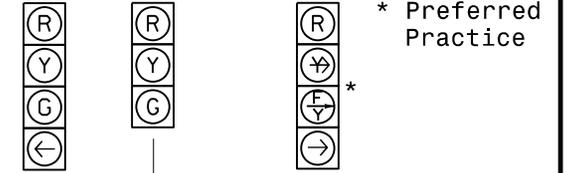
CASE 40

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

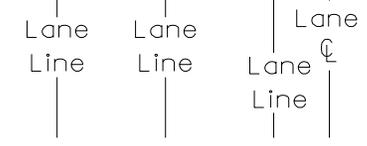
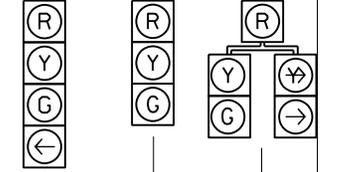
40CF - With or
without
Right Turn
Overlap



40CP - With
Right Turn
Overlap



40CR - With
Right Turn
Overlap



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

3.2

SHEET 27 OF 28

2024-05

CASE 41

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

* Preferred Practice

41CF - With or without Right Turn Overlap, Right Turn with Peds

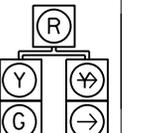


8ft+
min.

41CP - With Right Turn Overlap, Right Turn with Peds

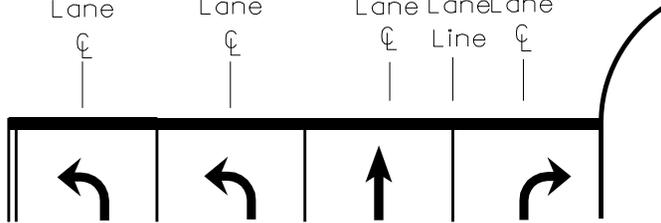


41CR - With or without Right Turn Overlap, without Peds



8ft+
min.

Lane Lane Lane Lane Lane
℄ ℄ ℄ ℄ ℄



CASE 42

Split Phasing Signal Head Configuration

* Preferred Practice

42CF - With or without Right Turn Overlap



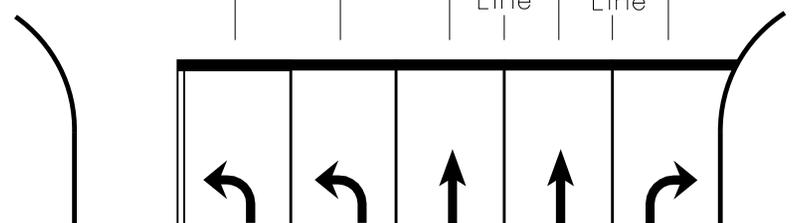
42CP - With Right Turn Overlap



42CR - With Right Turn Overlap



Lane Lane Lane Lane Lane
℄ ℄ ℄ Lane Lane
Line Line



Signal Head Approach Displays and Alignment

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

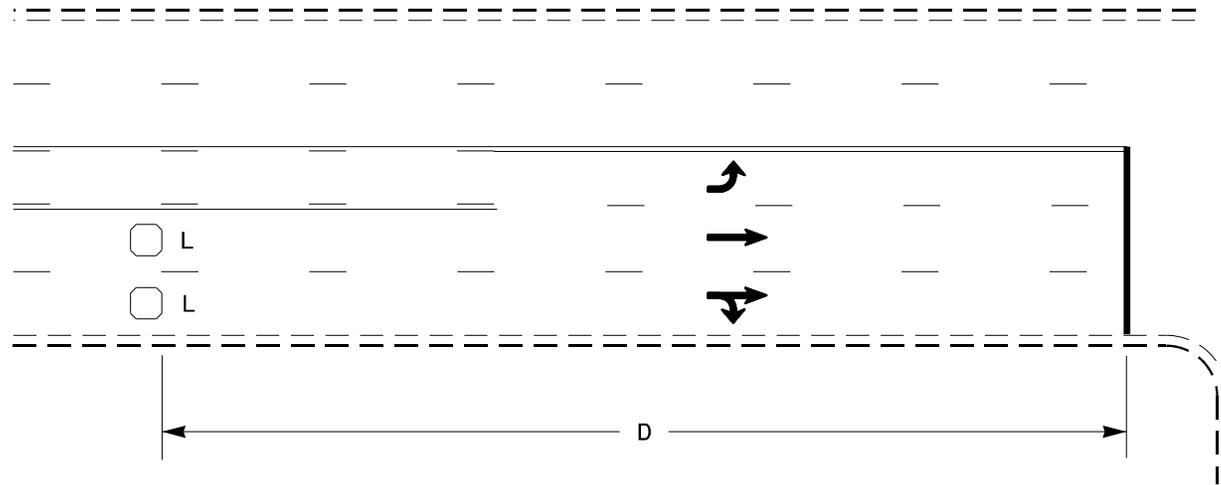
STD. NO.

3.2

SHEET 28 OF 28

2021-07

Volume Density Operation



L = 6ft X 6ft

- Presence loop
- Wired to separate detectors/channels for 2070 Controllers

Design Considerations:

- High speed [≥ 40 MPH]
- Preferred option for cost and efficiency
- Coordinate with Division and/or Municipality for use on 35 MPH approaches

Notes:

- Set Non-Lock Detector to "OFF"
- Not appropriate for use with non-intrusive detection
- Volume density loops can double as system detectors when wired separately.

Design Speed (MPH)	Loop Distance D (feet)	Extension/ Gap Time (sec.)	Min. Gap Time (sec.)
35	200	5.0	3.0
40	250	6.0	3.0
45	300	6.0	3.0
50	355	6.0	3.0
55	420	6.0	3.4
60	475	6.0	3.4
65	550	6.5	3.4

Loop Placement for Main Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

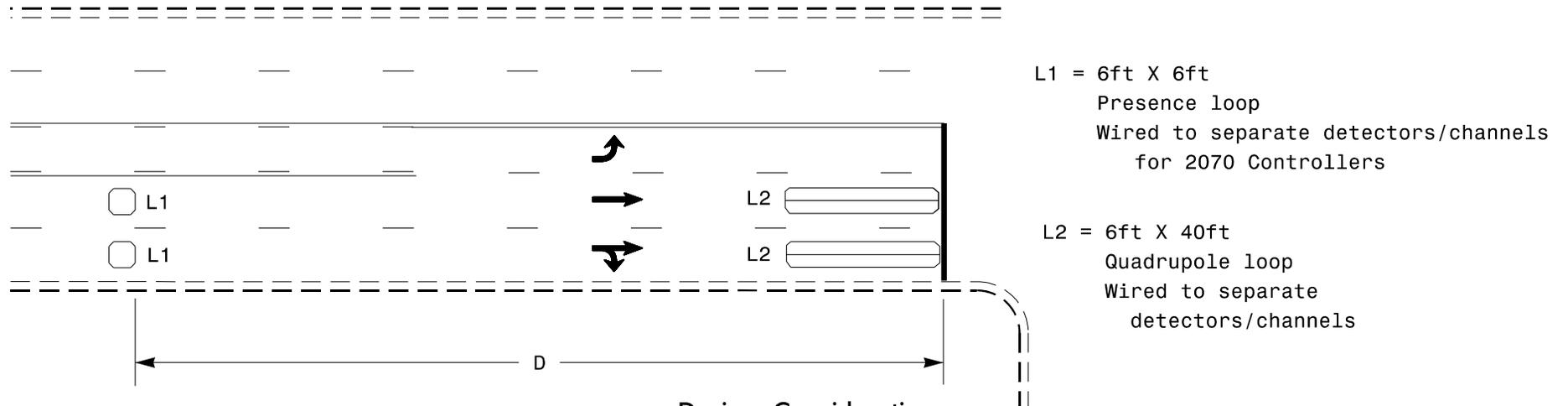
2024-05

STD. NO.

4.1.1

SHEET 1 OF 4

Volume Density Operation with DC/EC (Delayed Call/Extended Call)



Design Considerations:

- High speed [≥ 40 MPH]
- High volume driveways between L1 and L2
- Single lane approach with left turns
- High truck traffic with steep positive grades
- Non-intrusive detection
- More efficient than standard "stretch" detection, but more costly to install and maintain
- Coordinate with Division and/or Municipality for use on 35 MPH approaches

Notes:

- Do not program "ACTUATIONS B4 ADD" (not applicable for 2070 controllers), "SEC. PER ACTUATION" and "MAX. INITIAL"
- Delay on loops L2 must be DELAY DURING GREEN
- Set Non-Lock Detector to "OFF" for phases 2 & 6
- Loops L1 can double as system detectors when wired separately

Design Speed (MPH)	D (feet)	L2	
		Delay (sec.)	Extend (sec.)
35	200	5	2.0
40	250	5	2.0
45	300	5	2.0
50	355	5	2.0
55	420	5	2.0
60	475	5	2.0
65	550	5	2.0

Loop Placement for Main Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

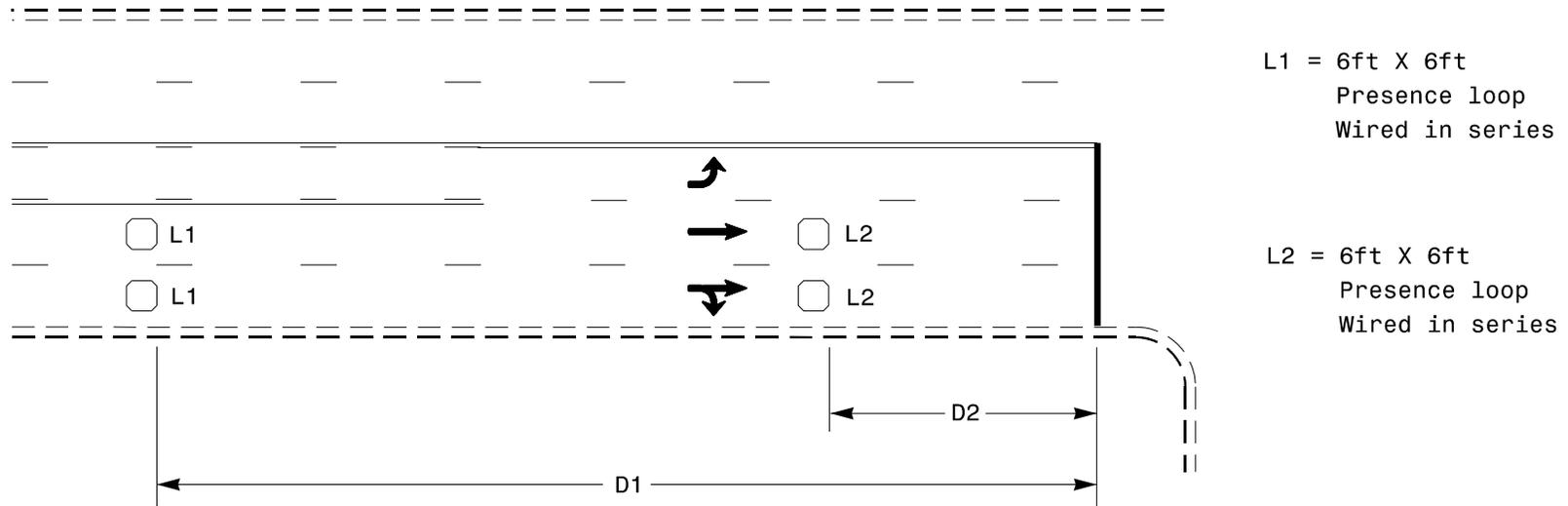
2024-05

STD. NO.

4.1.1

SHEET 2 OF 4

Extend (Stretch) Detection



Design Considerations:

- High speed [≥ 40 MPH]
- High volume driveways between L1 and L2

Notes:

- Appropriate for use with non-intrusive detection
- Loops L1 can double as system detectors, IF wired to separate detectors/ channels
- Passage time typically 2.0 seconds
- Loop placement may be varied due to design constraints such as bridges or poor pavement, or non-standard placement of existing loops. In such cases, recalculate Extend times for L1.

Design Speed (MPH)	D1 (feet)	D2 (feet)	Extend (sec.)
40	250	80	1.3
45	300	90	1.6
50	355	100	1.9
55	420	110	2.2
60	475	120	2.5
65	550	130	2.8

$$\text{Extend time (sec)} = \left(\frac{(D1-D2) \text{ feet}}{(\text{Design Speed} - 5) \text{ mph}} \times \frac{3600 \text{ sec/hr}}{5280 \text{ ft/mi}} \right) - \text{Gap time}$$

Loop Placement for Main Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

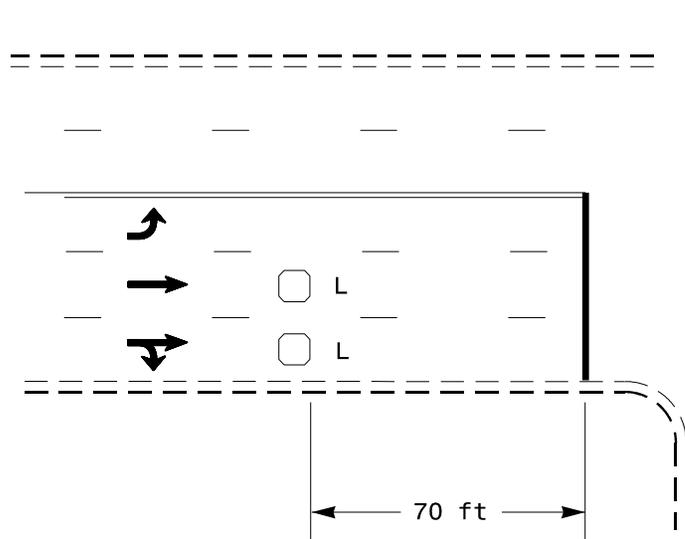
STD. NO.

4.1.1

SHEET 3 OF 4

2024-05

Low Speed Detection

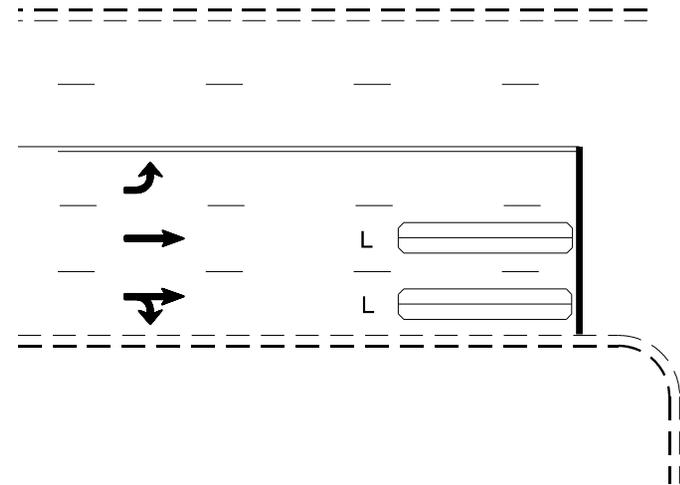


L = 6ft X 6ft

Presence loop, wired in series

Design Considerations:

- Low speed [≤ 35 MPH]
- Passage time typically 3.0 seconds
- Preferred option
- Set Non-Lock Detector to "OFF"
- May be used on 35 MPH single lane approaches;
coordinate with Division and/or Municipality



L = 6ft X 40ft

Quadrupole loop, wired to
separate detectors/channels

Design Considerations:

- Low speed [≤ 35 MPH]
- Passage time typically 0-2 seconds
- Appropriate for use with soft recall
- Set Non-Lock Detector to "OFF"

Loop Placement for Main Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

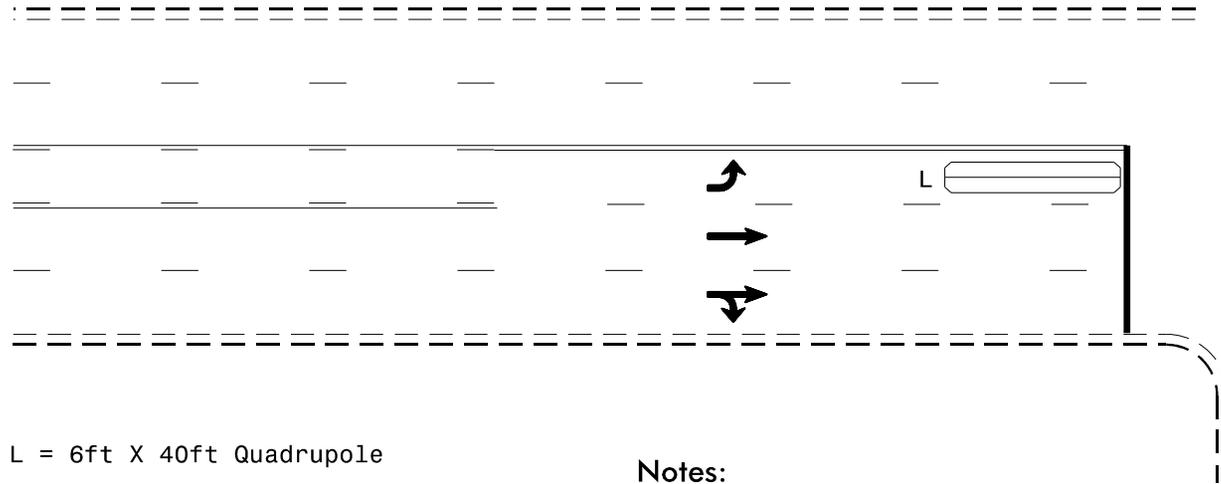
STD. NO.

4.1.1

SHEET 4 OF 4

2024-05

Presence Detector



L = 6ft X 40ft Quadrupole
 or, if longer detection area is needed:
 6ft X 50ft Quadrupole
 or
 6ft X 60ft Quadrupole

Notes:

- Loops may not be required for all main street permissive turns
- Option to use 6ft X 6ft loop to wire in series with 70' through loops.

Loop Type	Delay time	Delay During Green
Left Turn Loop on Main Street with Low Speed or Stretch Detection	0 sec	N/A
Left Turn Loop on Main Street with Volume Density Detection	3-5 sec	Yes
Left Turn Loop on Side Street	2-3 sec if "clipping" prevention is desired; 0 sec otherwise	No

Loop Placement for Permissive Left Turns

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

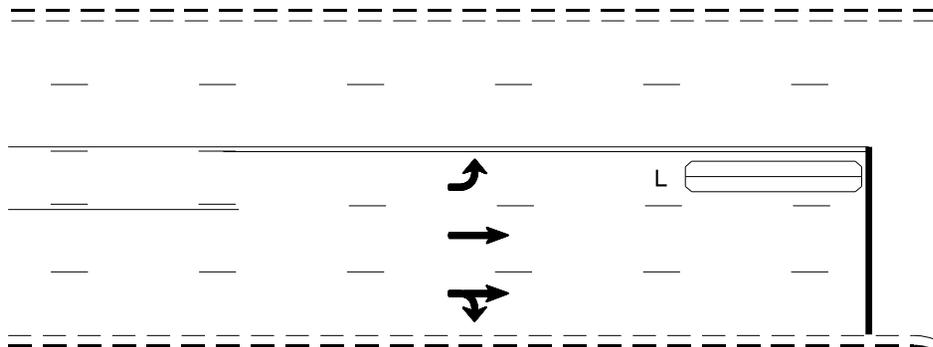
2024-05

STD. NO.

4.1.2

SHEET 1 OF 1

Presence Loop with 2 Channel Detector



L = 6ft X 40ft Quadrupole loop
 or, if longer detection area is needed:
 6ft X 50ft Quadrupole loop
 or
 6ft X 60ft Quadrupole loop

Design Considerations:

- Facilitates upgrade to fully protected or downgrade from fully protected
- Calls protected phase when delay time is met by a single vehicle
- Consider queue loop (Std. No. 4.1.3:2) for light left turn traffic or for light opposing through traffic

Note:

- Calling/extending the permissive phase may not be required for main street loops
- Gap time typically 1-3 seconds

Loop Type	Detector Channel	Phase	Delay Time	Delay During Green
Left Turn Loop on Main Street with Low Speed or Stretch Detection	1	Protected Phase	10-30 sec (15 Typical)	No
	2	Permissive Phase	0 sec	N/A
Left Turn Loop on Main Street with Volume Density Detection	1	Protected Phase	10-30 sec (15 Typical)	No
	2	Permissive Phase	3-5 sec (3 Typical)	Yes
Left Turn Loop on Side Street	1	Protected Phase	10-30 sec (15 Typical)	No
	2	Permissive Phase	3 sec if "clipping" prevention is desired; 0 sec otherwise	No

Loop Placement for Protected/Permissive Left Turns

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

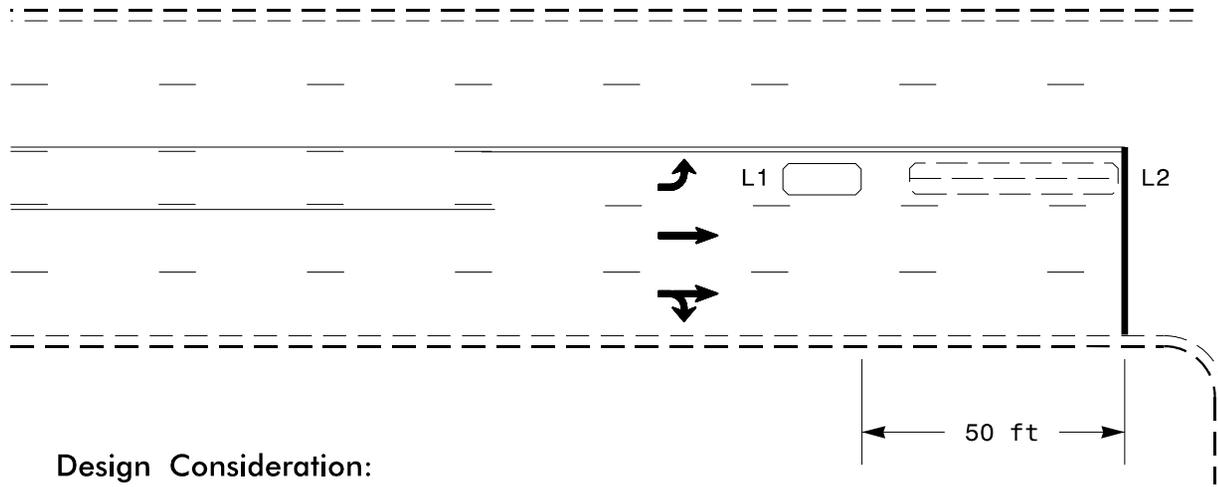
STD. NO.

4.1.3

SHEET 1 OF 2

2024-05

Queue Detector Loop



L1 = 6ft X 15ft
Presence loop (Queue detector) with Call delay

L2 = 6ft X 40ft
Quadrupole loop

Notes:

- L2 is optional when permitted phase has minimum recall
- L1 min green typically 8 seconds
- L1 passage time typically 2-4 seconds
- L2 passage time typically 1-3 seconds

Design Consideration:

- Calls up arrow when 3 or more cars waiting to turn
- Consider for side street left turns

Loop Type	Phase	Delay Time	Delay During Green
L1: Queue Detector	Protected Phase	5-15 sec	No
L2: Left Turn Loop on Main Street with Low Speed or Stretch Detection	Permissive Phase	0 sec	N/A
L2: Left Turn Loop on Main Street with Volume Density Detection	Permissive Phase	3-5 sec	Yes
L2: Left Turn Loop on Side Street	Permissive Phase	3 sec if "clipping" prevention is desired; 0 sec otherwise	No

Loop Placement for Protected/Permissive Left Turns

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

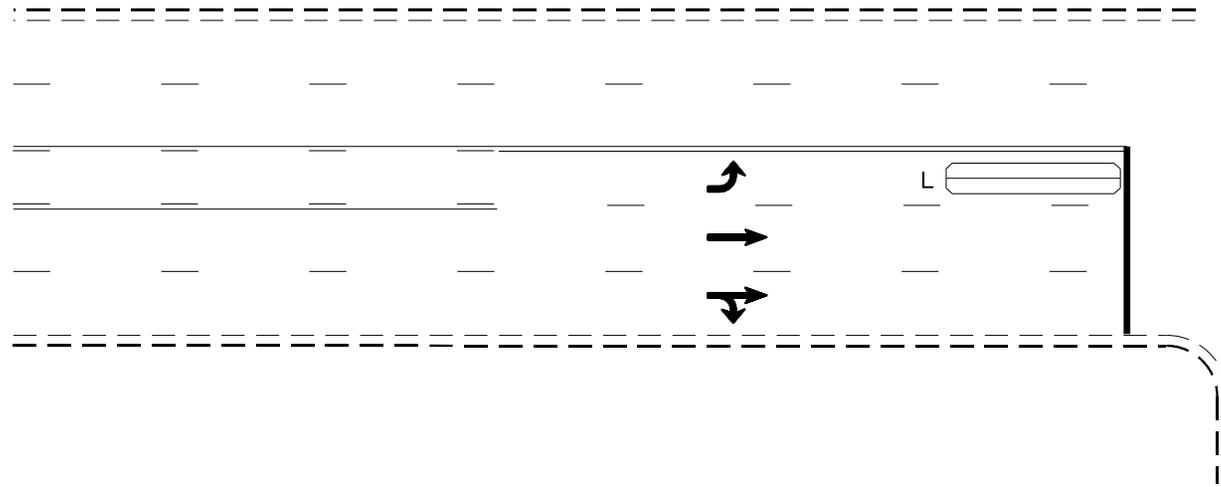
STD. NO.

4.1.3

SHEET 2 OF 2

2024-05

Presence Detector



L = 6ft X 40ft Quadrupole
or, if longer detection area is needed:
6ft X 50ft Quadrupole
or
6ft X 60ft Quadrupole

Notes:

- Passage time typically 1-3 seconds
- A short (2 or 3 sec) call delay may be used if turning vehicles are able to "clip" loop L
- If call delay is used, do not program Delay During Green

Loop Placement for Protected Left Turns

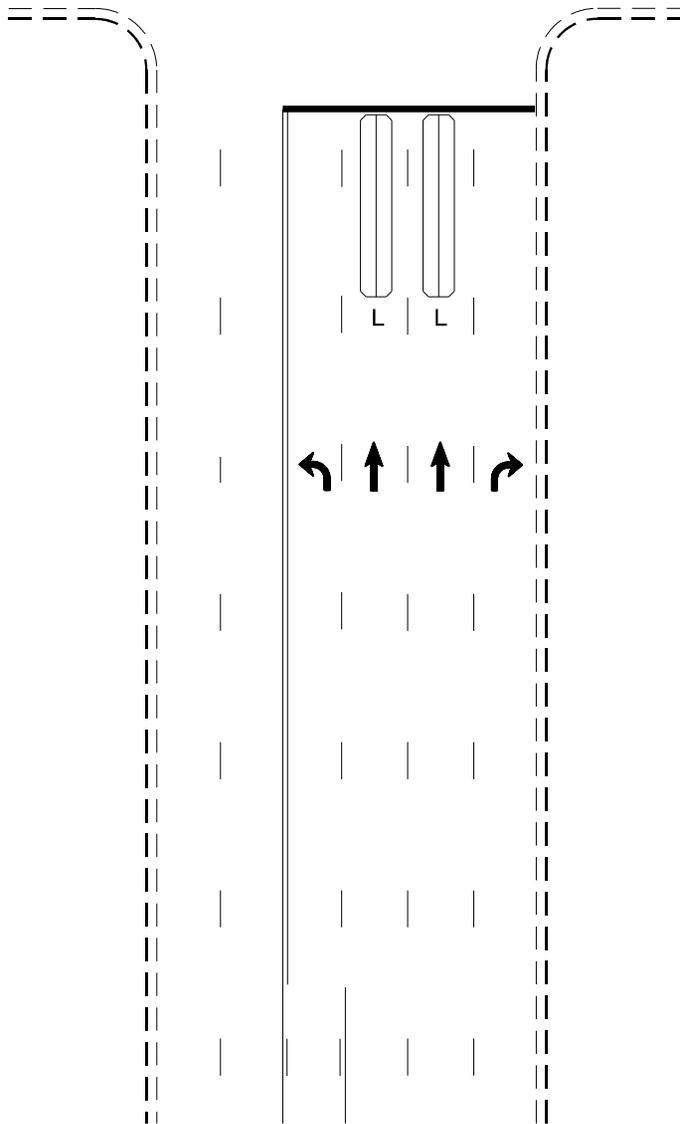
SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

4.1.4

SHEET 1 OF 1



Typical Presence Detection

L = 6ft X 40ft
 Quadrupole loop
 Wired to separate detectors/channels

or, if longer detection area is needed:

6ft X 50ft Quadrupole
 or
 6ft X 60ft Quadrupole

Notes:

- Consider delay (NOT Delay During Green) if through lane is shared with a right-turn move, except where right turn on red is prohibited
- Passage time typically 1-3 seconds
- Set Non-Lock Detector to "OFF"
- Consider higher passage time or longer detection area under the following circumstances:
 - Steep positive approach grade
 - High truck volumes

Loop Placement for Side Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

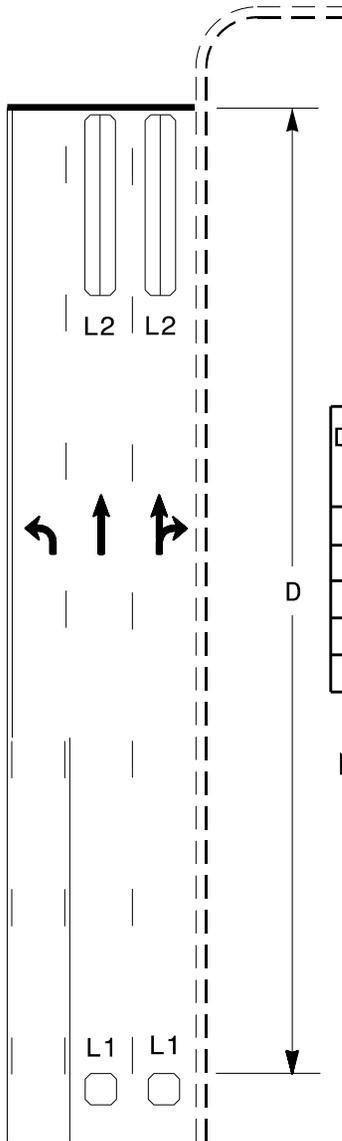
4.1.5

SHEET 1 OF 3

Volume Density Operation with DCEC (Delayed Call/Extended Call)

L1 = 6ft X 6ft Presence loop
Wired to separate detectors/channels
for TS2 and 2070 Controllers

L2 = 6ft X 40ft Quadrupole loop
Wired to separate detectors/channels



Design Speed (MPH)	D (feet)	L2	
		Delay (sec.)	Extend (sec.)
35	200	5	2.0
40	250	5	2.0
45	300	5	2.0
50	355	5	2.0
55	420	5	2.0

Design Considerations:

- Cross intersection AND
- Good horizontal and vertical alignment
- High speed [≥ 40 MPH]
- In some cases can provide better efficiency than "stretch" detection
- May be used on 35 MPH approaches; coordinate with Division and/or Municipality

Notes:

- Do not program "ACTUATIONS B4 ADD" (not applicable for 2070 controllers), "SEC. PER ACTUATION" and "MAX. INITIAL."
- Program "Delay During Green" on loops L2
- Set Non-Lock Detector for sidestreet through movement.
- Loops L1 should be programmed for "EXTEND" but NOT "CALL."
- Delay times are shown in whole seconds
- Extend times are shown in intervals of .1 second

- For TS2 controllers, loops L1 must be programmed with 100 second delay (INHIBIT DELAY DURING GREEN = YES) to ensure that the loop acts to extend the phase only.
- Loops L1 can double as system detectors if wired separately.
- See Std. 4.1.1, Sheet 1 for Min and Max Gap (Passage) times

Loop Placement for Side Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

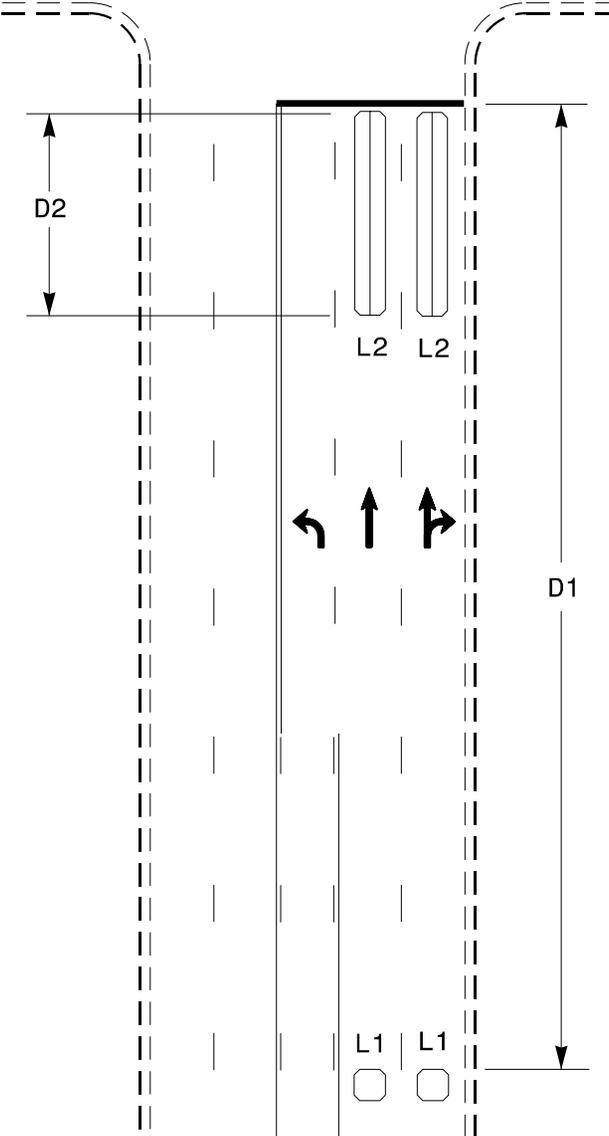
STD. NO.

4.1.5

SHEET 2 OF 3

2025-02

Extend (Stretch) Detection



L1 = 6ft X 6ft

Presence loop, Wired in series

L2 = 6ft X D2 Quadrupole loop

Wired to separate detectors/channels

Design Speed (MPH)	D1 (feet)	D2 (feet)	Passage Time (sec.)	L1 Extend (sec.)
35	200	40	2.0	1.7
		60	1.0	2.2
40	250	40	2.0	2.1
		60	1.0	2.7
45	300	40	2.0	2.4
		60	1.0	3.1
50	355	40	2.0	2.8
		60	1.0	3.5
55	420	40	2.0	3.2
		60	1.0	3.9

Design Considerations:

- Cross Intersection AND Good Horizontal and Vertical Alignment
- High speed [≥ 40 MPH]
- May be used on 35 MPH approaches; coordinate with Division and/or Municipality

Notes:

- Loops L1 should be programmed for "EXTENSION" but NOT "CALLING."
- Set Non-Lock Detector for sidestreet through movement.
- Loop placement may be varied due to design constraints such as bridges or poor pavement, or non-standard placement of existing loops. In such cases, recalculate
- For TS2 controllers, in addition to appropriate extend time, loops L1 must be programmed with 100 second delay (INHIBIT DELAY DURING GREEN = YES) to ensure that the loop acts to only extend the phase.
- Loops L1 can double as system detectors, if wired separately.

Extend times for L1 Extend time (sec) = $\left(\frac{(D1-D2) \text{ feet}}{(\text{Design Speed} - 5) \text{ mph}} \times \frac{3600 \text{ sec/hr}}{5280 \text{ ft/mi}} \right)$ - Gap time

Loop Placement for Side Street Through Movements

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

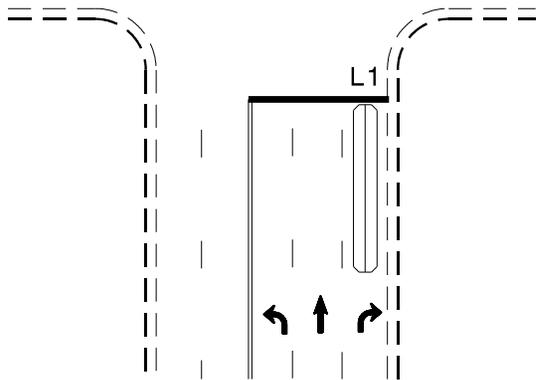
STD. NO.

4.1.5

SHEET 3 OF 3

Typical Detector Layouts

Standard Turn

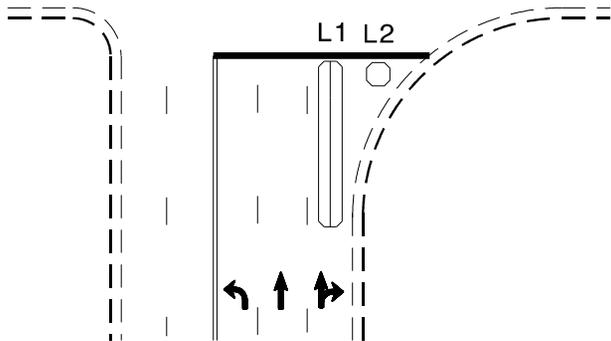


- L1 = 6ft X 40ft Quadrupole loop
- L2 = 6ft X 6ft [Minimum] Presence loop
Wired to separate detector/channel
- L3 = 6ft X 40ft Quadrupole loop

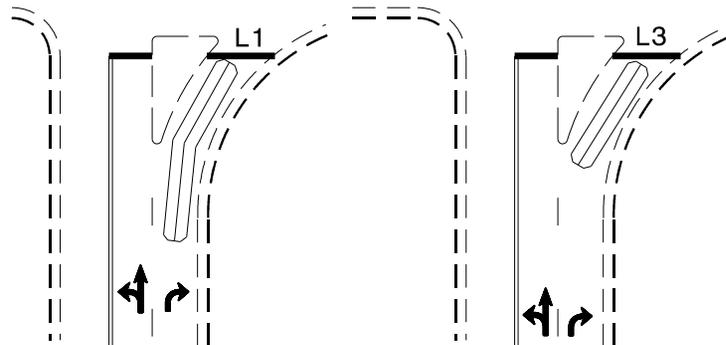
Notes:

- Call delay appropriate for right turn loops unless right turn on red is prohibited.
- Suggestions for delay:
 - Exclusive right turn lane: 15 sec
 - Right turn lane shared with through 10 sec
 - Right/Through/Left shared lane: 5 sec
- Do not program Delay During Green.

Wide Radius Turn



Channelized Turn



Detection is usually deleted for Yield condition

Loop Placement for Side Street Right Turns

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

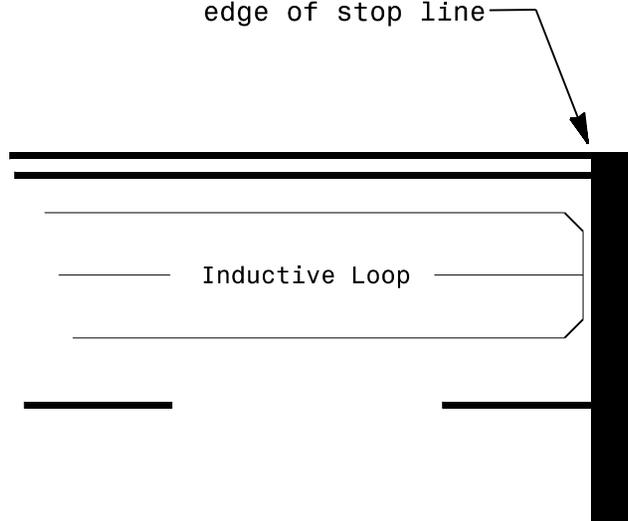
STD. NO.

4.1.6

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

Locate loop slightly
behind leading
edge of stop line



Note:

Loop may be located in advance of stop line when stop line is greater than 15' from edge of intersecting roadway, or when loop detects a permissive or protected/permissive left turn.

However, this practice should be kept to a minimum as it also encourages drivers to stop beyond the stop line and still be detected, in effect, negating the purpose of the stop line.

Placement of Presence Loops

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

4.1.7

SHEET 1 OF 1

Loop Dimension (feet)	Turns	Inductance (μ h)	Loop Wire feet	Sealant (gal)*	Sawcut (feet)
6 X 6	3	72	72	0.8	24
	4	120	96		
	5	180	120		
	6	252	144		
6 X 15	2	63	84	1.3	42
	3	126	126		
	4	210	168		
6 X 25	2-4-2	218	224	2.7	87
6 X 30	2-4-2	258	264	3.1	102
6 X 40	2-4-2	338	344	4.0	132
6 X 50	2-4-2	418	424	5.0	162
6 X 60	2-4-2	498	504	5.9	192

* Amount of sealant is rounded up to nearest tenth of a gallon

Amount of Inductance, Loop Wire, Sealant and Sawcut for Inductive Loops

Calculate additional loop wire or sawcut for loop wire tail section by measuring length of tail section from loop to edge of pavement.

OR

$$L \text{ (ft)} = 6 + (N - 1)12$$

Where: L = Length of loop wire or sawcut
N = Number of lanes crossed by tail section

To calculate additional sealant for loop wire tail section:

$$S \text{ (gal)} = L \text{ (ft)} / 33$$

Where: S = Amount of sealant
L = Length of sawcut required for tail section

Loop Wire and Lead-In Calculations

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

4.2

SHEET 1 OF 2

Loop Inductance Notes

- Loop inductance should be equal to or greater than the lead-in inductance.
A 2-to-1 ratio is preferable.
- Average lead-in cable inductance is .22 μ h/ft
- The minimum total inductance on a single digital detector (channel) is 50 μ h,
the maximum is 1000 μ h.
- The maximum number of turns is 6.
- If the loop (excluding quadrupoles) will have more than 2" of cover, add
1 turn to the loop over the normal calculated number of turns.
- Loops connected in series

$$L_{Total} = L_1 + L_2 + \dots + L_N$$
 Where: N = Number of loops in series
 L = Loop inductance (μ h)
- Recommended number of turns for a single 6' X 6' loop:

Length of Lead-in (feet)	Number of Turns
< 250	3
250-375	4
375-525	5
> 525	6

Loop Wire and Lead-In Calculations

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

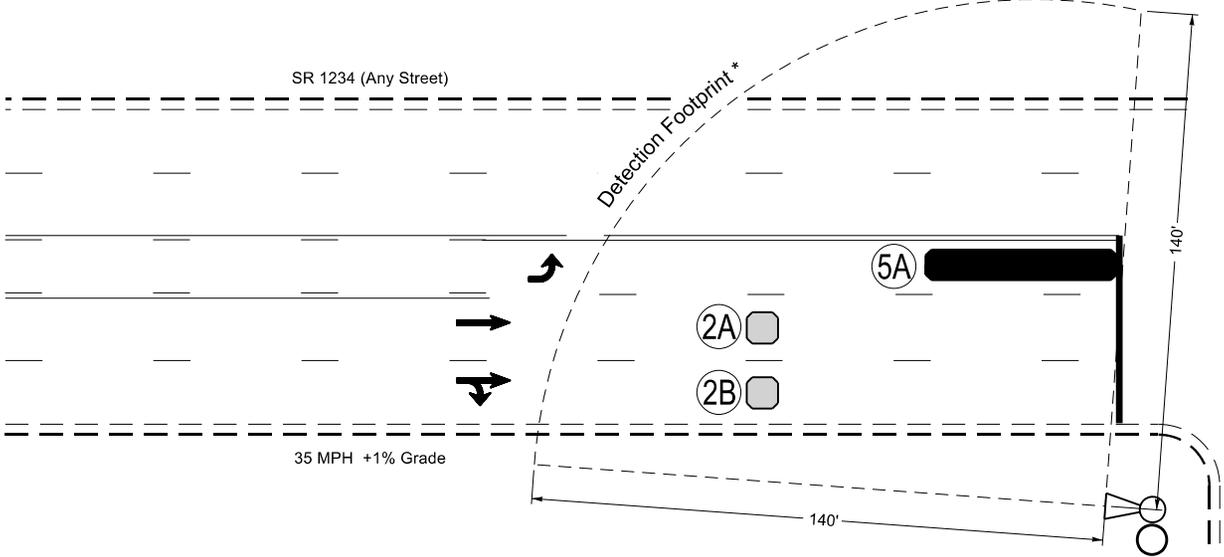
2021-07

STD. NO.

4.2

SHEET 2 OF 2

Multi-Zone Microwave Detection (PRESENCE)



Design Considerations:

- Loops are not feasible due to bridges, poor pavement, or anywhere loop lead-in can not be reasonably maintained such as constructions zones, etc.
- Preferred for projects where loops are maintained through multiple phases of construction and final design.
- Potential to detect up to 16 zones per unit with the option for High Resolution Data collection.
- Consult with Division and/or Municipality

Notes:

- Microwave detector shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions. Include Note 82 for Microwave Detection in the Plan Notes.
- To count traffic volumes, 2 foot zones may be programmed.

* For illustrative purposes ONLY. Footprint and detector do not need to be shown on plans. Only show detection zones (i.e., 2A, 2B, 5A etc.).

MAXTIME DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART											
DETECTOR					PROGRAMMING						
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	CALL PHASE	DELAY TIME	EXTEND TIME	EXTEND	ADDED INITIAL	CALL DELAY DURING GREEN	NEW CARD
2A	*	70	*	-	2	-	-	X	-	X	*
2B	*	70	*	-	2	-	-	X	-	X	*
5A	*	0	*	X	5	15.0	-	X	-	X	*
					2	-	-	X	-	X	*

* Microwave Detection Zone

LEGEND

PROPOSED

Non-Intrusive Detection Zone

EXISTING

Non-Intrusive Detection

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

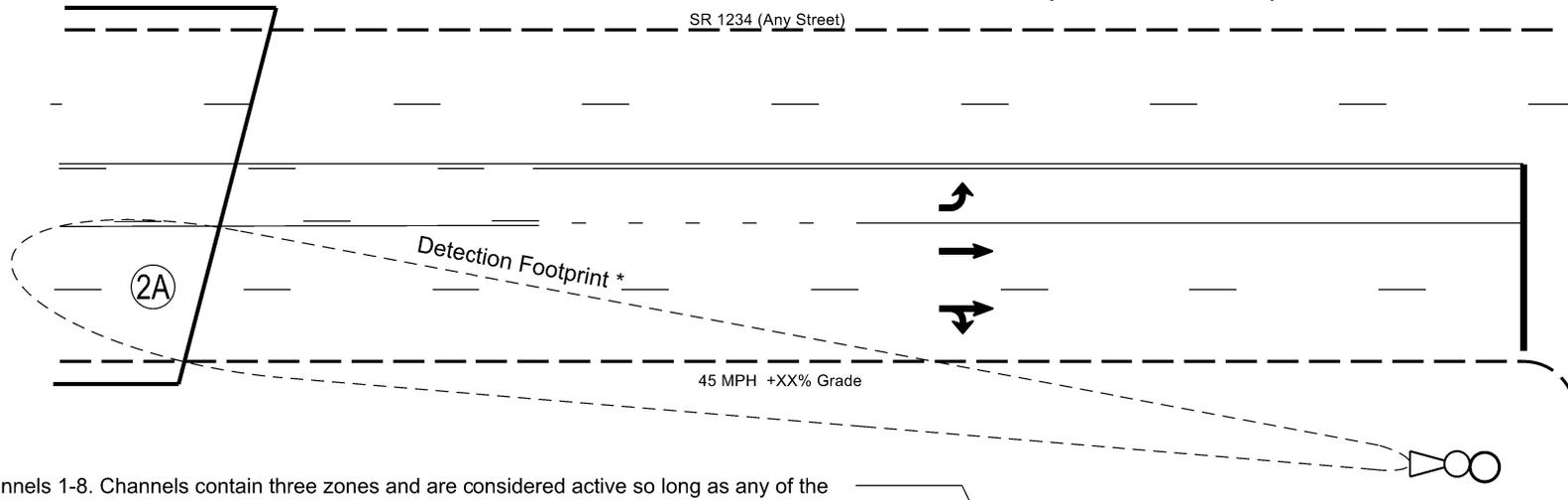
STD. NO.

4.3

SHEET 1 OF 4

2025-02

Multi-Zone Microwave Detection (ADVANCE)



Select channels 1-8. Channels contain three zones and are considered active so long as any of the three zones are active.

Input the corresponding signal phase for the detection zone. _____

Specify the cardinal direction of travel (NB,SB,EB,WB). _____

Select Priority Type _____

Three levels may be assigned for each sensor: Level 1, Level 2 and QUEUE Clearance. Levels 1 and 2 allow for dilemma zone protection by emulating volume density features such as a variable gap time dependent on the approaching vehicle's speed and the selected detection range. QUEUE Clearance provides extended allowable headway during the beginning of a phase to avoid early termination of a phase due to slow moving vehicles caught in the startup queue. QUEUE Clearance effectively mimics the impact of the added initial by enabling slow-moving vehicles to trigger calls even if their estimated time of arrival and speed do not meet the criteria for triggering a call in Levels 1 or 2.

The Discovery Zone specifies the classification of vehicles at a given distance. Level 1 is typically reserved for high profile vehicles that may be detected at distances greater than or equal to 750'. Level 2 is used for all vehicles detected below 750'.

Microwave Detection (2A)			
FUNCTION	Sensor 1		
Channel	1		
Phase	6		
Direction of Travel	EB		
Type	Priority		
Level	1	2	QUEUE
Discovery Zone (ft)	>= 750	< 750	-
Range (ft)	900-100	600-100	150-100
Enable Speed	Y	Y	Y
Speed Range (mph)	35-100	35-100	1-35
Enable Estimated Time of Arrival	Y	Y	N
Estimated Time of Arrival (sec)	2.5-10.0	2.5-6.5	-

Non-Intrusive Detection

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

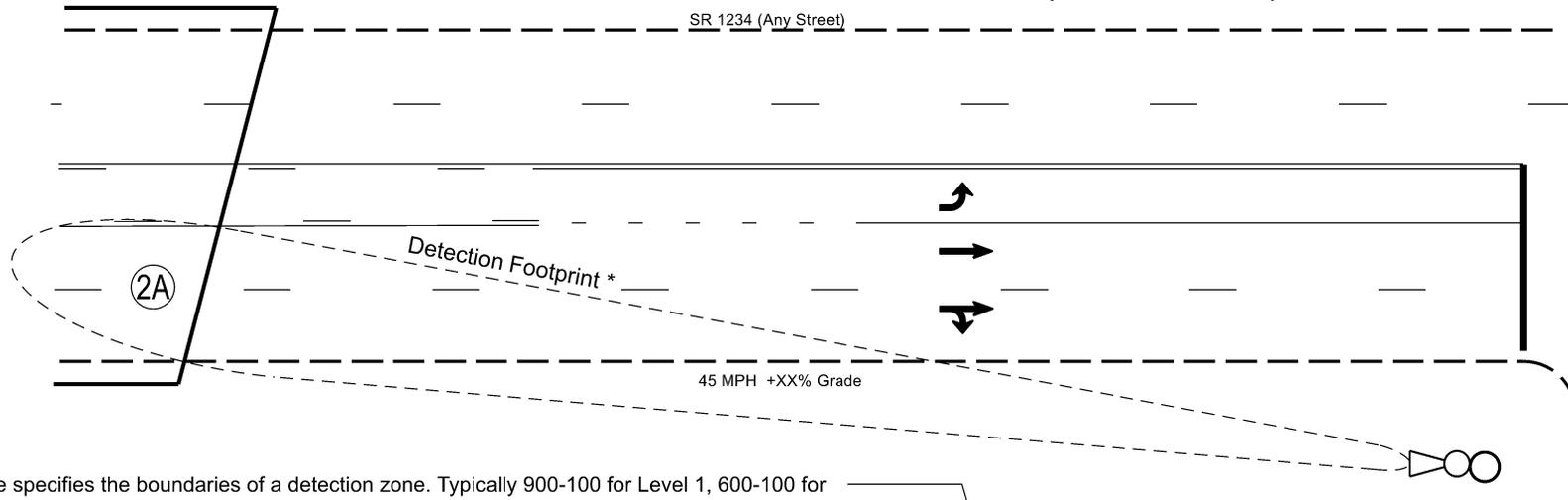
STD. NO.

4.3

SHEET 2 OF 4

2025-02

Multi-Zone Microwave Detection (ADVANCE)



The Range specifies the boundaries of a detection zone. Typically 900-100 for Level 1, 600-100 for Level 2 and 150-100 for QUEUE Clearance detection.

Choose Yes(Y) or No(N) to enable speed measurement, typically enabled for all levels.

The Speed Range specifies the speed at which vehicles will be detected on each level. Lowest speed typically 10 mph below posted speed limit for Levels 1 and 2 and 1-35 (10 MPH below posted speed) for QUEUE.

Choose Yes(Y) or No(N) to enable Estimated Time of Arrival, typically Yes(Y) for Levels 1 and 2. Input No(N) for QUEUE Clearance.

Typically set to 2.5-10.0 for Level 1. Typically set to 2.5-6.5 for Level 2. (Do not set Estimated Time of Arrival for QUEUE Clearance level.

Notes:

- Microwave detector shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions. Include Note 82 for Microwave Detection in the Plan Notes.
- If Level 1 is not used, omit column and use Level 2 for standard detection.

* For illustrative purposes ONLY. Footprint does not need to be shown on plans. Only show detection zones label (i.e, 2A etc.).

Microwave Detection (2A)			
FUNCTION	Sensor 1		
Channel	1		
Phase	6		
Direction of Travel	EB		
Type	Priority		
Level	1	2	QUEUE
Discovery Zone (ft)	>= 750	< 750	-
Range (ft)	900-100	600-100	150-100
Enable Speed	Y	Y	Y
Speed Range (mph)	35-100	35-100	1-35
Enable Estimated Time of Arrival	Y	Y	N
Estimated Time of Arrival (sec)	2.5-10.0	2.5-6.5	-

Non-Intrusive Detection

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

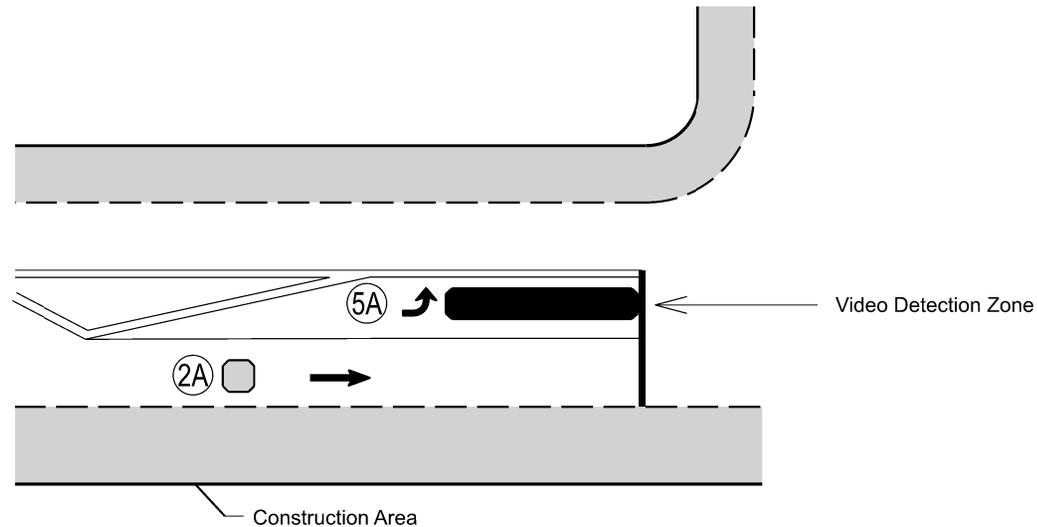
STD. NO.

4.3

SHEET 3 OF 4

2025-02

Video Detection Systems (Loop Emulator, ITS Plus)



Design Consideration:

- Loops are not feasible due to bridges, poor pavement, or anywhere loop lead-in can not be reasonably maintained such as constructions zones, etc.
- Flexibility is desired in detection areas due to traffic shifts associated with construction phasing.
- Function similar to inductive loops.
- Consult with Division if video detection is desired for Final Design or permanent detection.

Notes:

- Cannot be used for vehicle counting.
- Cannot be used for system detection.
- When used, include Note L 134 for Video Detection in the Plan Notes.

MAXTIME DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART												
DETECTOR					PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	CALL PHASE	DELAY TIME	EXTEND TIME	EXTEND	ADDED INITIAL CALL	DELAY DURING GREEN	NEW CARD	
2A	6X6	70	*	*	2	-	-	X	-	X	-	*
5A	6X40	0	*	*	5	15	-	X	-	X	-	*
					2	-	-	X	-	X	-	*

* Video Detection Zone

Non-Intrusive Detection

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

4.3

SHEET 4 OF 4

2025-02

NOTES

WHEN TO USE

- 1A** Refer to "Roadway Standard Drawings NCDOT" dated January 2018 and "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated January 2018.
- 1B** Refer to "Roadway Standard Drawings NCDOT" dated January 2018, "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated January 2018, and all applicable sections of the latest version of the generic Project Special Provisions. The PSP can be accessed at the following website: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/safety/Pages/TSMO-Design-Resources.aspx>
- 2A** Refer to "Roadway Standard Drawings NCDOT" dated January 2024 and "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated January 2024.
- 2B** Refer to "Roadway Standard Drawings NCDOT" dated January 2024, "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated January 2024, and all applicable sections of the latest version of the generic Project Special Provisions. The PSP can be accessed at the following website: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/safety/Pages/TSMO-Design-Resources.aspx>
- 3** Do not program signal for late night flashing operation unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.
- 4** This location contains railroad preemption phasing. Do not program signal for late night flashing operation.
- 5** Omit phase 1 during phase 2 on.
- 6** Omit phase 5 during phase 6 on.
- 7** Omit phase 3 during phase 4 on.
- 8** Omit phase 7 during phase 8 on.
- 9** Program controller to clear from phase # to phase # by progressing through phase # (see Electrical Details).

- 1A** All Plans except Developer Plans that use 2018 standards
- 1B** Developer/Private Plans that use 2018 standards
- 2A** All Plans except Developer Plans that use 2024 standards
- 2B** Developer/Private Plans that use 2024 standards
- 3** For locations without railroad preemption
- 4** For locations with railroad preemption
- 5** Phase omit note for NEMA and 2070 operation
- 6** Phase omit note for NEMA and 2070 operation
- 7** Phase omit note for NEMA and 2070 operation
- 8** Phase omit note for NEMA and 2070 operation
- 9** Additional note for omit situations for NEMA and 2070 operation

Plan Notes

Signal Design Section
 Transportation Mobility and Safety Division
 North Carolina Department of Transportation

Std. No.
5.0

Sheet 1 of 5

NOTES

WHEN TO USE

- 10 Enable Backup Prevent (Protect) to allow the controller to clear from phase # to phase # by progressing through an all red display.
- 11 Disable Backup Prevent (Protect) for phase #.
- 12 Phase 1 and/or phase 5 may be lagged.
- 13 Phase 3 and/or phase 7 may be lagged.
- 14 The order of phase 3 and phase 4 may be reversed.
- 15 The order of phase 1 and phase 5 may be reversed, but phase 1 and phase 5 shall not operate simultaneously.
- 16 The order of phase 3 and phase 7 may be reversed, but phase 3 and phase 7 shall not operate simultaneously.
- 17 Program phase 4 and phase 8 for dual entry.
- 18 Program phase 2 as a dummy phase for Ring 1.
- 19 Program phase 4 as a dummy phase for Ring 1.
- 20 Remove existing signal heads numbered #.
- 21 Reposition existing signal heads numbered #.
- 22 Install backplates for signal heads numbered #.
- 23 Tether signal heads numbered #.
- 24 Run all lead-in cable overhead on existing utility poles where possible.
- 25 (Disconnect and/or) Abandon existing loops #.

- 10 Alternate to Phase Omits for Red Revert. Use Prevent for ASC/3 and MAXTIME and Protect for OASIS
- 11 Plans with existing controllers where backup protection exists but is no longer needed. Use Prevent for ASC/3 and MAXTIME and Protect for OASIS
- 12 Exclusive left turns or Flashing Yellow Arrows
- 13 Exclusive left turns or Flashing Yellow Arrows
- 14 Split side streets
- 15 Required lead/lag phasing where opposing left turns cannot safely operate together
- 16 Required lead/lag phasing where opposing left turns cannot safely operate together
- 17 For use with NEMA equipment
- 18 SE-PAC software when only phase 6 is used in phasing, such as a one way street
- 19 SE-PAC software when only phase 8 is used in phasing, such as a one way street or tee intersection
- 20 Use when removing an existing signal head, blank out sign, or sign that is not being replaced on the plan
- 21 Use when head is "slid" on same span
- 22 As needed
- 23 As needed
- 24 Urban projects with many driveways
- 25 Use when changing detection scheme and a loop or loops is no longer needed but is still present

Plan Notes

Signal Design Section
 Transportation Mobility and Safety Division
 North Carolina Department of Transportation

Std. No.
5.0

Sheet 2 of 5

NOTES

WHEN TO USE

- 26 Set all detector units to presence mode.
- 27 In the event of loop replacement, refer to the current TSMO Design Manual and submit a Plan of Record to the Signal Design Section.
- 30 Locate new cabinet so as not to obstruct sight distance of vehicles turning right on red.
- 31 Install new controller in existing cabinet.
- 32 The cabinet should be designed to include an Auxiliary Output File for future use.
- 33 Program controller to operate using FYA compact mode.
- 40 Omit "WALK" and flashing "DON'T WALK" with no pedestrian calls.
- 41 Program pedestrian heads to countdown the flashing "Don't Walk" time only.
- 42 To provide a leading pedestrian interval on phase X, program FYA head(s) numbered ## to delay for x seconds after the start of the phase X walk interval. See Electrical Details for programming.
- 43 Replace existing pushbuttons with APS Pushbuttons.
- 44 This intersection features accessible pedestrian signals utilizing percussive tone walk indications and/or speech messages.
- 45 Phase # pedestrian timing is designed as a 2 stage crossing. The FDW time shown is only intended to get a pedestrian to/from the median during a single crossing. Install R10-3d signs as appropriate.
- 46 Illuminate Sign X at the beginning of the preceding red clearance interval. This sign will remain illuminated until the beginning of the succeeding green phase (or end of Phase # Flashing "DON'T WALK" interval).

- 26 All Plans with actuated loops
- 27 Use when not replacing "old style" loops or loops that do not match current standards
- 30 Locations with new cabinet installations
- 31 Use when upgrading to 2070LX controller but maintaining existing cabinet
- 32 Use on plans with new 170 cabinets and no FYA where FYA could be installed in future
- 33 Use for Pole Mounted Cabinets operating FYAs
- 40 Use for pedestrian-activated signals (pushbuttons)
- 41 Use with countdown ped heads
- 42 Use to provide LPI by delaying adjacent right turn FYA and opposing left turn FYA while allowing through movement to begin. Only use if Right FYA exists.
- 43 Use when adding Accessible Pedestrian Signal (APS) to existing signal with pedestrian pushbuttons
- 44 Use with Accessible Pedestrian Signals
- 45 Use with a 2 stage pedestrian crossing
- 46 Use with a Blankout sign that only illuminates during specific phases or situations during normal operation.

Plan Notes

Signal Design Section
 Transportation Mobility and Safety Division
 North Carolina Department of Transportation

Std. No.
5.0

Sheet 3 of 5

NOTES

WHEN TO USE

50	Flash beacons # continuously.	50	Actuated flasher plan
51	Flash beacons # when actuated by loop #.	51	Actuated flasher plan
52	Activate beacons ## to flash 3 seconds prior to the end of phase X green. These beacons shall remain flashing until the beginning of phase X green.	52	Use when advance warning beacons operating on an overlap are located at the advance detection loop(s). Actual time could vary as needed
53	Thirty days after implementation of the revised signal operation, signs # and/or orange flags may be removed at the discretion of the Regional Traffic Engineer.	53	As Needed when plans being revised from fully protected or split side street phasing to protected-permissive phasing
54	Existing ...sign(s) (code) may be removed at the discretion of the Engineer.	54	As needed when (lane control) sign(s) exist at a location but are not required by standard and could be removed
55	Remove existing sign (Rx-x).	55	As needed when sign is removed from previous plan
56	Existing "Left Turn Yield on Green" ball sign(s)-(R10-12) may be removed at the discretion of the Regional Traffic Engineer.	56	As Needed when plans being revised from fully protected or split side street phasing to protected-permissive phasing
61A	Pavement markings are existing.	61A	Signal upgrades or PORs with no marking changes
61B	Pavement markings are existing unless otherwise shown/noted.	61B	Signal upgrades with minor marking changes on plan
62	Repaint stop lines and/or crosswalks.	62	As needed
63	Install pavement markings to designate lane separations for **APPROACH** .	63	As needed
70	Locate emergency vehicle preemption switch in **LOCATION** .	70	Emergency vehicle preemption (pushbutton actuated)
71	The Division Traffic Engineer will determine the Delay Time and Preempt Dwell Min Time for the emergency vehicle preemption timing.	71	Emergency vehicle preemption (pushbutton actuated)
72	This intersection features an optical preemption system. Shown locations of optical detectors are conceptual only.	72	Optical preemption
73	This intersection features a GPS preemption system.	73	GPS preemption

Plan Notes

Signal Design Section
 Transportation Mobility and Safety Division
 North Carolina Department of Transportation

Std. No.
5.0

Sheet 4 of 5

NOTES

WHEN TO USE

- 74** Program signal heads numbered # to clear to all red before going into preempt.
- 75** Ensure flashing operation does not alter operation of blankout signs.
- 76** Clear signal heads numbered # from flashing 8" yellow to steady 12" yellow during interval 1 and steady red during interval.
- 77A** Program phase 40 to run concurrently with all phases during normal operation. Phase 39 must be incompatible with phase 40 and included as a track clear phase.
- 77B** Program parent phases for overlap "P" for all phases used in normal operation.
- 77C** Ensure overlap "P" is terminated prior to entering preemption.
- 78** The Division (City) Traffic Engineer will determine the hours of use for each phasing plan.
- 79** Loop XX serves as a queue backup detector. After # seconds of constant actuation, the detector unit places a call to the controller to preempt normal operation to clear out the storage lanes.
- 80** Existing Yellow Change Interval for phase # may be decreased by # seconds per week until the required value is reached.
- 81** This intersection uses video detection. Install detectors according to the manufacturer's instructions to achieve the desired detection.
- 82** This intersection uses multi-zone microwave detection. Install detectors according to the manufacturer's instructions to achieve the desired detection.
- 83** Maximum times shown in timing chart are for free-run operation only. Coordinated signal system timing values supersede these values.

- 74** Use in place of dummy phase for emergency vehicle preemption
- 75** Standard with blank-out signs for RR preemption
- 76** Preemption plans with advance (8") flashing heads (for non-standard clearance)
- 77A** All MAXTIME plans with Railroad Preemption that have a Track Clearance phase
- 77B** OASIS plans with Advance Railroad Preemption that have a Track Clearance phase
- 77C** ASC/3 Plans with Advance Railroad Preemption
- 78** Plans designed with multiple or time of day phasing options
- 79** Backup queue detectors
- 80** Major adjustments to clearance times
- 81** Video detection
- 82** Microwave detection
- 83** Standard with coordination

Other Notes may be added as needed based on the Individual Plan

Plan Notes

Signal Design Section
 Transportation Mobility and Safety Division
 North Carolina Department of Transportation

Std. No.
5.0

Sheet 5 of 5

MAXTIME with 170 Cabinet

List All Loops in Ascending
Alpha Numeric Order

MAXTIME DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART												
DETECTOR					PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	CALL PHASE	DELAY TIME	EXTEND TIME	EXTEND	ADDED INITIAL	CALL	DELAY DURING GREEN	NEW CARD
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (w/Stretch or Low Speed Detection on phase 6)	1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	15.0	-	X	-	X	-
						6	-	-	X	-	X	-
Volume Density Loop (Combined System Loop Not Used in Kinetic System)	2A	6X6	420	5	X	2	-	-	X	X	X	-
						4A	6X6	300	5	X	4	-
Volume Density with DCEC for Side Street	4B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	4	5.0	2.0	X	-	X	X
						5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	15.0
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (with Volume Density on phase 2)	5B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	2	3.0	-	X	-	X	X
						5B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	15.0
Side Street Right Turn Overlap Loop	6A, 6B	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	-	1.6	X	-	X	-
						6C, 6D	6X6	90	4	-	6	-
Stretch Loops	7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	7	3.0	-	X	-	X	-
						7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	3.0
Protected Only Left Turn Loop	8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	10.0	-	X	-	X	-
Permissive Only Left Turn Loop	8B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	10.0	-	X	-	X	-
Side Street Through-Right Turn Combo Lane Loop	S3	6X6	+120	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
System Loop												

(Use X for Yes
or -for No)

Enter Delay times
in intervals of
0.1 seconds

Enter Extend times
in intervals of
0.1 seconds

Detector Programming Attributes

Extend - Select to extend the green time by Passage time in Timing Chart; resets after each call. (Usually selected)

Added Initial - Enable when Volume Density is Used for Loop

Call - Select to place call during yellow or red. (Usually selected)

Delay During Green- Select to delay during red, yellow, and green (full time delay). If not selected, controller will time delay during red and yellow only. Normally used only with Volume Density.

Loop Chart Typicals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.1

SHEET 1 OF 6

2024-05

OASIS with 170 Cabinet

OASIS 2070 LOOP & DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART

List All Loops in Ascending Alpha Numeric Order

Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases
(w/Stretch or Low Speed Detection on phase 6)
Volume Density Loop Combined w/System Loop
(Combined Loop Not Used in Centracs Systems)

Volume Density with DC/EC for Side Street

Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases
(with Volume Density on phase 2)

Side Street Right Turn Overlap Loop

Stretch Loops

Protected Only Left Turn Loop

Permissive Only Left Turn Loop

Side Street Through-Right Turn Combo Lane Loop

System Loop

INDUCTIVE LOOPS					DETECTOR PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	PHASE	CALLING	EXTENSION	FULL TIME DELAY	STRETCH TIME	DELAY TIME	SYSTEM LOOP	NEW CARD
1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	Y	Y	-	-	15	-	-
					6	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-
2A/S1	6X6	420	5	Y	2	Y	Y	-	-	-	Y	-
4A	6X6	300	5	Y	4	-	Y	-	-	-	-	Y
					4B	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	4	Y	Y
5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	5	Y	Y	-	-	15	-	-
					2	Y	Y	Y	-	3	-	-
5B	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	5	Y	Y	-	-	15	-	Y
6A, 6B	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	Y	Y	-	1.6	-	-	-
					6C, 6D	6X6	90	4	-	6	Y	Y
7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	7	Y	Y	-	-	3	-	Y
8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	8	Y	Y	-	-	3	-	Y
8B	6X40	0	2-4-2	Y	8	Y	Y	-	-	10	-	Y
S3	6X6	+120	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Y	-

(Use Y for Yes
or - for No;
Do not use X)

Enter Stretch times
in intervals of
0.1 second

Delay times are
Whole seconds

Detector Programming Attributes

Calling - Select to place call during yellow or red.

Full Time Delay - Select to delay during red, yellow, and green.
If not selected, controller will time delay during red and yellow only. Normally used only with Volume Density.

Extension - Select to extend the green time. Gap resets after each call. Must be selected whenever Vehicle Extension Time is entered in the timing chart. (Usually selected)

Stretch Time - Enter times in intervals of .1 second

Loop Chart Typicals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.1

SHEET 2 OF 6

2021-07

ASC/3 with 170 Cabinet

List All Loops in Ascending Alpha Numeric Order

ASC/3 DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART												
DETECTOR					PROGRAMMING							
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	PHASE	CALLING	EXTEND TIME	DELAY TIME	USE ADDED INITIAL	TYPE	SYSTEM LOOP	NEW CARD
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (w/Stretch or Low Speed Detection on phase 6)	1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	Yes	-	15.0	-	N	-
						6	Yes	-	-	-	N	-
Volume Density Loop combined w/System Loop	2A/S1	6X6	420	5	X	2	Yes	-	-	X	N	X
Volume Density with DCEC for Side Street	4A	6X6	300	5	X	4	No	-	-	X	N	-
	4B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	4	Yes	2.0	5.0	-	G	-
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (with Volume Density on phase 2)	5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	Yes	-	15.0	-	N	-
						2	Yes	-	3.0	-	G	-
Side Street Right Turn Overlap Loop	5B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	Yes	-	15.0	-	N	-
Stretch Loops	6A, 6B	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	Yes	1.6	-	-	N	-
	6C, 6D	6X6	90	4	-	6	Yes	-	-	-	N	-
Protected Left Turn Loop	7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	7	Yes	-	3.0	-	N	-
Permissive Only Left Turn Loop	8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	Yes	-	3.0	-	N	-
Side Street Through-Right Turn Combo Lane Loop	8B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	Yes	-	10.0	-	N	-
System Loop	S3	6X6	+120	4	-	0	No	-	-	-	N	X

Enter Extend times in intervals of 0.1 second

Enter Delay times in intervals of 0.1 second from 0.0 to 255.0

Detector Programming Attributes

Delay - As Needed for Clipping or to reduce immediate call to serve phase, to allow for permissive turns or right on red when allowed

Extend (Stretch) - Enter times in intervals of .1 second

Use Added Initial: Use Only with Volume Density

ASC/3 Detector Type:

- S = Standard Loop, W/ Extend and Delay
- N = NTCIP (Used for Counting)
- G = Full Time Delay
- C = Call Phase only when Phase is NOT Green (Typically Not Used)
- B = Enables Bike Min Green when Phase is served (Typically Not Used)

Loop Chart Typical

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.1

SHEET 3 OF 6

2021-07

ASC/3 with NEMA Cabinets: Use with Cary Signal System

List All Loops in Ascending Alpha Numeric Order

LOOP & DETECTOR INSTALLATION CHART													
ASC/3-2070LXN2 CONTROLLER w/ TS-2 CABINET													
INDUCTIVE LOOPS						DETECTOR UNITS							
LOOP NO.	SIZE (ft)	DIST. FROM STOP LINE (ft)	TURNS	NEW	EXISTING	NEMA PHASE	NEW	EXISTING	TIMING		USE ADDED INITIAL	DET. TYPE	
									FEATURE	TIME			
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (w/Stretch or Low Speed Detection on phase 6)	1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	X	1	-	X	DELAY	15.0	-	N
							6	-	X	-	-	-	-
Volume Density Loop combined w/System Loop	2A/S1	6X6	300	4	X	-	2	-	X	-	-	X	N
							0	-	X	SYSTEM DETECTOR		-	N
Volume Density with DC/EC for Side Street	4A	6X6	300	4	X	-	4	X	-	-	-	X	N
	4B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	-	4	X	-	DCEC	5.0/2.0	-	G
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (with Volume Density on phase 2)	5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	-	5	-	X	DELAY	15.0	-	N
							2	-	X	DELAY	3.0	-	G
Side Street Right Turn Overlap Loop	5B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	-	5	X	-	DELAY	15.0	-	N
Stretch Loops	6A, 6B	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	X	6	-	X	EXTEND	1.6	-	N
	6C, 6D	6X6	90	4	-	X	6	-	X	-	-	-	N
Protected Left Turn Loop	7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	-	7	X	-	DELAY	3.0	-	N
Permissive Only Left Turn Loop	8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	-	8	X	-	DELAY	3.0	-	N
Side Street Through-Right Turn Combo Lane Loop	8B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	-	8	X	-	DELAY	10.0	-	N
System Loop	S3	6X6	+120	4	-	X	0	-	X	SYSTEM DETECTOR		-	N

Enter Extend times in intervals of 0.1 second

Enter Delay times in intervals of 0.1 second from 0.0 to 255.0

Detector Programming Attributes

Delay - As Needed for Clipping or to reduce immediate call to serve phase, to allow for permissive turns or right on red when allowed

Extend (Stretch) - Enter times in intervals of .1 second

Use Added Initial: Use Only with Volume Density

ASC/3 Detector Type:

- S = Standard Loop, W/ Extend and Delay
- N = NTCIP (Used for Counting)
- G = Full Time Delay
- C = Call Phase only when Phase is NOT Green (Typically Not Used)
- B = Enables Bike Min Green when Phase is served (Typically Not Used)

Loop Chart Typical

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.1

SHEET 4 OF 6

2021-07

SE-PAC: Use with Hickory and Raleigh Signal Systems

List All Loops in Ascending Alpha Numeric Order

SE-PAC 2070 LOOP & DETECTOR UNIT INSTALLATION CHART

INDUCTIVE LOOPS						DETECTOR PROGRAMMING															
LOOP NO.	SIZE (ft)	TURNS	DIST. FROM STOP LINE (ft)	NEW	EXISTING	ASSIGNED PHASE	TIMING		OPERATION MODE							SWITCH	SYSTEM LOOPS	STATUS			
							DELAY	EXTEND (STRETCH)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6			7	NEW	EXISTING	
									VEHICLE	PEDESTRIAN	1 CALL	STOP A	STOP B	PROT/PER LEFT	PROT/PER THROUGH	AND					
* Left Turn Loop for Alternate Phasing	1A	6X40	2-4-2	0	-	X	1	5.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
Volume Density Loop combined wSystem Loop	2A/S1	6X6	5	300	X	-	2	- SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
Volume Density with DCEC for Side Street	4A	6X6	5	300	X	-	4	100.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
	4B	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	4	5.0 SEC.	2.0 SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (Stretch or Volume Density on Main Street)	5A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	5	15.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
							2	- SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Side Street Right Turn Overlap Loop	5B	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	5	15.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
Stretch Loops	6A, 6B	6X6	EXISTING	300	-	X	6	- SEC.	1.6 SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
	6C, 6D	6X6	4	90	-	X	6	- SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
Protected Left Turn Loop	7A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	7	3.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
Permissive Only Left Turn Loop	8A	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	8	3.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
Side Street Through-Right Turn Combo Lane Loop	8B	6X40	2-4-2	0	X	-	8	10.0 SEC.	- SEC.	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-
System Loop	S3	6X6	4	+120	-	X	0	- SEC.	- SEC.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	X

* When Alternate Phasing is used, the loop should only be programmed to call and extend the left turn phase with a 5 second delay.

Detector Programming Attributes

Vehicle- Vehicle detector operates as standard vehicle detector

Pedestrian - Vehicle detector operates as standard pedestrian detector (Not Used)

Switch - List an alternate phase that could be extended when green by loop detection while the assigned primary phase is red (Not Normally Used)

Extend (Stretch) - Enter times in intervals of .1 second

Features Typically Not Used:

- 1 Call
- Stop A
- Stop B
- Prot/Per Left
- Prot/Per Through
- And

Enter Extend times in intervals of 0.1 second

Enter Delay times in intervals of 0.1 second from 0.0 to 255.0

SE-PAC detectors cannot be programmed for Full Time Delay or variable operation Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing

Loop Chart Typicals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.1

SHEET 5 OF 6

2021-07

Trafficware Apogee: Use with Greensboro Signal System

List All Loops in Ascending Alpha Numeric Order

LOOP & DETECTOR UNIT INSTALLATION CHART													
TRAFFICWARE APOGEE SOFTWARE 2070 CONTROLLER													
INDUCTIVE LOOPS					DETECTOR PROGRAMMING								
LOOP	SIZE (FT)	DISTANCE FROM STOP LINE (FT)	TURNS	NEW LOOP	PHASE	SWITCH (PHASE)	DELAY TIME	STRETCH TIME	CALLING	EXTENSION	ADDED INIT.	SYSTEM LOOP	NEW CARD
1A	6X40	0	2-4-2	-	1	-	5.0	-	X	X	-	-	-
2A/S1	6X6	300	5	X	2	-	-	-	X	X	X	X	-
4A	6X6	300	5	X	4	-	100.0	-	-	X	-	-	X
4B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	4	-	5.0	2.0	X	X	-	-	X
5A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	2	15.0	-	X	X	-	-	X
5B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	5	-	15.0	-	X	X	-	-	X
6A, 6B	6X6	300	EXISTING	-	6	-	-	1.6	X	X	-	-	-
6C, 6D	6X6	90	4	-	6	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	-
7A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	7	-	3.0	-	X	X	-	-	X
8A	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	-	3.0	-	X	X	-	-	X
8B	6X40	0	2-4-2	X	8	-	10.0	-	X	X	-	-	X
S3	6X6	+120	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-

* Left Turn Loop for Alternate Phasing
 Volume Density Loop combined w/System Loop
 Stretch Detection for Side Street
 Protected/Permissive Left Turn Calling 2 Phases (Stretch or Volume Density on Main Street)
 Side Street Right Turn Overlap Loop
 Stretch loops
 Protected Left Turn Loop
 Permissive Only Left Turn Loop
 Side Street Through-Right Turn Combo Lane Loop
 System Loop

**2070 Controller
 w/Trafficware Apogee
 Software
 (Formerly Naztec)**

Enter Delay times in intervals of 0.1 second from 0.0 to 255.0

Enter Stretch times in intervals of 0.1 second

* Trafficware Apogee loops cannot be programmed for variable phasing. When Alternate Phasing is used, the loop should only be programmed for the left turn phase with a 5 second delay.

Detector Programming Attributes

Switch (Phase) - Typically used with protected/permitted left turns to call and extend switched phase when it's green. In example above, phase 2 is left is extended after phase 5 terminates.

Extension - Select to extend the green time. (Usually selected)

Added Initial: Use Only with Volume Density Operation

Calling - Select to place call during red. (Usually selected)

Trafficware Apogee detectors cannot be programmed for Full Time Delay or variable operation Alternate (Time of Day) Phasing

Loop Chart Typicals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

5.1

SHEET 6 OF 6

MAXTIME Timing Chart (Part 1)

For All Plans

- Typically 7 seconds.
With LPI and no APS, Walk time = LPI + 7 seconds.
- Pedestrian Clear (See STD. 6.0)
- Main Street: Side Streets, Left Turns, and Main Street
 ≥ 50 MPH = 14 sec Stop Line Detection: Set to 4-8 sec
 40-45 MPH = 12 sec Typically 7 sec.
 ≤ 35 MPH = 10 sec
- Main Street - Typically 2.0 sec for stretch detection,
 3.0 sec for low speed detection. For Volume Density, amount
 of time required to get vehicle traveling 5 MPH under the
 speed limit from upstream loop to stop line, generally 6.0 sec.
 Side Street - Typically 1.0-3.0 sec. Adjust for size of
 detection area, grade, truck traffic, etc.
 (Left) Turning Phase - Typically 2.0 seconds for 6X40 loops
 at stop line.
- Maximum green times may be determined with the help of a
 software package. Alternately, a hand calculation may be
 suitable:

$$\text{Max Green} = 4 + 2 \left(\frac{\text{Heaviest PHV per lane}}{3600/\text{est cycle length}} \right) \quad \text{PHV} = \text{Peak hour volume}$$
- See STD. NO. 5.2.2
- Minimum Red used during Backup Protection. Typically set to
 5.0 for phase(s) used, otherwise default is 2.0 sec.
 (See Std. 2.2)
- Leading Pedestrian Interval (See STD. 6.0)
- Default is for detector to Lock call. Use X to set detector
 on Non Lock for stop line detection (most phases other than 2+6)
- NONE, MIN RECALL, MAX RECALL, SOFT RECALL, or PED RECALL
- ON or not selected (see Definitions)

MAXTIME TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
• Walk *	14	10	-
• Ped Clear	13	22	-
• Min Green *	12	7	7
• Passage *	6.0	2.0	2.0
• Max 1 *	75	30	20
• Yellow Change	4.2	3.7	3.0
• Red Clear	1.9	2.1	3.2
• Red Revert	5.0	2.0	2.0
Added Initial *	2.5	-	-
Maximum Initial *	34	-	-
Time Before Reduction*	15	-	-
Time To Reduce*	30	-	-
Minimum Gap	3.0	-	-
• Advance Walk	7	3	-
• Non Lock Detector	-	X	X
• Vehicle Recall	MIN RECALL	-	-
• Dual Entry	-	X	-

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Note: For Pre-Timed Signal, set Passage to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL.
 25.5 = Default time for normal phase time

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 1 OF 7

2024-05

MAXTIME Timing Chart (Part 2)

For Volume Density Plans (See 5.2.3 Sheet 1)

Variable Initial Features (Time only during non-green portion of phase)

- Amount added to Variable Initial Time (starting at 0) for each actuation of detector loops. Typical values:
 2.5 secs. for single through lane
 1.5-1.8 sec. for two through lanes
 1.0-1.5 sec. for three through lanes
 When traffic is more evenly distributed over multiple lanes, use lower number. Increase for high truck traffic.

- Time needed to service a queue reaching from detector loop to stop line. Calculated by:

$$\text{Maximum Variable Initial} = 4 + 2 \left(\frac{\text{Distance to loop}}{\text{Std veh length} = 20' (6m)} \right)$$

Gap Reduction Features (Time only during green portion of phase)

- Time that expires before gap reduction begins. Prevents premature transfer of green. Typically 15-30 secs., but never less than the minimum green.
 For sidestreet Volume Density, may use 0 or 5 sec.
- Amount of time over which gap time will reduce from initial value (Extension 1) to minimum value (Minimum Gap). Typically 30-60 secs.
 For side street Volume Density, may use 15 or 20 sec.
- Set equal to lowest gap time that allows vehicle to clear dilemma zone. Typically 3.0 sec. - 4.0 sec., but no lower than 3.4 sec. for 55 MPH (See STD. 4.1.1, Sheet 1)

Notes:

- The sum of the Time Before Reduction and the Time to Reduce should not exceed the Max Green 1 time.
- The Extension 1 resets to the initial value if the serviceable conflicting call is removed (eg. Turns right on red).

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

MAXTIME TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
Walk *	14	10	-
Ped Clear	13	22	-
Min Green *	12	7	7
Passage *	6.0	2.0	2.0
Max 1 *	75	30	20
Yellow Change	4.2	3.7	3.0
Red Clear	1.9	2.1	3.2
Red Revert	5.0	2.0	2.0
• Added Initial *	2.5	-	-
• Maximum Initial *	34	-	-
• Time Before Reduction*	15	-	-
• Time To Reduce*	30	-	-
• Minimum Gap	3.0	-	-
Advance Walk	7	3	-
Non Lock Detector	-	X	X
Vehicle Recall	MIN RECALL	-	-
Dual Entry	-	X	-

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Note: For Pre-Timed Signal, set Passage to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL.
 25.5 = Default time for normal phase time

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 2 OF 7

2024-05

OASIS Timing Chart

For All Plans

- See Sheet 1, Min Green 1
- See Sheet 1, Passage
- See Sheet 1, Max Green 1
- See STD. NO. 5.2.2
- Minimum Red used during Backup Protection. Typically set to 5.0 for phase(s) used, otherwise default is 2.0 sec. (See Std. 2.3)
- See Sheet 1, Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Don't Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Advance Walk

For Volume Density Plans

- See Sheet 2, Seconds per Actuation
- See Sheet 2, Maximum Variable Initial
- See Sheet 2, Time Before Reduction
- See Sheet 2, Time to Reduce
- See Sheet 2, Minimum Gap

For All Plans

- NONE, MIN RECALL, MAX RECALL, SOFT RECALL, or PED RECALL
- NONE, RED, or YELLOW (See Definitions)
- ON or not selected (see Definitions)
- ON or not selected, usually selected (see Definitions)

OASIS 2070 TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
• Min Green 1*	12	7	7
• Extension 1*	6.0	2.0	2.0
• Max Green 1*	75	30	20
• Yellow Clearance	4.2	3.7	3.0
• Red Clearance	1.9	2.1	3.2
• Red Revert	5.0	2.0	2.0
• Walk 1*	14	10	-
• Don't Walk 1	13	22	-
• Advanced Walk	7	3	-
• Seconds Per Actuation*	2.5	-	-
• Max Variable Initial*	34	-	-
• Time Before Reduction*	15	-	-
• Time To Reduce*	30	-	-
• Minimum Gap	3.0	-	-
• Recall Mode	MIN RECALL	-	-
• Vehicle Call Memory	YELLOW	-	-
• Dual Entry	-	ON	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Note: For Pre-Timed Signal, set Extension 1 to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL. Enter N/A for Vehicle Call Memory.

0 = Default time for normal phase time

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 3 OF 7

2023-02

ASC/3 (170) Timing Chart

For All Plans

- See Sheet 1, Min Green 1
- See Sheet 1, Advance Walk
- See Sheet 1, Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Don't Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Passage
- See Sheet 1, Max Green 1
- See STD. NO. 5.2.2
- Minimum Red used during Backup Protection. Typically set to 5.0 for phase(s) used, otherwise default is 2.0 sec. (See Std. 2.2)

For Volume Density Plans

- Actuations Before Add: Number of vehicles that arrive that will not count toward Maximum Initial value. For most controllers, this value is zero.
- See Sheet 2, Seconds per Actuation
- See Sheet 2, Maximum Variable Initial
- See Sheet 2, Time Before Reduction
- See Sheet 2, Time to Reduce
- See Sheet 2, Minimum Gap

For All Plans

- LOCK or NON-LOCK (See Definitions)
- NONE, VEH RECALL, MAX RECALL, SOFT RECALL, or PED RECALL
- ON or not selected (see Definitions)
- ON or not selected, usually selected (see Definitions)

ASC/3 TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
• Min Green *	12	7	7
• Delayed Green	7	3	-
• Walk *	14	10	-
• Ped Clear	13	22	-
• Veh. Extension *	6.0	2.0	2.0
• Max 1 *	75	30	20
• Yellow	4.2	3.7	3.0
• Red Clear	1.9	2.1	3.2
• Red Revert	5.0	2.0	2.0
• Actuations B4 Add *	-	-	-
• Seconds /Actuation *	2.5	-	-
• Max Initial *	34	-	-
• Time Before Reduction *	15	-	-
• Time to Reduce *	30	-	-
• Minimum Gap	3.0	-	-
• Locking Detector	X	-	-
• Recall Position	VEH. RECALL	-	-
• Dual Entry	-	X	-
• Simultaneous Gap	X	X	X

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Note: For Pre-Timed Signal, set Vehicle Extension to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL.
25.5 = Default time for normal phase time

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 4 OF 7

2023-02

ASC/3 (NEMA) Timing Chart (For Cary 2070 Signal System)

For All Plans

- See Sheet 1, Min Green 1
- See Sheet 1, Advance Walk
- See Sheet 1, Passage
- See STD. NO. 5.2.2
- See Sheet 1, Max Green 1
- NONE, MIN RECALL, MAX RECALL, SOFT RECALL or PED RECALL
- Lock - ON or OFF
- See Sheet 1, Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Don't Walk 1

For Volume Density Plans

- See Sheet 3, Actuations Before Add
- See Sheet 2, Seconds per Actuation
- See Sheet 2, Maximum Variable Initial
- See Sheet 2, Time Before Reduction
- See Sheet 2, Time to Reduce
- See Sheet 2, Minimum Gap

For All Plans

- ON or not selected (see Definitions)
- ON or not selected, usually selected (see Definitions)

Note: For Pre-Timed Signal, set Vehicle Extension to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL.

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

TIMING CHART			
ASC/3-2070LXN2 CONTROLLER			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
• MINIMUM GREEN *	12	7	7
• DELAYED GREEN	7	3	-
• VEHICLE EXT. *	6.0	2.0	2.0
• YELLOW CHANGE INT	4.2	3.7	3.0
• RED CLEARANCE	1.9	2.1	3.2
• MAX 1 *	75	30	20
• RECALL POSITION	MIN RECALL	NONE	NONE
• LOCK DET.	ON	OFF	OFF
• WALK *	14	10	-
• PED CLEAR	13	22	-
• ACTUATION B4 ADD *	-	-	-
• SEC PER ACTUATION *	2.5	-	-
• MAXIMUM INITIAL *	34	-	-
• TIME B4 REDUCTION *	15	-	-
• TIME TO REDUCE *	30	-	-
• MINIMUM GAP	3.0	-	-
• DUAL ENTRY	OFF	ON	OFF
• SIMULTANEOUS GAP	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

25.5 = Default time for normal phase time

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 5 OF 7

2023-02

SE-PAC Timing Chart (Hickory and Raleigh Signal Systems)

For All Plans

- See Sheet 1, Min Green 1
- See Sheet 1, Passage
- See Sheet 1, Max Green 1
- See STD. NO. 5.2.2
- See Sheet 1, Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Don't Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Advance Walk

For Volume Density Plans

- See Sheet 2, Seconds per Actuation
- See Sheet 2, Maximum Variable Initial
- See Sheet 2, Time Before Reduction
- See Sheet 2, Time to Reduce
- See Sheet 2, Minimum Gap

For All Plans

- NONE, MIN RECALL, MAX RECALL, SOFT RECALL, or PED RECALL
- LOCK or NON-LOCK (See Definitions)
- ON or not selected (see Definitions)
- ON or not selected, usually selected (see Definitions)

Notes:

- SE-PAC Software cannot use Red Revert for backup protection. Phase omits must be used.
- For Pre-Timed Signal, set Pasasge Gap to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL. Enter NON-LOCK for Vehicle Call Memory.

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

SE-PAC 2070 TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
• Min Green *	12	7	7
• Passage Gap *	6.0	2.0	2.0
• Maximum Green *	75	30	20
• Yellow Change	4.2	3.7	3.0
• Red Clear	1.9	2.1	3.2
• Walk *	14	10	-
• Pedestrian Clear	13	22	-
• Advance Walk	7	3	-
• Added Initial *	2.5	-	-
• Maximum Initial *	34	-	-
• Time Before Reduction *	15	-	-
• Time To Reduce *	30	-	-
• Minimum Gap	3.0	-	-
• Recall Mode	MIN RECALL	-	-
• Vehicle Call Memory	LOCK	NON-LOCK	NON-LOCK
• Dual Entry	-	ON	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

25.5 = Default time for normal phase time

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 6 OF 7

2023-02

Trafficware Apogee Timing Chart (Greensboro Signal System)

For All Plans

- See Sheet 1, Min Green 1
- See Sheet 1, Passage
- See Sheet 1, Max Green 1
- See STD. NO. 5.2.2
- See Sheet 1, Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Don't Walk 1
- See Sheet 1, Advance Walk

For Volume Density Plans

- See Sheet 2, Seconds per Actuation
- See Sheet 2, Maximum Variable Initial
- See Sheet 2, Time Before Reduction
- See Sheet 2, Time to Reduce
- See Sheet 2, Minimum Gap

For All Plans

- NONE, MIN RECALL, MAX RECALL, SOFT RECALL, or PED RECALL
- YES or NO (See Definitions)
- ON or not selected (see Definitions)
- ON or not selected, usually selected (see Definitions)

Notes:

- For Pre-Timed signal, set Gap, Extension to 0.0 and Recall Position to MAX RECALL. Enter NO for Lock Calls.
- Trafficware Apogee Software cannot use Red Revert for backup protection. Phase omits must be used.

Note: The default entry for many features in the controller is 0. If a value is not changing on the signal plan (such as no pedestrian phase is used), show a dash (-) in the Timing Chart to show that the value does not change.

TRAFFICWARE APOGEE 2070 TIMING			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	5
• Min Green *	12	7	7
• Gap, Extension *	6.0	2.0	2.0
• Maximum Green 1 *	75	30	20
• Maximum Green 2 *	110	25	25
• Yellow Clear	4.2	3.7	3.0
• Red Clear	1.9	2.1	3.2
• Walk *	14	10	-
• Pedestrian Clear	13	22	-
• Green/Ped Delay	7	3	-
• Added Initial *	2.5	-	-
• Maximum Initial *	34	-	-
• Time Before Reduction *	15	-	-
• Time To Reduce *	30	-	-
• Minimum Gap	3.0	-	-
• Recall Mode	MIN RECALL	-	-
• Lock Calls	YES	NO	NO
• Dual Entry	-	ON	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

25.5 = Default time for normal phase time

Signal Plan Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.1

SHEET 7 OF 7

2023-02

Through Movement Clearance Distances

Show actual distance on drawing, but round clearance distance up to the nearest 5' increment on clearance calculation sheet
91' -> 95'

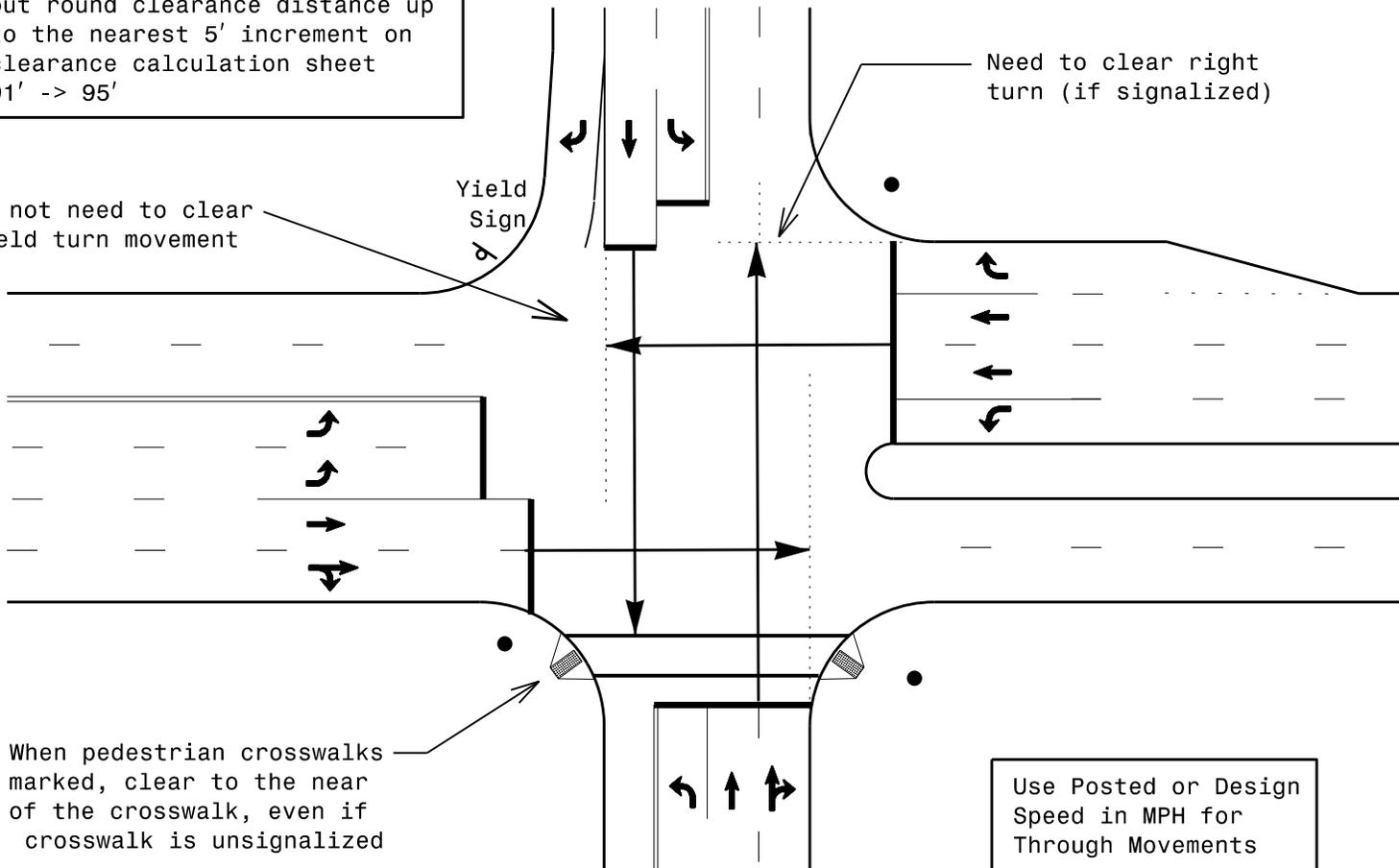
Do not need to clear Yield turn movement

Yield Sign

Need to clear right turn (if signalized)

When pedestrian crosswalks are marked, clear to the near side of the crosswalk, even if crosswalk is unsignalized

Use Posted or Design Speed in MPH for Through Movements



Change and Clearance Intervals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

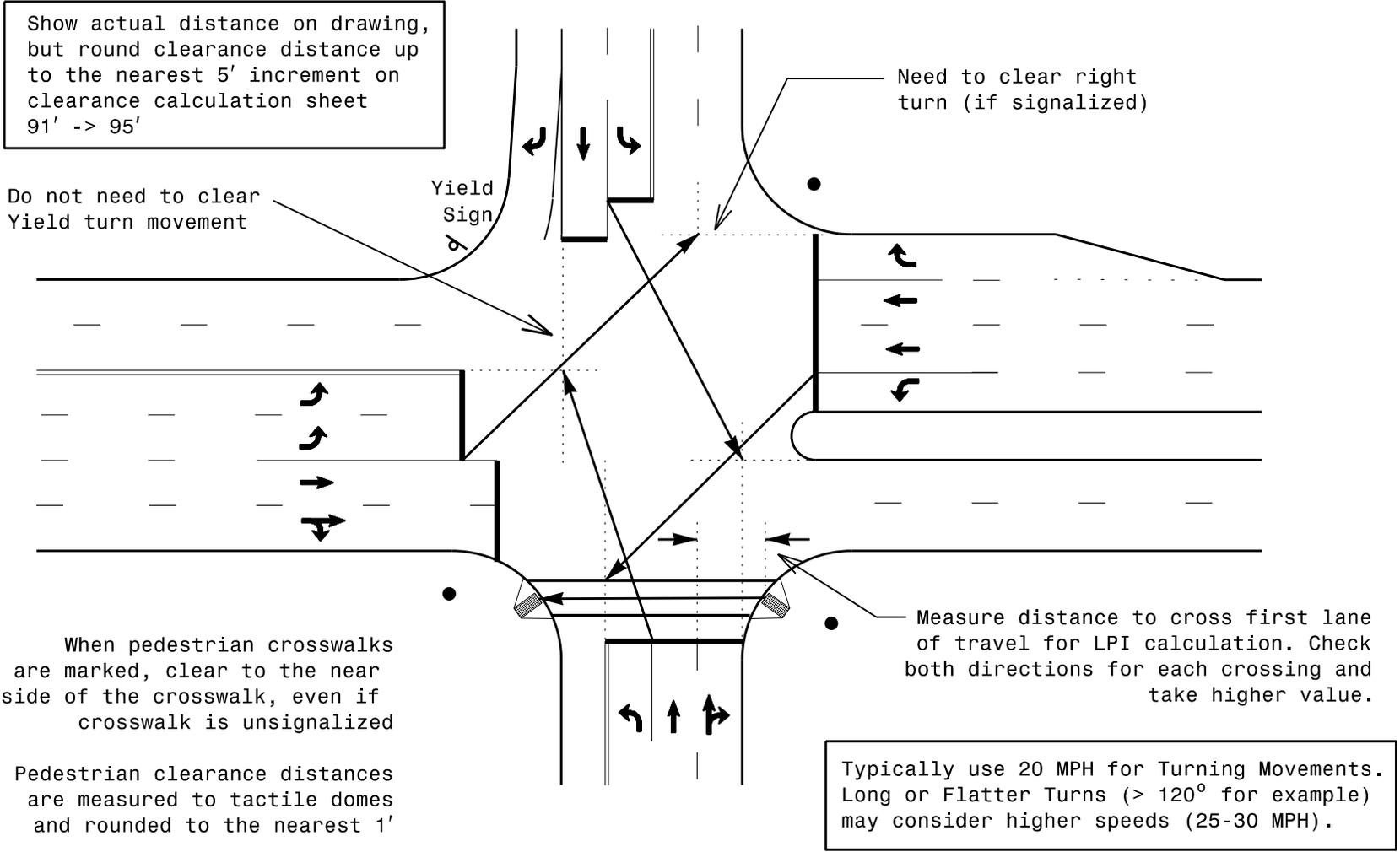
2024-05

STD. NO.

5.2.2

SHEET 1 OF 5

Standard Left Turn Movement Clearance Distances Median, Dual Left, Setback, Yield, Crosswalks, and LPI



Change and Clearance Intervals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

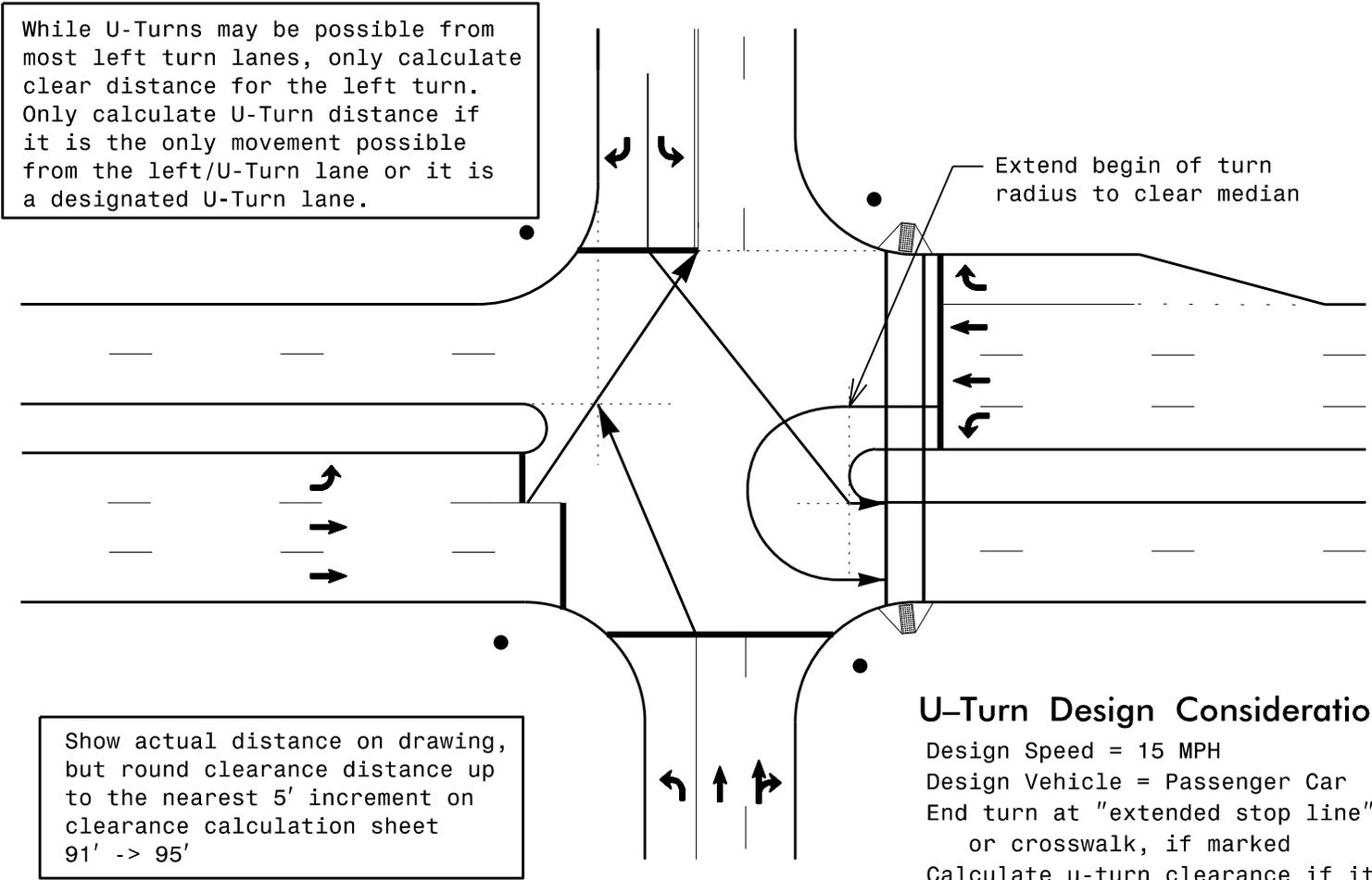
2024-05

STD. NO.

5.2.2

SHEET 2 OF 5

Other Left Turn Movement Clearance Distances Median, Dual Left, Setback, One Way, Crosswalks



Change and Clearance Intervals

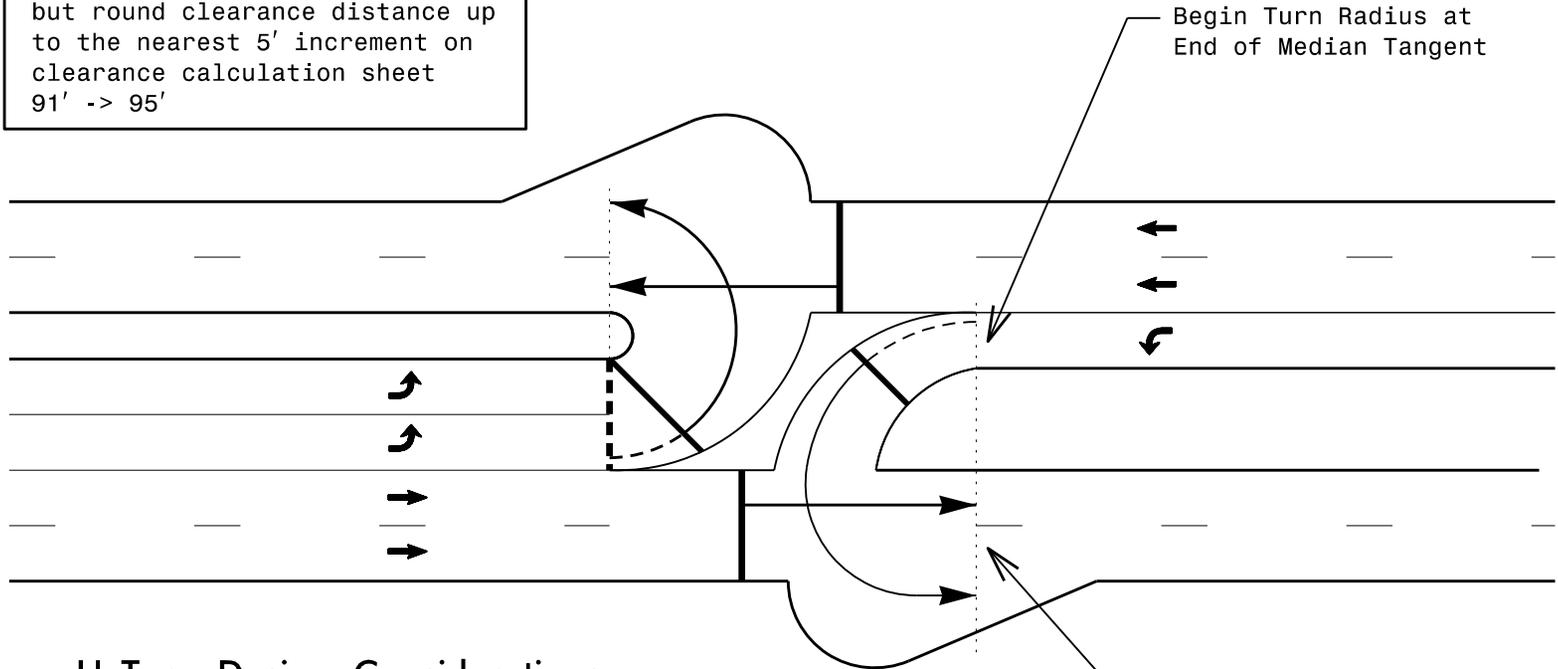
SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.
5.2.2
SHEET 3 OF 5

U-Turn Movement Clearance Distances Single and Dual Lanes

Show actual distance on drawing,
but round clearance distance up
to the nearest 5' increment on
clearance calculation sheet
91' -> 95'



U-Turn Design Considerations

- Design Speed = 15 MPH
- Design Vehicle = Passenger Car
- End turn at "extended stop line" or line perpendicular (90°) to edge of median tangent
- Calculate u-turn clearance if it is the only move possible (no left turn)

Begin Turn Radius at
End of Median Tangent

End Turn Radius
at Edge of Median
Tangent Extended

Change and Clearance Intervals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.2

SHEET 4 OF 5

2021-07

Determination of Yellow Change and Red Clearance Intervals

Yellow Change Interval

$$\text{Yellow interval} = t + \frac{v}{2a + 64.4g}$$

t = perception reaction time, typically 1.5 seconds

v = design speed*, in ft/sec

a = deceleration rate, typically 11.2 ft/sec²

g = grade

Round up to nearest 0.1 second.

Minimum yellow change interval is 3.0 seconds.

Hold stakeholder discussion** when calculated yellow change interval is longer than 6.0 seconds.

Red Clearance Interval

$$\text{Red interval} = \frac{w}{v} \quad \begin{array}{l} w = \text{width of intersection, in feet} \\ v = \text{design speed*}, \text{ in ft/sec} \end{array}$$

If the initial calculation results in an all red time longer than 3.0 seconds, recalculate the red time as follows:

$$\text{Recalculated red interval} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{w}{v} - 3 \right) + 3$$

Round up to nearest 0.1 second.

Minimum red clearance interval is 1.0 seconds.

Hold stakeholder discussion** when recalculated red clearance interval is longer than 4.0 seconds.

Notes

*Design speed is the posted speed limit for an approach. A speed study in combination with Division input and engineering judgement may determine if an alternate design speed is warranted.

**The purpose of a stakeholder discussion is to provide advance notification and involvement to stakeholders and provide an opportunity to consider possible countermeasures.

For most left turn lanes, assume a speed of 20 MPH, for U-Turn movements, assume a speed of 15 MPH. For locations with unusual conditions a higher or lower speed may be appropriate.

For separate (protected or P/P) left turn phases, calculate yellow and red intervals for the left turn movement.

For left turns without a separate phase (permitted or split), calculate yellow and red times for both the through movement and left turn movement. Use the highest yellow and enough red to equal the highest total time.

Where existing times are higher than calculated times, use the calculated values unless there is a documented history of the need for higher times. If approach is high speed and existing times are significantly higher than the calculated times, use the calculated values but consider adding a note to the plan to direct field forces to reduce the time incrementally. Include in the note how much and how often to reduce time until the final value is reached. (Ex. Existing Yellow Change Interval for phase 2 may be decreased by 0.2 seconds per week until the required value is reached.)

When using a Flashing YELLOW ARROW (FYA) for one or both compatible left turns on a street, the through movements shall be equal using the highest yellow and highest red required for each phase.

Source: Traffic Engineering Handbook, Fifth Edition, Institute of Transportation Engineers, 1999.

Change and Clearance Intervals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION

TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

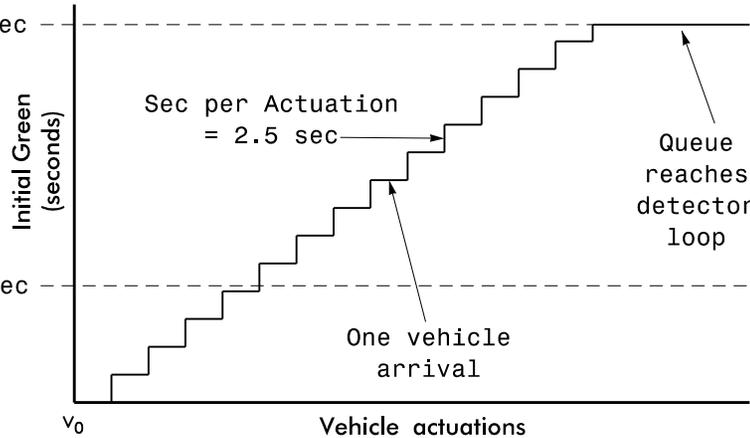
5.2.2

SHEET 5 OF 5

2024-05

Variable Initial Parameters

Maximum Initial = 34 sec



v_0 = Beginning of phase red with no vehicles waiting

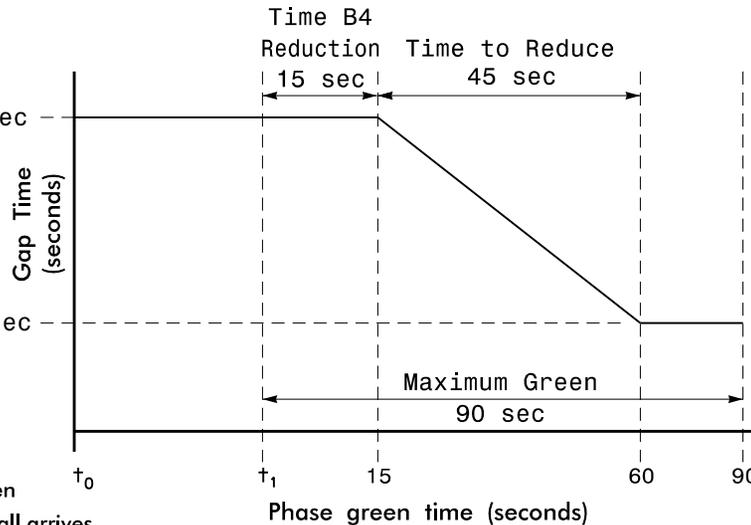
Variable initial operation increases the MIN Green interval in a manner dependent upon the number of vehicle actuations placed on the phase while it is in the Yellow or Red interval. The variable initial interval is calculated as a function of the vehicle actuations and the MIN Green, Seconds Per Actuation, and MAX Variable Initial settings. The following relationship calculates the variable initial interval:

$$\text{Initial Interval} = (\# \text{ of Vehicle Actuations}) \times (\text{Seconds Per Actuation Setting})$$

If the calculated initial interval is less than the MIN Green setting, the MIN Green time will be used as the initial interval. If the calculated initial interval is greater than the MAX Variable initial setting, the MAX Variable initial will be used as the initial interval.

Gap Reduction Parameters

Extension/Passage/Gap = 6.0 sec



t_0 = Beginning of phase green
 t_1 = Serviceable conflicting call arrives

Gap Reduction reduces the allowable gap between successive vehicle actuations by dynamically decreasing the extension time. The rate of reduction is based on the setting of the Extension, Minimum Gap, and Time to Reduce settings. Using this method, the gap will be reduced by the following relationship:

$$\text{Reduction} = \frac{\text{Extension} - \text{Minimum Gap}}{\text{TTR}} \times (\text{Current Green Interval Time} - \text{TBR})$$

This reduction begins when the Green interval has timed the Time Before Reduction (TBR) setting. Reduction of the allowable gap will continue until the gap reaches a value equal to or less than the Minimum Gap. In the presence of continual vehicle actuations, the phase will not gap out, even if the gap has been reduced to zero.

Volume Density Timing Example – 2070 Controllers

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.2.3

SHEET 1 OF 1

2021-07

Standard Signal Plan Legend

(This basic Legend should appear on every signal plan, even if not all items are shown or used on the plan. Additional symbols [shown to the right] may be added as needed.)

LEGEND

PROPOSED

EXISTING

	Traffic Signal Head	
	Modified Signal Head	N/A
	Sign	
	Pedestrian Signal Head With Push Button & Sign	
	Signal Pole with Guy	
	Signal Pole with Sidewalk Guy	
	Inductive Loop Detector	
	Controller & Cabinet	
	Junction Box	
--- X-UC ---	2-in Underground Conduit	--- UC ---
N/A	Right of Way	---
	Directional Arrow	

Notes:

1. Symbols for utilities, hydrology, property lines, etc. should mirror standards set by NCDOT's Roadway Design Unit.
2. Specify number of conduits for directional drill and/or underground conduit via linestyles (eg. 2-DD, 1-UC).

Other Common Symbols

PROPOSED

EXISTING

	Metal Strain Pole	
	Metal Pole with Mastarm	
	Type I Pushbutton Post	
	Type II Signal Pedestal	
	Type III Signal Pedestal	
--- X-DD ---	Directional Drill	--- DD ---
	Non-Intrusive Detection Zone	
N/A	Railroad Cantilever	
N/A	Railroad Gate and Flasher	
N/A	Railroad Tracks	
	Construction Zone	
	New Pavement	N/A
N/A	Curb Ramp	
	Sign I.D.	

Common Drawing Symbols

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

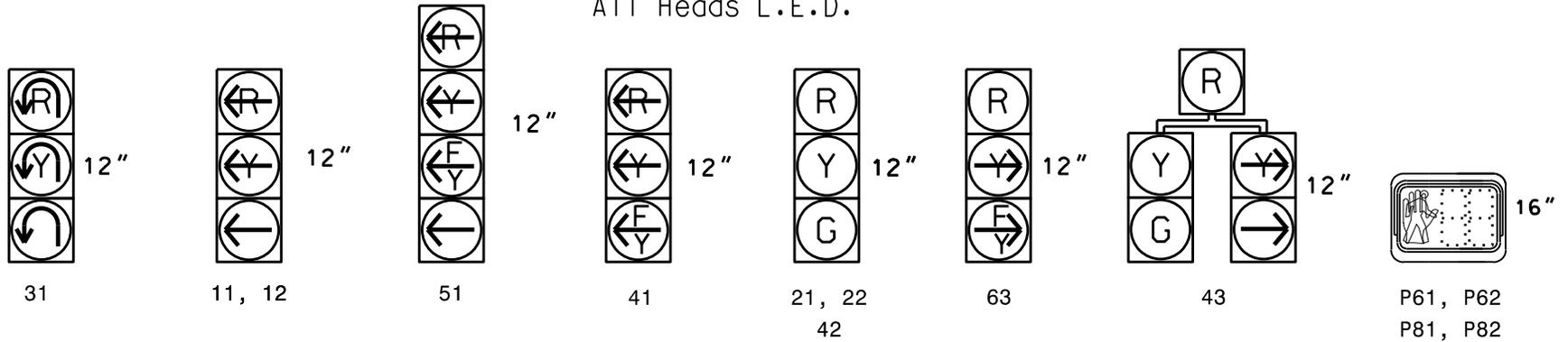
5.3

SHEET 1 OF 1

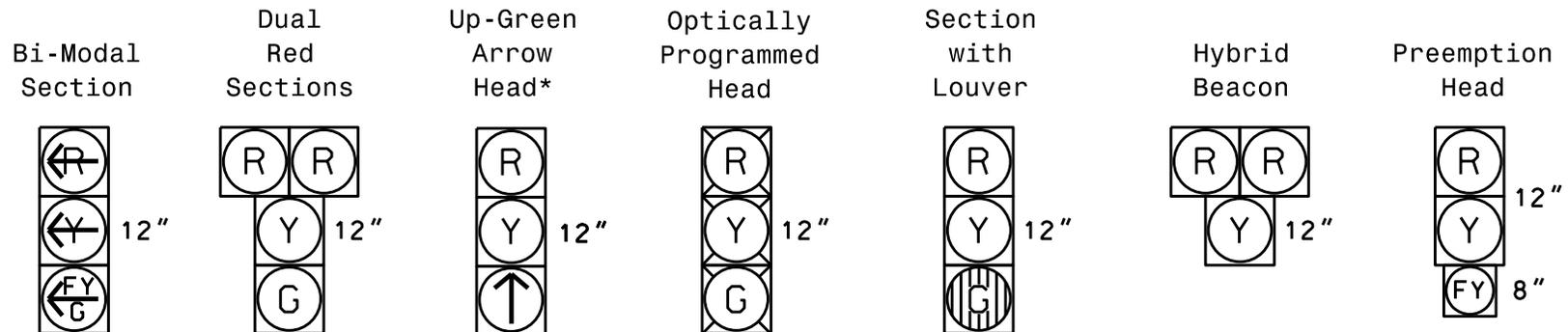
Typical Appearance of Signal Face I.D.

SIGNAL FACE I.D.

All Heads L.E.D.



Signal Faces/Heads with Special Characteristics



In general, do not try to minimize the visibility of the steady Yellow and Red display unless required.

* Additional lane movement restriction signs are required.

Signal Face I.D. Details

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

5.4

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

File Naming

Signal files should be named in accordance with the chart below:

Plan Type	.pdf Name	CADD File Name
Signal Design (Geometric)	051234-20200515g.pdf	051234_sig_dsn_20200515.dgn
Mutiple Sheet Signal Design	051234-20200515g#.pdf	All sheets in one file as above
Temporary Signal Plan	051234-20200515g-t#.pdf	051234T#_sig_dsn_20200515.dgn
Temporary Signal Plan Revision	051234-20200515g-t#-r#.pdf	051234T#_sig_rev#_20200515.dgn
Single Metal Pole Loading Sheet	051234-20200515m#.pdf	051234_sig_m#_20200515.dgn
Multiple Metal Pole Loading Sheet	051234-20200515m#&#.pdf	All sheets in one file as above
Signal Revision	051234-202005155g-r#.pdf	051234_sig_rev#_20200515.dgn
Plan of Record (POR)	051234-20200515g-por.pdf	051234_sig_por_20200515.dgn
Plan of Record with Revision	051234-20200515g-r#-por.pdf	051234_sig_por_20200515.dgn
Project Title Sheet (TIP)	Z-6789 tsh.pdf	Z-6789_sig_tsh_20200515.dgn
Electrical Programing Details	051234-20200515e.pdf	051234_sm_ele_20200515.dgn
Multiple Sheet Electrical Detail	051234-20200515e#.pdf	All sheets in one file as above
Signal Communication Plans (SCP)	Z-6789scp#.pdf	Z-6789scp.dgn (All sheets in one file)
Project Special Provisions (PSP)	Z-6789 Signal PSP.pdf	Z-6789_Signal_PSP.docx

051234 = Signal Inventory Number without the Dash (05-1234)

Date plan was sealed in Year, Month, and Day format, no slashes (5/15/2020 = 20200515)

Signal Plan = g/sig_dsn; Electrical Detail = e/sm_ele; Metal Pole = m/sig_mp; Revision = r/sig_rev

= Sheet or Temporary Number, as needed with multiple sheets or designs; do not number if only 1 is used

Z-6789 = TIP Project Number

NOTE: Signal Communication Plans are not the same as ITS plans; they are separate documents.

Naming and Numbering Conventions

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

5.5.1

SHEET 1 OF 2

Sheet Numbering

All Sheets should be numbered within the CADD file. Standalone signals may have all sheets numbered in sequence: 1, 2, etc. For multi-signal projects, each design, temporary and final, should be numbered:

Sig. 1.0 = Project Titlesheet (When used. If N/A, Sig. 1.0 can be first signal plan)

Sig. 1.1 - 1.X = Revised Standard Drawings (As Needed)

Sig. 2.0 = First Signal Plan

Sig. 2.1 - 2.x = Electrical Detail for First Signal Plan (multiple sheets if needed)

Sig. 2.x+1 = Metal Pole Loading Detail (if needed); x = Last Electrical Detail sheet

Sig. 3.0 = Second Signal Plan Signal (use x.1 if a second sheet is required)

Sig. 3.1 - 3.x = Electrical Detail for 2nd Signal Plan (multiple sheets if needed)

Subsequent Sheets will follow the same pattern - 4.0, 5.0, etc.

M1A through M9 = Standard Metal Pole Sheets (When necessary; include all 10 sheets when used)

SCP 1, SCP 2, SCP 3,.....= Signal Communication Plans

Naming Plans for Letting

Signal PSP shall be preceded by m: m_Z-6789 Signals PSP.pdf

All sheets in the Signal Plan package shall be preceded by the prefix 260 then a sequential 3 digit number (with leading zeros if needed) to ensure correct order of plans. The prefix should be followed by the file name as shown above. The sequential numbers need not be consecutive, and gaps should be left to allow for insertion of additional/revised plans in the future as needed. It is suggested to use multiples of 5 for the sequence when feasible.

260_001_Z-6789 tsh.pdf	Project Title Sheet
260_005_Z-6789 Std Plate Sheet.pdf	Standard Plate Sheet(s) [If Applicable]
260_010_051234-20200515g.pdf	1st Signal Plan
260_015_051234-20200518e1.pdf	Electrical Programming Detail Sheet 1
260_020_051234-20200518e2.pdf	Electrical Programming Detail Sheet 2
260_025_051234-20200515m.pdf	Metal Pole Loading Detail (as needed)
260_030_051678-20200515g.pdf	2nd Signal Plan
↓	Standard Metal Pole Sheets (as needed)
260_225_Z-6789scp1.pdf	Signal Communication Plans

Naming and Numbering Conventions

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

5.5.1

SHEET 2 OF 2

Project Type

Indicate whether 'New Installation,' 'Signal Upgrade,' or 'Temporary Signal.'

Graphic Scale

Include a graphic scale on all plans. Signal plans should be 20, 30, 40, or 50 scale. Use the scale that allows for the most clarity of detail on the signal plan, trying to keep the plan to one sheet if possible. The scale does not need to match the scale of the corresponding roadway plans on a TIP project.

Plan Description

Description should include:

- # Phases
- Type of Actuation
- w/ Special Features (if any)
- Isolated or System (including name and type)
- Signal System #: (Usually same as master #)

Text and Lettering

-Letter sizes should approximate the following:

- Title block street names and title heads...3/16 in
- All other lettering.....1/8 in

-List the routes in the title block using the word "at", not "and", as follows:

SR XXXX (Tree Avenue) at SR XXXX (Stump Drive)

-OR-

SR XXXX (Tree Avenue) at SR XXXX (Stump Drive)/NC 123 (Branch Street)

When listing the intersection, the main street (phases 2+6) should be listed first followed by (at) the minor street(s).

North Arrow

For general projects, align the main street to run horizontally across the plan where possible. For TIP & Contract projects, align the plan in the same general direction as the roadway plans.

Address

For plans prepared in house, include the Department logo with the Signal Design Section's address in the title block.

For plans prepared by Private Engineering Firms, include the Department logo with the Signal Design Section's address in the title block and the firm's name with address on the plan sheet beside the title block.

For plans prepared by municipalities, include the department logo with the Signal Design Section's address in the title block and the municipality's name with address on the plan sheet beside the title block.

Private engineering firms and municipalities are responsible for placing their name with address on the plan sheets. Company or municipal logos are permitted providing they do not detract from the plan.

NCBELS Block

The NC Board of Engineers and Land Surveyors requires a block reading "Document Not Considered Final Unless All Signatures Completed" directly adjacent to the seal block for all plans that are sealed electronically or transmitted electronically with a seal on it.

Drawing Format Items

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

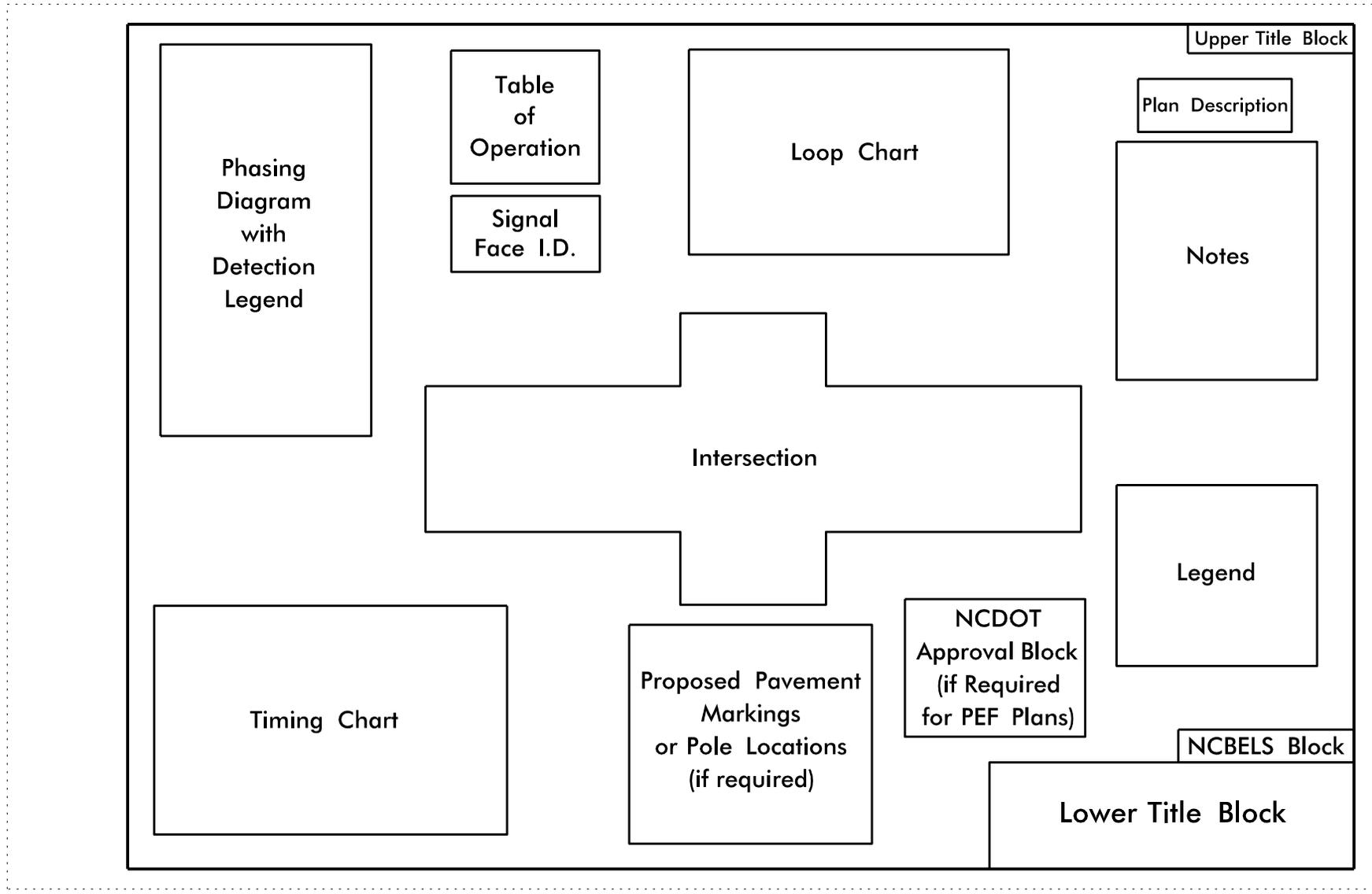
2024-05

STD. NO.

5.5.2

SHEET 1 OF 5

Typical Signal Plan Layout



Drawing Format Items

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

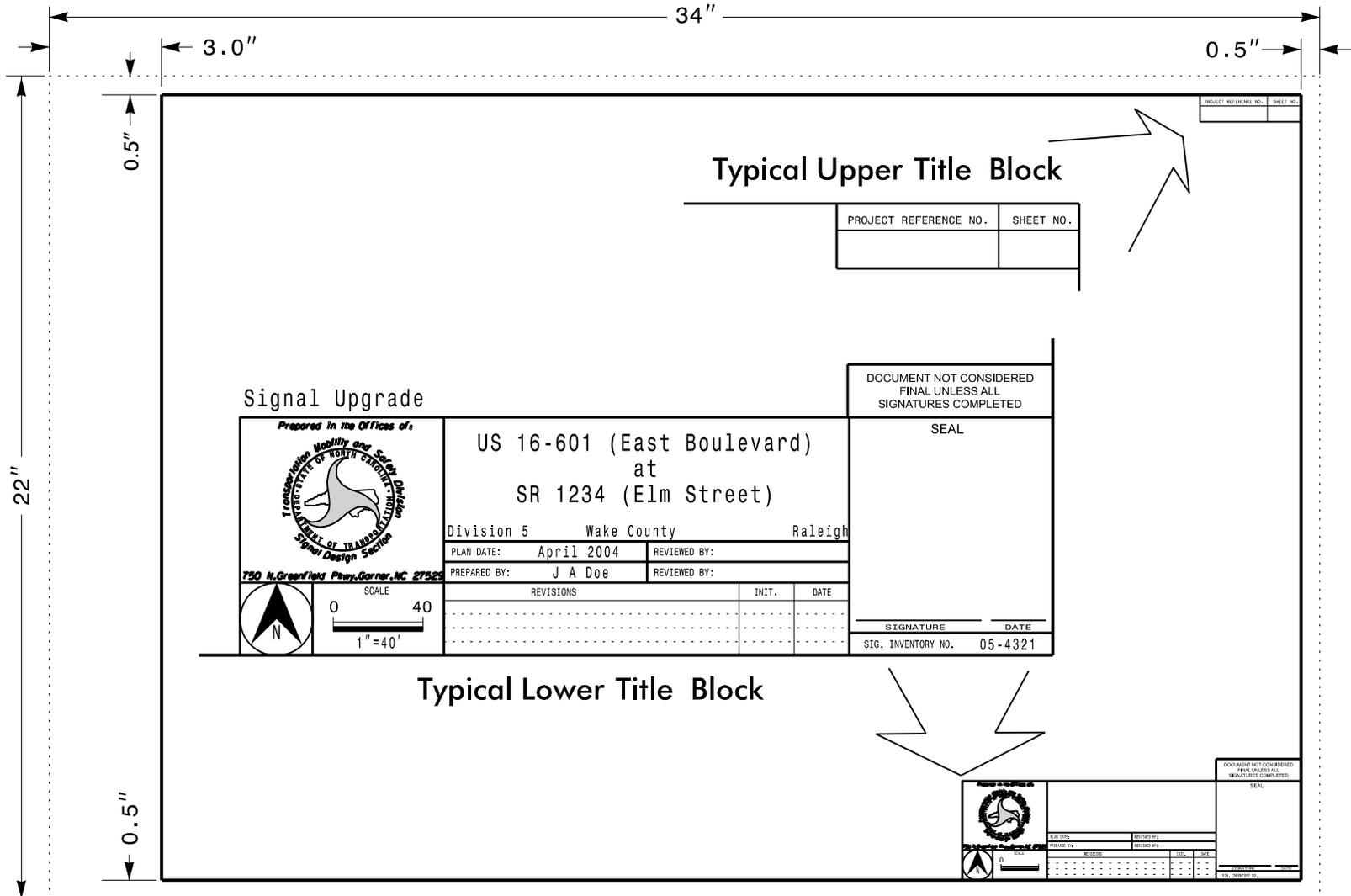
2021-07

STD. NO.

5.5.2

SHEET 2 OF 5

Typical Border Sheet with Dimensions



A Half Size Plan should be 11" X 17" and be a true half scale of the plan scale shown.

Drawing Format Items

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.
5.5.2
 SHEET 3 OF 5

Revisions

When revising an existing traffic signal plan, include the revision number, date, and revision description. Additionally, enclose the revision number in a triangle and place the triangle on the plans near the affected area if needed for clarity.

When the PE making the revision is the same PE who sealed the original plan, the PE initials and dates the revision block and reseals the original plan with the original date.

Signal Upgrade		DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED	
Prepared in the Offices of:  TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION Signal Design Section 750 N. Greenfield Pkwy, Garner, NC 27526	US 16-601 (East Boulevard) at SR 1234 (Elm Street)		
	Division 5 Wake County Raleigh		
 SCALE 0 40 1" = 40'	PLAN DATE: April 2018 REVIEWED BY:	SEAL  SEAL 999999 ENGINEER ANDREW B. CALLOWAY	
	PREPARED BY: J A Doe REVIEWED BY:		
REVISIONS √ Upgrade loop detectors : XYZ INIT. DATE 2/29/20		SIGNATURE DATE _____ 9/14/2018	
		SIG. INVENTORY NO. 05-4321	

When the PE making the revision is different than the PE who sealed the original plan, then a "Revision Seal" block needs to be added to the title block to the left (preferred) or just above the title block on the original plans. In addition, add the text "Not a certified document as to the Original Document but only as to the Revisions - This document originally issued and sealed by 'name,' 'PE number,' on 'date.' This document is only certified as to the revisions."

Signal Upgrade		DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED	
REVISION ▽ SEAL  SEAL 999999 ENGINEER ANDREW B. CALLOWAY SIGNATURE DATE _____ 2/29/2020	Prepared in the Offices of:  TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION Signal Design Section 750 N. Greenfield Pkwy, Garner, NC 27526	US 16-601 (East Boulevard) at SR 1234 (Elm Street)	
Division 5 Wake County Raleigh			
 SCALE 0 40 1" = 40'	PLAN DATE: April 2018 REVIEWED BY:	Not a certified document as to the Original Document but Only as to the Revisions - This document originally Issued and sealed by John J. Smith, PE, #000000, on 9/14/18. This document is only certified as to the revisions.	
	PREPARED BY: J A Doe REVIEWED BY:		
REVISIONS √ Upgrade loop detectors : XYZ INIT. DATE 2/29/20		SIG. INVENTORY NO. 05-4321	

Drawing Format Items

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-01

STD. NO.

5.5.2

SHEET 4 OF 5

Supersede Plans

A Supersede may be used when a plan replaces a plan previously issued for a project and the plan has not yet been implemented. It can be for any type of project, but the supersede plan should be for the same project. The supersede plan may sealed by a different Engineer than the Engineer who sealed the original plan for the project. The name of the previous Engineer of Record does not need to be shown on the plan, just the date the original plan was sealed.

This plan supersedes the plan signed and sealed on 2/12/09.

NCDOT Plan Approval Block

The NCDOT Approval Block should be included on all electronically sealed plans prepared by Private Engineering Firms for a Third Party, such as a municipality or private development, for any project that NCDOT is not letting, administering, or has direct oversight of the Contract, even if it is participating in funding the project. The block will be electronically signed by the Regional Signal Engineer (or designee) once the plan set is officially reviewed, approved, and ready for Transmittal to the Division. The block should appear on every plan sheet sealed by the Private Engineering Firm.

The Approval Block is not needed on signal plans prepared by Private Engineering Firms under contract to NCDOT. The Contract may be with Project Management Unit, Transportation System Management & Operations Unit, or a Highway Division for a TIP project in preparation for let, or as part of a Design Build Contract. The Approval Block is also not needed for any Standard Sheets the sealed by the Department for inclusion in a bid a package, such as Standard Metal Pole sheets (M Sheets).

NC Dept of Transportation
Division of Highways

Final Drawing Date: _____

NCDOT Approval

Drawing Format Items

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION

TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

5.5.2

SHEET 5 OF 5

Signal Cable Calculations

Signal Cable

There is only one pay item for signal cable; combine measurements for 16-4 and 16-7 cable. Route cable to minimize the length of cable used. Add 3' extra in cabinets. Add 3' extra at each signal head. Assume 30' down poles. Note: Use 2 separate cable runs if there are more than 6 heads on a phase.

Example (See sheet 2)

Heads 61 & 62:

$$3' \text{ (beside head)} + 12' + 3' \text{ (beside head)} + 270' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} + 3' \text{ (in cabinet)} = 331'$$

Head 11

$$3' \text{ (beside head)} + 256' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} + 3' \text{ (in cabinet)} = 302'$$

Heads 41 & 42:

$$3' \text{ (beside head)} + 15' + 3' \text{ (beside head)} + 105' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} + 3' \text{ (in cabinet)} = 169'$$

Head 43:

$$3' \text{ (beside head)} + 220' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} + 3' \text{ (in cabinet)} = 266'$$

Heads 31, 32, 33 & 34:

$$3' \text{ (beside head)} + 15' + 3' \text{ (beside head)} + 10' + 3' \text{ (beside head)} + 12' + 3' \text{ (beside head)} + 150' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} + 3' \text{ (in cabinet)} = 242'$$

Heads 21 & 22:

$$3' \text{ (beside head)} + 15' + 3' \text{ (beside head)} + 55' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} + 3' \text{ (in cabinet)} = 119'$$

$$\text{Total: } 331' + 302' + 169' + 266' + 242' + 119' = 1429'$$

$$\text{Round up to nearest } 10' = 1430'$$

Plan Quantity Calculations

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

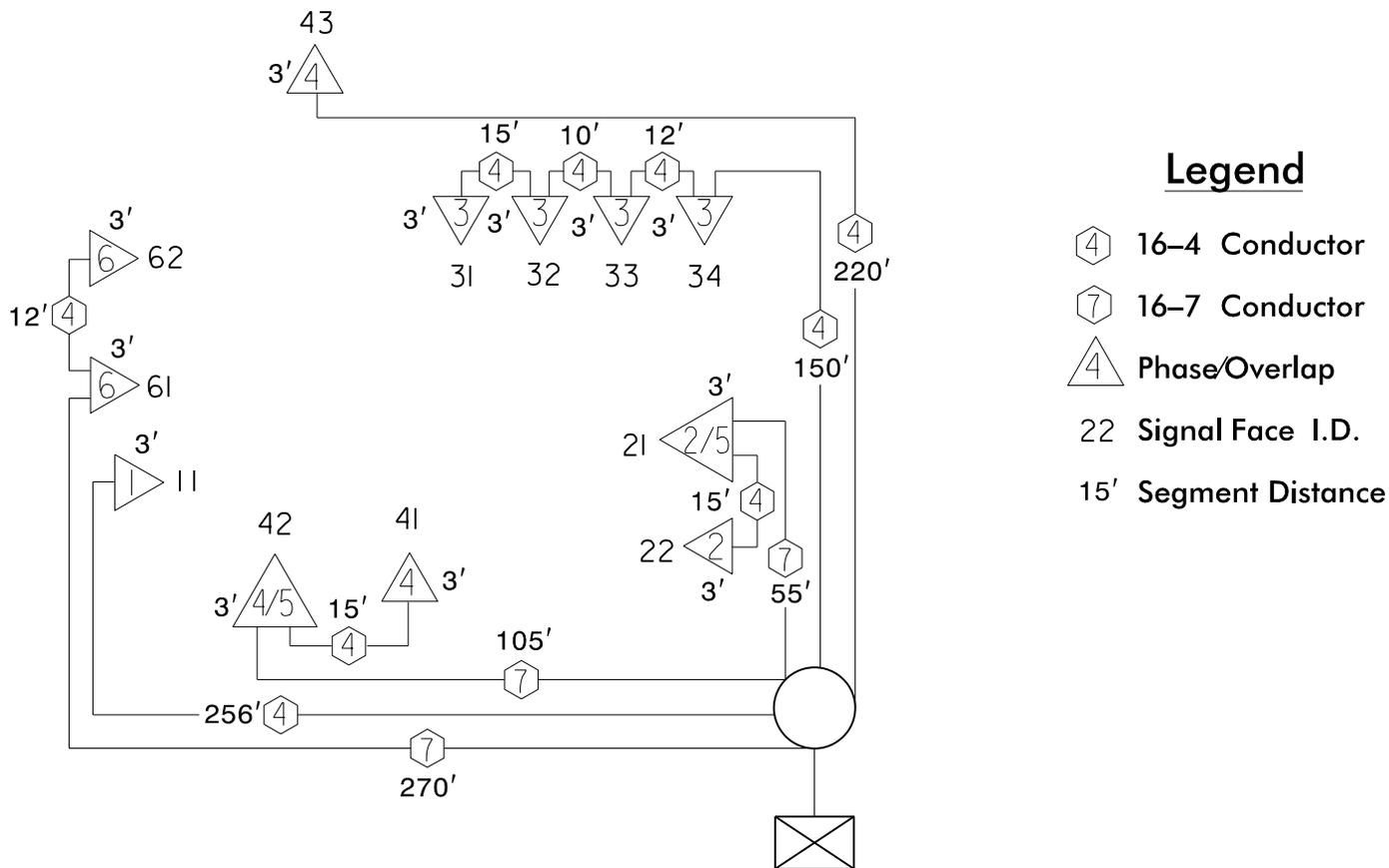
STD. NO.

5.6

SHEET 1 OF 4

2021-07

Signal Cable Example Diagram



Plan Quantity Calculations

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2009-07

STD. NO.

5.6

SHEET 2 OF 4

Messenger Cable & Loop Lead-In Calculations

Messenger Cable (Spanwire)

Example (See sheet 4)

Note: Do not add any length for guys as they are included as a pay item for guy assemblies.

$$145' + 170' + 110' + 172' = 597'$$

Round up to nearest 10' = 600'

Loop Lead-In Cable

Each loop lead-in wire connects 1 loop to the cabinet if the is wired separately. Quadrupole and volume density (counting) loops need to be wired separately. If multiple loops are wired together, 1 lead-in connects the group to the cabinet. Low speed and extend (stretch) loops may be wired together. Include lead-in for pedestrian pushbuttons and microwave detectors. Assume 30' up or down poles.

Example (See sheet 4)

Loops 2A & 2B (together) and 5A (separate):

$$25' + 30' \text{ (up pole)} + 172' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} = 267' \times 2 = 534'$$

Loop 6A and 6B (each separate):

$$250' + 25' + 30' \text{ (up pole)} + 110' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} = 455' \times 2 = 910'$$

Loop 1A:

$$25' + 30' \text{ (up pole)} + 110' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} = 205'$$

Loops 3A, 3B, and 3C (each separate): 15'

$$= 15' \times 3 = 45'$$

Loop 4A and 5B (each separate):

$$50' + 30' \text{ (up pole)} + 170' + 110' + 30' \text{ (down pole)} + 10' \text{ (to cabinet)} = 400' \times 2 = 800'$$

$$\text{Total: } 534' + 910' + 205' + 45' + 800' = 2494'$$

Round up to nearest 10' = 2500'

Plan Quantity Calculations

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

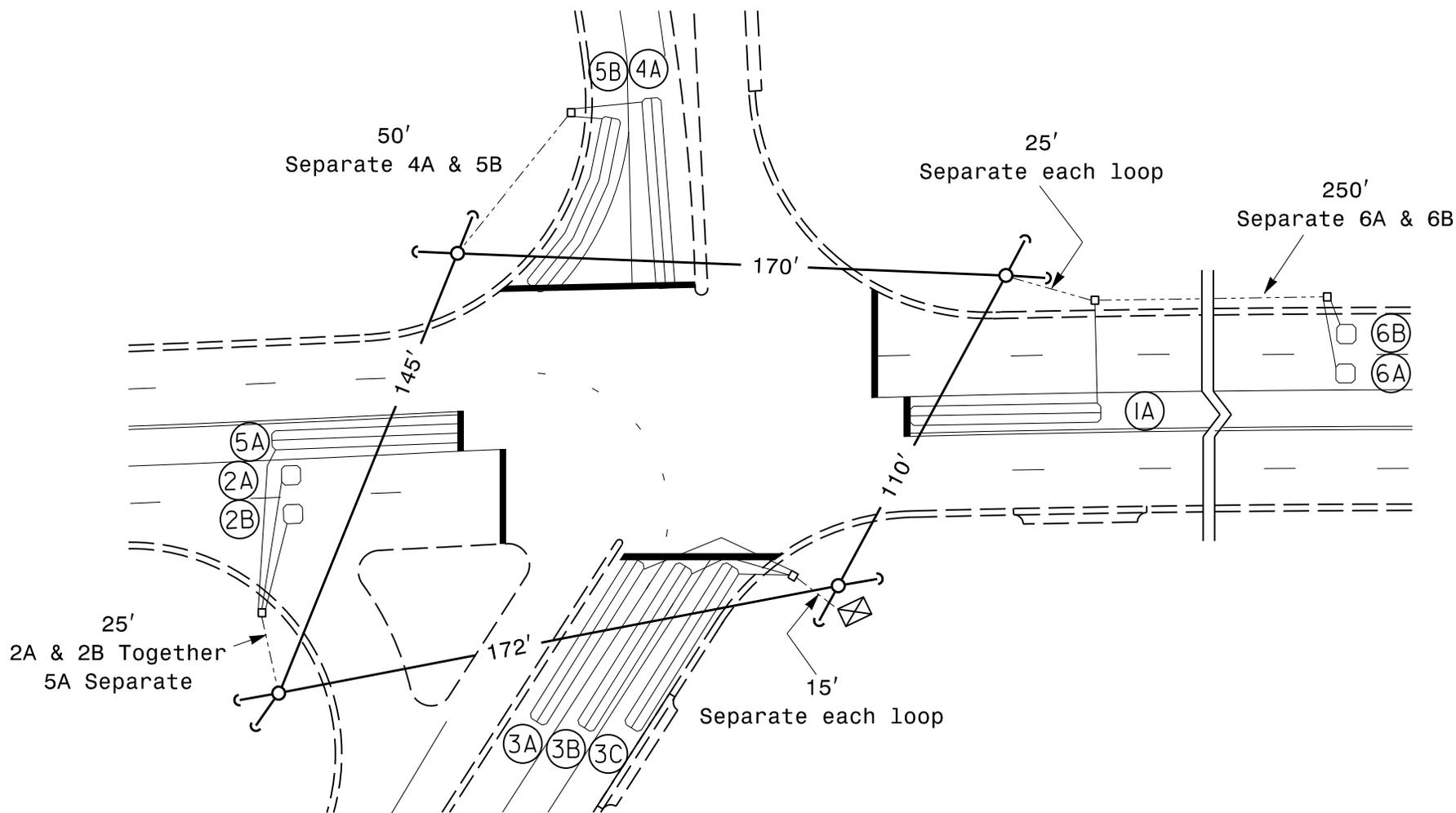
STD. NO.

5.6

SHEET 3 OF 4

2021-07

Loop Lead-In & Messenger Cable Example Diagram



Plan Quantity Calculations

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

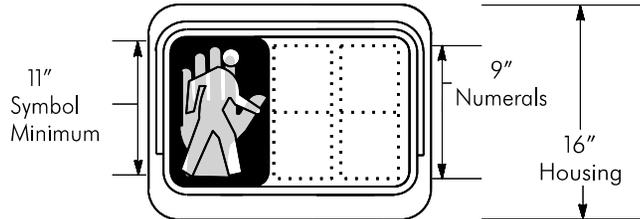
5.6

SHEET 4 OF 4

2009-07

Typical Pedestrian Signal

Countdown Pedestrian Head



- Person = WALK
- Flashing Hand = Flashing DON'T WALK (FDW)
(Pedestrian Clearance Time)
- Steady Hand = DON'T WALK
- Numbers/Timer = FDW Time Remaining

Pedestrian Head Guidelines

- Countdown pedestrian heads shall be used for new and upgraded installations.
- When possible, avoid pedestrian movements with simultaneous parallel dual (right or left) turn vehicle movements. Consider phasing alternatives for pedestrians to safely cross the dual turn movements.
- With pre-timed operation, use "Ped Recall" when pushbuttons are not used.
- Also with pre-timed operation, vehicle "Max Time" (maximum Green) should not be less than the total of "Walk" and "Flashing Don't Walk" times. [MAX Green < W + FDW]
- When a pedestrian phase is activated by a pushbutton, use the "Omit WALK..." note (#40) to prevent pedestrian phase and timing being served if no pedestrian calls are activated.

Pedestrian Timing

- "WALK" Time: 7 seconds should be used when possible. A minimum "WALK" time of 4 seconds may be used in limited situations.

- All NCDOT traffic signals shall utilize a Leading Pedestrian Interval (LPI) in conjunction with signalized pedestrian movements. Exceptions may be made for locations without vehicle interaction, or where the addition of LPI would add significant complexity to the traffic signal programming. LPI shall be calculated for each approach using the following formula (See Std. No. 5.2.2):

$$\frac{\text{Distance to cross one lane of traffic}}{3.5 \text{ ft/sec}} = \text{Programmed LPI Time}$$

- LPI shall have a minimum value of 3 seconds, and a maximum value of 7 seconds. Programmed LPI times shall be rounded up the nearest 1 second. If LPI is used without Accessible Pedestrian Signals (APS), the WALK interval shall be adjusted to provide an additional 7 seconds beyond the calculated LPI time. For example, a calculated LPI time of 6 seconds requires 13 seconds of WALK time without APS. If APS is used, the additional 7 seconds of WALK time is not needed.

- "Flashing DON'T WALK" Time (FDW): Enough time to get from tactile dome to tactile dome (D). Use 3.5 feet per second (S), minus the concurrent yellow change interval (YC). A slower walking speed may be used if appropriate at specific locations only with Division Traffic Engineer, Regional Traffic Engineer, and Signal Design approval.

$$FDW = \frac{D}{S} - YC$$

Pedestrian Signal Heads & Timing

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

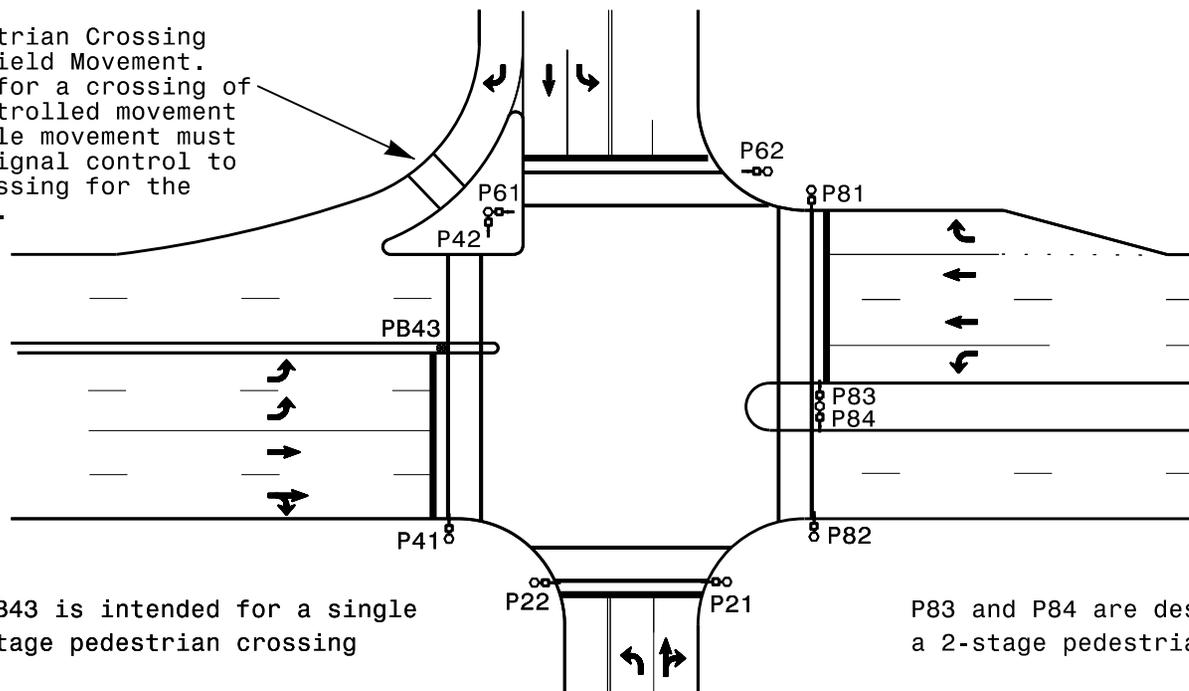
STD. NO.

6.0

SHEET 1 OF 1

2025-03

Uncontrolled Pedestrian Crossing Across a Vehicle Yield Movement. If APS is desired for a crossing of an otherwise uncontrolled movement or lane, the vehicle movement must be brought under signal control to provide a safe crossing for the crosswalk with APS.



PB43 is intended for a single stage pedestrian crossing

P83 and P84 are designed for a 2-stage pedestrian crossing

- Pedestrian signal heads should be installed for every marked crosswalk at a signalized intersection.
- Refer to Design Manual Std. No. 3.0:1 for pedestrian signal head numbering.
- See Standard Roadway Drawing 1705.02 for pedestrian signal head and pushbutton assembly location guidelines.
- Pedestrian pushbuttons should be separated by at least 10 feet on each quadrant when possible.
- Pushbuttons do not need to be labeled if they are associated with a pedestrian signal head.
- If a pedestrian pushbutton only is installed on a pedestal with no accompanying pedestrian signal head, such as in a median or island, it should be labeled "PB" in sequence with the corresponding phase.
- Pedestrian movements should not be signalized across Yield or free flowing vehicle movements.
- If APS is desired for a crossing of an otherwise uncontrolled movement or lane, the vehicle movement must be brought under signal control to provide a safe crossing for the crosswalk with APS.
- Dual turn vehicle movements concurrent with pedestrian crossings should be avoided, or mitigated if necessary.
- If a median or island is at least 6 feet in width, consider installing a pushbutton on the island or median if there is potential for a pedestrian to be stranded while crossing.
- It is recommended that a median or island be at least 10 feet to designated as a pedestrian refuge.

References: 2023 MUTCD Section 4I and NCDOT Roadway Standard Drawings 1705.02 and 1705.04

Pedestrian Pedestals & Pushbuttons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

6.1

SHEET 1 OF 2

2024-05

Single Stage Crossing

- It is preferred that a pedestrian crossing be designed as a single stage crossing whenever practical. During a single stage crossing, a pedestrian completely crosses a street from one quadrant to another. The crossing should be straight from curb ramp to curb ramp.
- If there is a roadway median or island at least 6 feet in width and it is capable of providing an optional pedestrian refuge, a single pushbutton should be installed in the median or island. Do not install a pedestrian signal head in the median for a single stage crossing. Despite the presence of a pushbutton in the median, it is intended that a pedestrian cross the entire street at one time and not stop part way.
- If only a pedestrian pushbutton is installed on a pedestal in a median or island with no pedestrian head(s), it should be labeled "PB" in sequence with the corresponding phase.
- The pedestrian clearance time should be calculated to completely cross the street from one quadrant to the other, even if an optional pedestrian refuge in the median or island is provided.
- Pushbuttons for a single stage crossing should be accompanied by a R10-3E sign.

2-Stage Crossing

- In some cases, it may be preferred or necessary to provide a 2-stage crossing, allowing pedestrians to only cross between one quadrant and the median or island during a single signal cycle. While not the only factor, a pedestrian crossing requiring more than 40 seconds of clearance should be considered for multiple stages if possible.
- A minimum width of 10 feet for the median or island is recommended to serve as a refuge for a 2 stage crossing.
- When a 2-stage crossing is required, a single pedestrian pushbutton and 2 pedestrian signal heads shall be installed in the median or island.
- When the individual stages or a pedestrian crossing are designed to operate during the same phase, the longest crossing distance among the multiple stages should be used to calculate the pedestrian clearance time.
- Pushbuttons intended to allow crossing only to the median or island shall be accompanied by a R10-3D sign.
- Median pushbuttons should be accompanied by a R10-3E sign.
- A 2-stage crossing should only be used after discussion with the Division Traffic Engineer, Regional Traffic Engineer, municipal Traffic Engineer (if appropriate), and the Signal Design Section.

Pedestrian Pedestals & Pushbuttons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

6.1

SHEET 2 OF 2

2024-05

Accessible Pedestrian Signal (APS)

ACCESSIBLE PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL OPERATION				
SIGNAL FACE	VOICE	TONES	INTERVAL	SPEECH MESSAGE
P21	-	X	Walk	(Percussive Tone)
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Central.
P22	X	-	Walk	Central. Walk sign is on to cross Central.
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Central.
P41	X	-	Walk	Main. Walk sign is on to cross Main.
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Main.
P42	X	-	Walk	Main. Walk sign is on to cross Main.
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Main.
PB43	-	X	Walk	(Percussive Tone)
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Main.
P61	X	-	Walk	Central. Walk sign is on to cross Central.
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Central.
P62	-	X	Walk	(Percussive Tone)
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Central.
P81	-	X	Walk	(Percussive Tone)
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Main.
P82	-	X	Walk	(Percussive Tone)
	X	-	Flashing Don't Walk / Don't Walk	Wait. Wait to cross Main.

Do not program street name directions (North, East, South, West) or name descriptions (Street, Road, Drive, Avenue, etc.) in the speech message unless it is necessary for clarity to the pedestrian at the individual intersection (such as 1st Street at 2nd Ave.).

NOTE: For this example, the pushbuttons for signal heads P22 and P41 are less than 10 feet apart within the same quadrant, as are the pushbuttons for signal heads P61 and P42.

Note: PB43 refers to a pushbutton in the median on a Type I post with no pedestrian signal head.

- The type of APS used is based on location of the pushbutton. It is on a quadrant basis, not based on the crosswalk. It is acceptable to use a percussive tone on one end of a crosswalk and a speech message on the other.
- APS is not required for all crossings at an intersection. If requested, it may be used only on designated crossings.
- Pushbuttons should be at least 10 feet apart when possible. This may not be possible in all applications.
- If the pushbuttons in a quadrant are at least 10 feet apart, a percussive tone shall be used during the WALK display. A speech message shall not be used when pushbuttons are at least 10 feet apart.
- If the pushbuttons in a quadrant are less than 10 feet apart, a speech message shall be used during the WALK display.
- A speech message should be used upon pushbutton actuation during the Flashing DON'T WALK (FDW) and DON'T WALK (DW) display for all crossings where APS is used.
- When APS is used with a median pushbutton, it should also be shown in the chart. In most cases, the median pushbutton will use a percussive tone.

Reference: Sections 4K.01 - 4K.05 of the 2023 MUTCD

Accessible Pedestrian Heads & Pushbuttons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

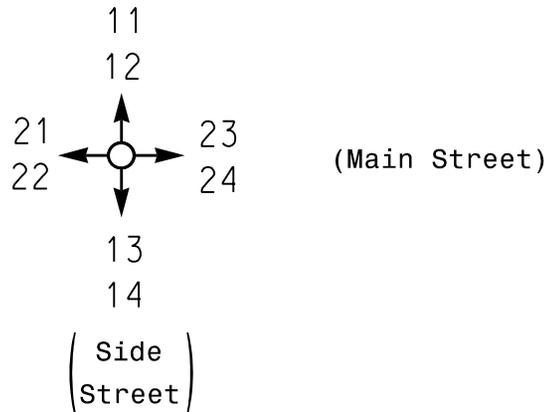
STD. NO.

6.2

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

Typical Numbering for Beacons



SIGNAL FACE I.D.

All Heads L.E.D.

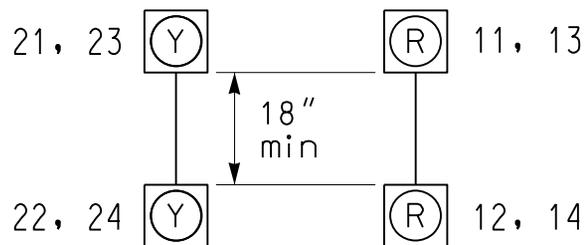


Table of Operation for Beacons

TABLE OF OPERATION		
SIGNAL FACE	INTERVAL	
	1	2
	ON	OFF
	OFF	ON
	ON	OFF
	OFF	ON

Intersection Beacons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.0

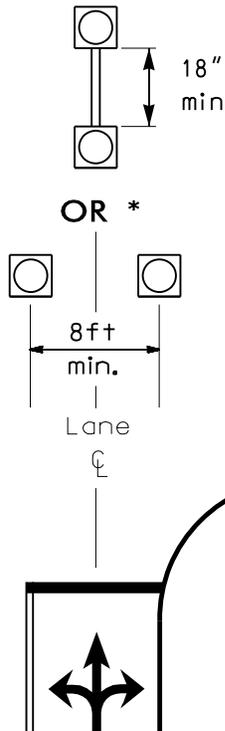
SHEET 1 OF 3

2021-07

Signal Head Approach Display and Alignment

Single Lane Approach

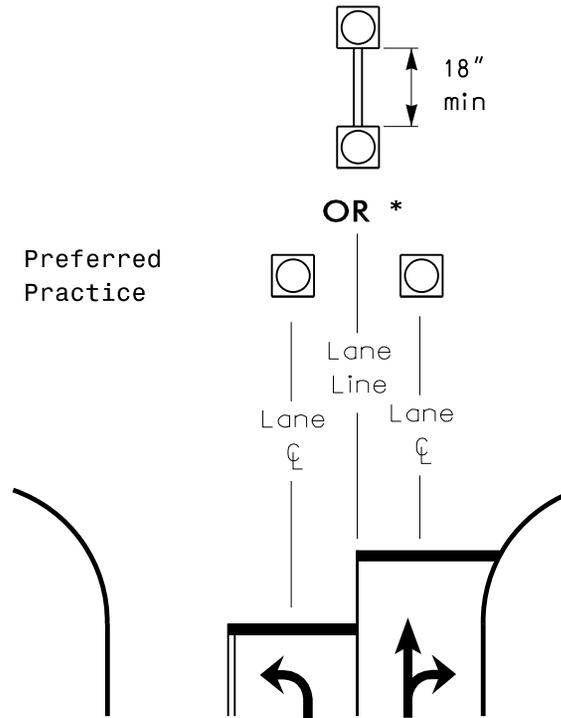
Preferred Practice



* Engineer to determine based on site specific characteristics

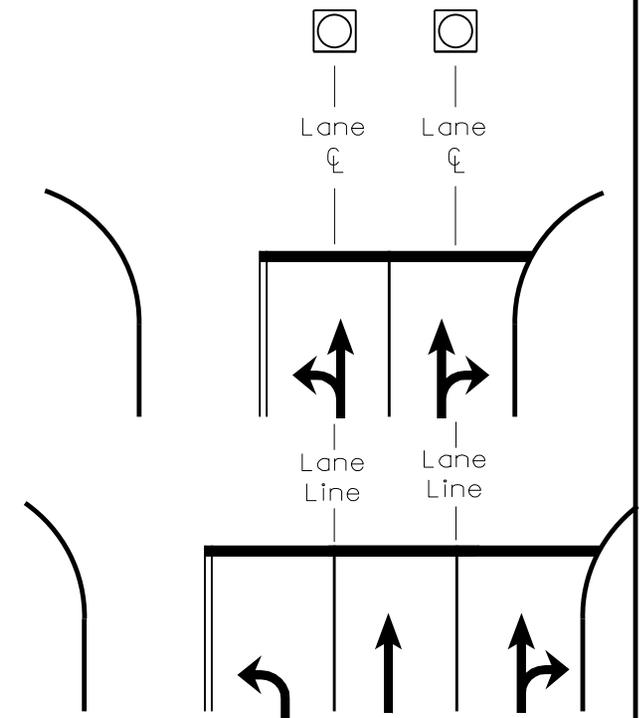
Single Through Lane Approach with Turning Lane

Preferred Practice



* Engineer to determine based on site specific characteristics

Multi-Lane Approach



General Guidelines

- Flash vertically mounted beacons alternatively

- Flash horizontally mounted beacons concurrently

Intersection Beacons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.0

SHEET 2 OF 3

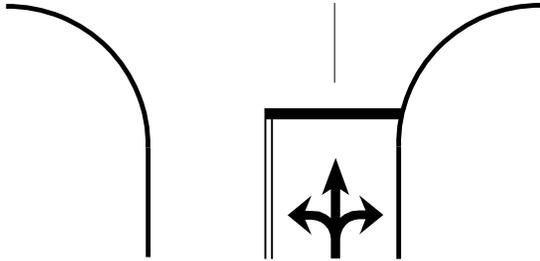
2021-07

Actuated Beacon with Overhead Sign

Single Lane Approach



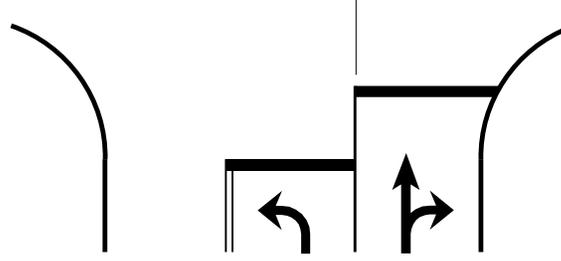
Lane
℄



Single Through Lane Approach
with Turning Lane



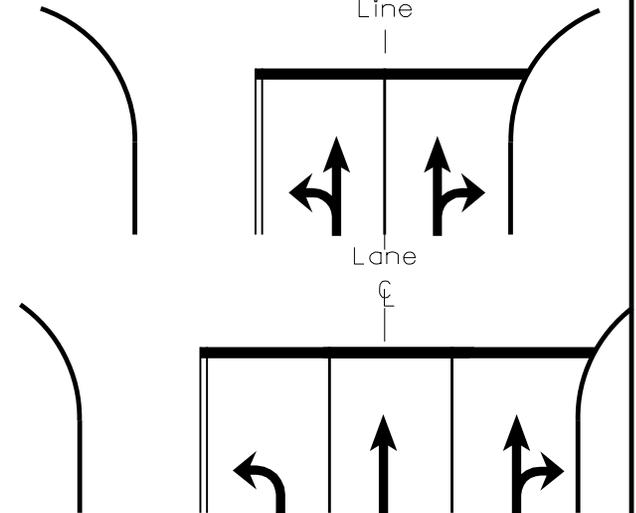
Lane
Line



Multi-Lane Approaches



Lane
Line



General Guidelines

-Sign may be installed at intersection or in advance of intersection, at Engineer's discretion.

-Typical sign size: 114"x36"

-Lettering size: 8"D

-Unless mounted directly adjacent to a STOP or YIELD sign, all advance warning or intersection beacons shall be Yellow.

-See Drawing Notes (Std. No. 5.0) for notes specific to actuated beacons

Intersection Beacons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

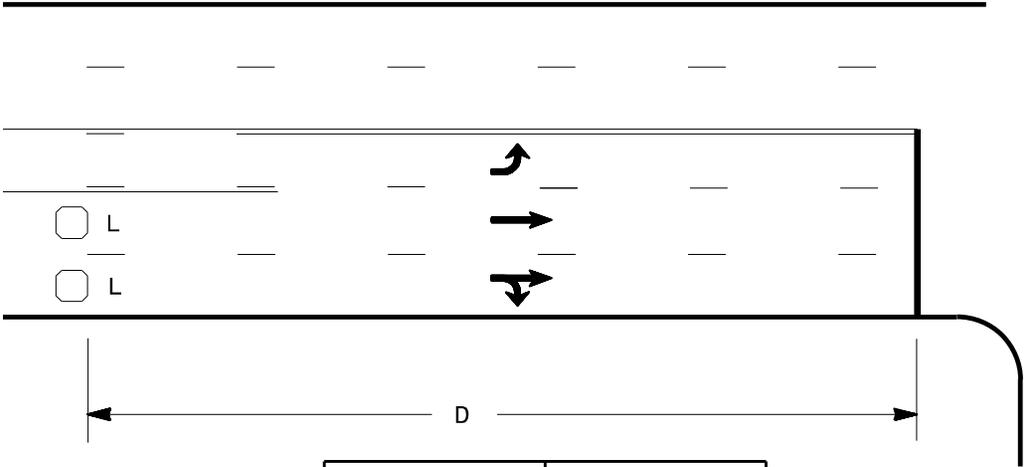
7.0

SHEET 3 OF 3

2021-07

Loop Placement for Actuated Beacons

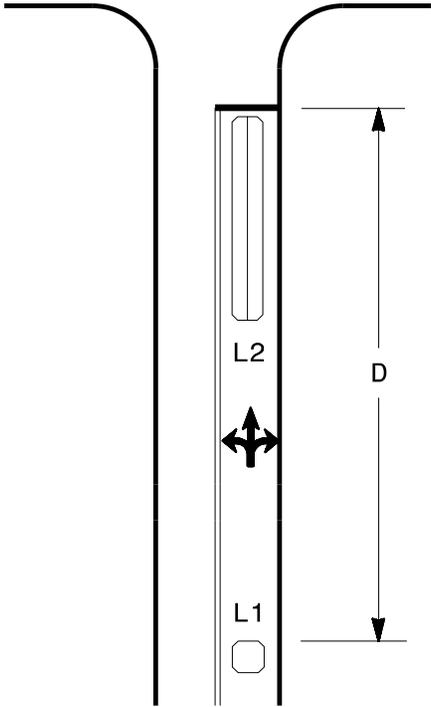
Main Street Loop Placement
(Single or Multilane)



Design Speed (MPH)	D (ft)
35	200
40	250
45	300
50	355
55	420
60	475
65	550

- L = 6ft X 6ft, Presence loop
- L1 = 6ft X 6ft, Presence loop (Loop L1 is optional)
- L2 = 6ft X 40ft To 60ft Quadruple loop

Side Street Loop Placement

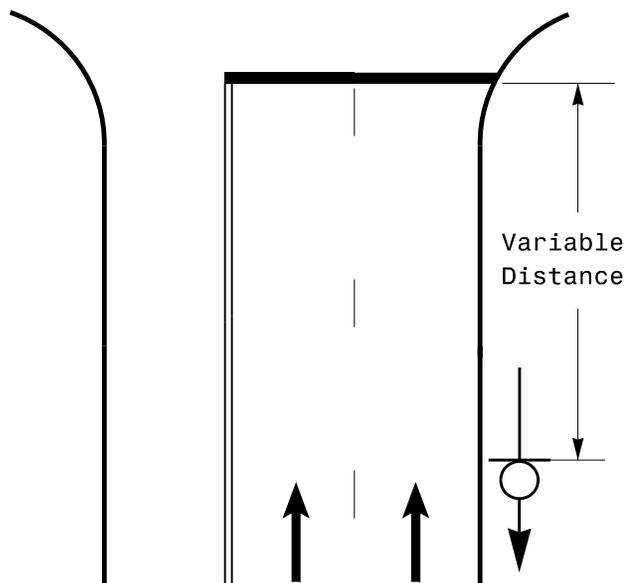


Warning Beacons

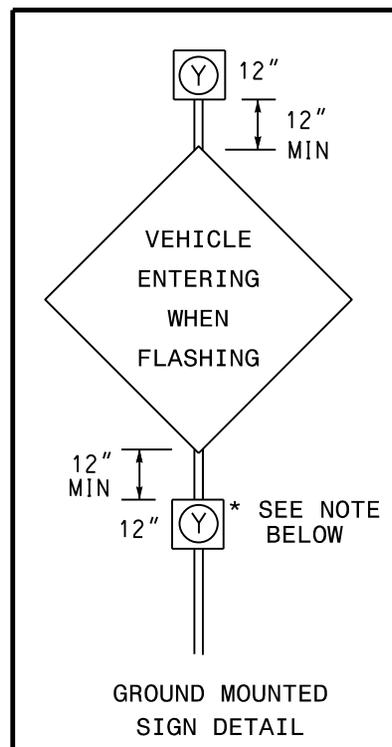
SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Actuated Beacon with Ground-Mounted Sign

Single or Multi-Lane Approaches



If a warning sign is used with an actuated Beacon to warn drivers of an impending changing condition, a WHEN FLASHING Plaque (W16-13P) shall be used below the warning sign and within the beacon structure unless it otherwise included in the text of the warning sign.



Recommended Minimum Placement of Sign and Advance Warning Beacon From Stop Line (or Condition if no Stop Line)	
Design Speed (MPH)	D (feet)
<35	100
40	125
45	175
50	250
55	325
60	400
65	475

* BOTTOM BEACON IS RECOMMENDED, BUT NOT REQUIRED. IF USED, IT SHALL FLASH ALTERNATELY WITH THE TOP BEACON.

General Guidelines

- For multi-lane divided roadways with medians dual ground mounted signs should be installed
- See Drawing Notes (Std. No. 5.0) for notes specific to actuated flashers
- Distances for Advance Placement of signs from MUTCD Table 2C-3

Warning Beacons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

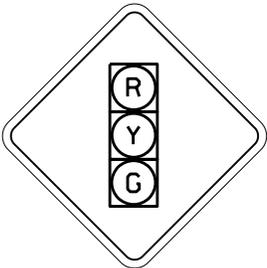
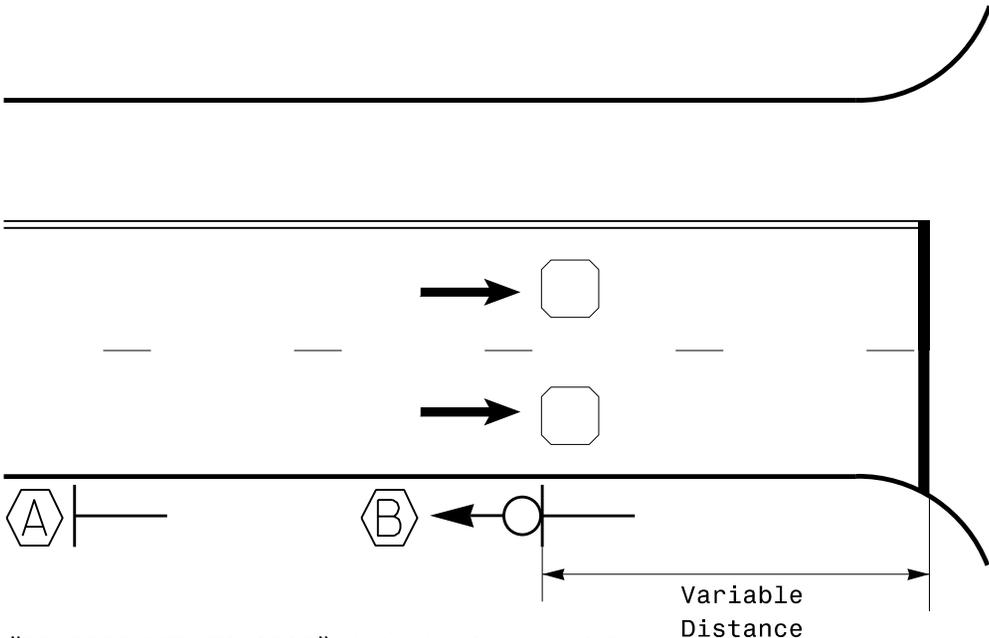
7.1

SHEET 2 OF 3

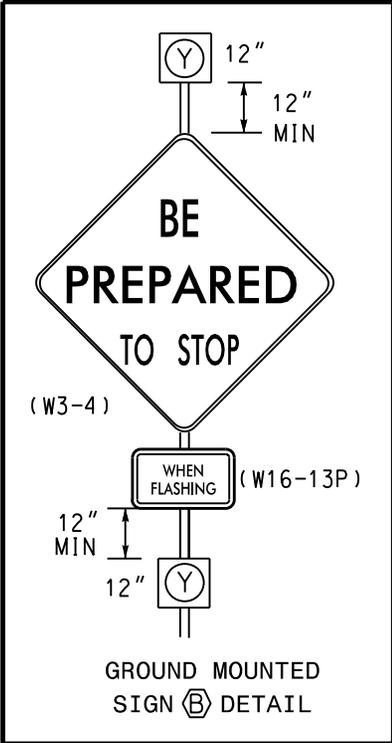
2021-07

Actuated Beacon with Ground-Mounted Sign

Single or Multi-Lane Approaches



Signal Ahead Sign (W3-3)



- "BE PREPARED TO STOP" (W3-4) signs and Beacons (if used) should be placed at the back detection loops for the approach and mounted on Type III Pedestal when possible.
- For multi-lane divided roadways with medians, dual ground mounted signs should be installed.
- Beacons should start flash with enough time for vehicles to clear the distance from the beacon location to the end of the dilemma zone (at least 3 seconds) prior to the end of vehicle Green phase.
- Beacons shall be Yellow and flash alternately.

When a BE PREPARED TO STOP (W3-4) warning sign is used (with or without actuated Beacons) is used in advance of a traffic control signal, a Signal Ahead (W3-3) is also required in advance of the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign.

Reference: 2023 MUTCD Section 2C.35

Warning Beacons

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

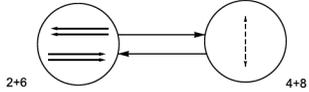
STD. NO.

7.1

SHEET 3 OF 3

2024-05

PHASING DIAGRAM



PHASING DIAGRAM DETECTION LEGEND

- DETECTED MOVEMENT
- UNDETECTED MOVEMENT (OVERLAP)
- - - UNSIGNALIZED MOVEMENT
- PEDESTRIAN MOVEMENT

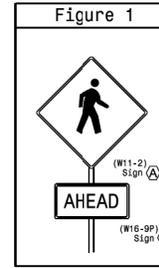
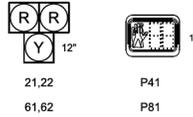
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE							
	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
21,22	DRK	FY	Y	R	R	FR*	Y	
61,62	DRK	FY	Y	R	R	FR*	Y	
P41	DW	DW	DW	DW	W	FDWDRK		
P81	DW	DW	DW	DW	W	FDWDRK		

Y - Steady Yellow
 FY - Flashing Yellow
 R - Steady Red
 FR - Flashing Red
 W - Walk
 DW - Don't Walk
 FDW - Flashing Don't Walk
 DRK - Dark

* Alternating Flash

SIGNAL FACE I.D.

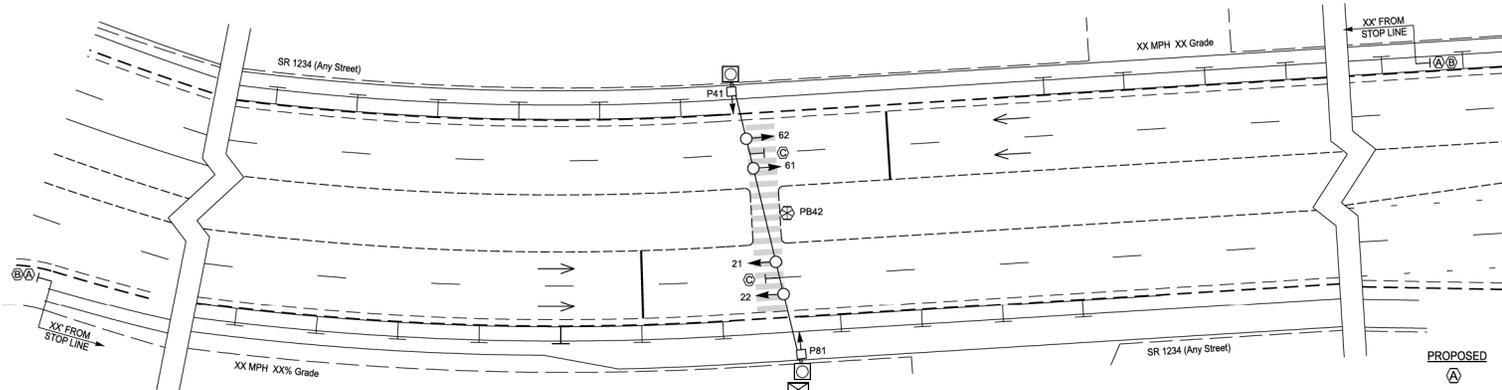
All Heads L.E.D.



2 Phase
 Semi-Actuated
 Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon
 Anytown Signal System

NOTES

- Refer to "Roadway Standard Drawings NCDOT" dated January 2024 and "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated January 2024.
- Program pedestrian heads to countdown the flashing "Don't Walk" time only.
- Maximum times shown in timing chart are for free-run operation only. Coordinated signal system timing values supersede these values.
- Locate Pedestrian and Crosswalk advance signs in accordance with Table 2C-3 in Section 2C.04 of the 2023 MUTCD or as otherwise directed by the engineer.



SIGNS

PROPOSED	EXISTING
(A)	(A)
(B)	(B)
(C)	(C)

Pedestrian Crossing Sign (W11-2)
 See Figure 1
 AHEAD Plaque (W16-9P)
 See Figure 1
 STOP ON RED - YIELD ON FLASHING RED AFTER STOP Sign (R10-23a)

FEATURE	MAXTIME TIMING CHART			
	2	4 PED	6	8 PED
Walk *	-	7	-	7
Ped Clear	0	15	0	15
Min Green *	12	7	12	7
Passage *	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Max 1 *	30	7	30	7
Yellow Change	4.9	3.0	4.9	3.0
Red Clear	4.0	0.0	4.0	0.0
Added Initial *	-	-	-	-
Maximum Initial *	-	-	-	-
Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-	-
Time To Reduce *	-	-	-	-
Minimum Gap	-	-	-	-
Advance Walk	-	-	-	-
Pie Clearance	5	-	5	-
Non Lock Detector	-	X	-	X
Vehicle Recall	MIN RECALL	-	MIN RECALL	-
Dual Entry	-	-	-	-

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Passage times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

- Vehicle Phase should be phase 2 for MAXTIME, OASIS, and SE-PAC software; use phases 2+6 for ASC/3 software.
- For monitoring purposes, pedestrian equipment on one side of the crosswalk is phase 4 and the other side is phase 8.
- Unless needed for coordination, vehicle detection is not required for phase 2 (2+6 for ASC/3 software). The initial Flashing Yellow display provides additional warning that the signal is changing.
- APS may be used in conjunction with a hybrid beacon.
- Signs W11-2 and W16-9P (as shown in Figure 1) are not required, but should be installed in advance of a pedestrian hybrid beacon based on roadway speed.
- A warning beacon may be provided to supplement the W11-2 sign.
- Notes as shown above should be used on the signal plan.
- During flashing operation, hybrid beacons shall flash yellow.

Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB)

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.2.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

MAXTIME Timing Chart

- Typically 4-7 seconds
- See STD. NO. 6.0
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase
Use 7 sec. for Ped Phases
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time
- Serves as AllRed Clearance Time
- Phase 2 Yellow Serves as Steady Yellow Time.
- Phase 2 Red serves as all red clearance time.
- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1
- Leading Pedestrian Interval (See STD. 6.0)
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- MIN RECALL if no vehicle detection used
- Usually not selected

MAXTIME TIMING CHART				
FEATURE	PHASE			
	2	4 PED	6	8 PED
Walk *	-	7	-	7
Ped Clear	-	19	-	19
Min Green *	10	7	10	7
Passage *	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Max 1 *	30	7	30	7
Yellow Change	5.0	3.0	5.0	3.0
Red Clear	2.0	0.0	2.0	0.0
Added Initial *	-	-	-	-
Maximum Initial *	-	-	-	-
Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-	-
Time To Reduce *	-	-	-	-
Minimum Gap	-	-	-	-
Advance Walk	-	-	-	-
Pre Clearance	5	-	5	-
Non Lock Detector	-	X	-	X
Vehicle Recall	MIN RECALL	-	MIN RECALL	-
Dual Entry	-	-	-	-

Serves as Flashing Yellow Time

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Passage times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Advance Walk (LPI) is not typically used with Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon
All Time parameters entered for Phase 4 PED and Phase 8 PED should be identical

OASIS 2070 Timing Chart

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase
Use 7 sec. for Ped Phases
Use 5 sec. for Overlap

- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- Phase 2 Yellow Serves as Flashing Yellow Time. Use default 3.0 seconds for Ped phases.

Serves as Flashing Yellow Time

- Use 2.0 sec for Phase 2 Red. Use 0.0 for Ped Phases.
- Typically 4-7 seconds
- See STD. NO. 6.0
- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1
- MAX RECALL if no vehicle detection used
- None (-) or YELLOW
- Usually not selected
- ON or not selected, usually selected

OASIS 2070 TIMING CHART				
FEATURE	PHASE			
	2	4 PED	8 PED	OLA
• Min Green 1 *	10	7	7	5
• Extension 1 *	0.0	0.0	0.0	
• Max Green 1 *	30	0	0	
• Yellow Clearance	5.0	3.0	3.0	3.8
• Red Clearance	2.0	0.0	0.0	5.0
• Walk 1 *	-	7	7	
• Don't Walk 1	-	19	19	
• Seconds Per Actuation *	-	-	-	
• Max Variable Initial *	-	-	-	
• Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-	
• Time To Reduce *	-	-	-	
• Minimum Gap	-	-	-	
• Recall Mode	MAX RECALL	-	-	
• Vehicle Call Memory	-	-	-	
• Dual Entry	-	-	-	
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	ON	

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phase 2 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

OLA Min Green must be the same as Phase 2 Yellow clearance time (Flashing Yellow Time)

OLA Yellow is vehicle steady Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2

Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time

Serves as AllRed Clearance Time

OLA Red should be at least time calculated in STD. 5.2.2, but may be increased up to 5.0

Advance Walk (LPI) is not typically used with Pedestrian Hybrid "HAWK" Signal
All Time parameters entered for Phase 4 PED and Phase 8 PED should be identical

Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB) Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.2.2

SHEET 2 OF 5

2023-02

ASC/3 Timing Chart w/170 Cabinet

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase
Use 7 for Ped Phases
Use 5 for Overlap
- Typically 4-7 seconds
- See STD. NO. 6.0
Serves as Flashing Yellow Time
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0 sec
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2
Use default 3.0 seconds for Ped phases.
Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time
- Red Clear should be calculated as in STD. 5.2.2,
but may be increased up to 5.0. Use 0.0 sec.
for Ped Phases.
Serves as AllRed Clearance Time
- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1
- None if no vehicle detection
- PED RECALL if no vehicle detection
- Usually not selected
- ON or not selected, usually selected

ASC/3 TIMING CHART				
FEATURE	PHASE			
	2	4 PED	6	8 PED
• Min Green *	10	7	10	7
• Walk *	7	7	7	7
• Ped Clear *	5	19	5	19
• Veh. Extension *	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
• Max 1 *	30	7	30	7
• Yellow	3.8	3.0	3.8	3.0
• Red Clear	5.0	0.0	5.0	0.0
• Actuations B4 Add *	-	-	-	-
• Seconds /Actuation *	-	-	-	-
• Max Initial *	-	-	-	-
• Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-	-
• Time To Reduce *	-	-	-	-
• Minimum Gap	-	-	-	-
• Locking Detector	-	-	-	-
• Recall Position	PED RECALL	-	PED RECALL	-
• Dual Entry	-	-	-	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Advance Walk (LPI) is not typically used with Pedestrian Hybrid "HAWK" Signal
 All Time parameters entered for Phase 2 and Phase 6 must be identical.
 All Time parameters entered for Phase 4 PED and Phase 8 PED must be identical.

Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB) Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.2.2

SHEET 3 OF 5

2023-02

ASC/3 NEMA Timing Chart (For Cary 2070LXN2 Signal System)

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phases
Use 7 for Ped Phases
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set as dash
- Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2
Use default 3.0 seconds for Ped phases.
 - ① Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time
 - ② Serves as AllRed Clearance Time
- Red Clear should be calculated as in STD. 5.2.2,
but may be increased up to 5.0. Use 0.0 sec
for Ped Phases.
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- MAX RECALL if no vehicle detection
- OFF if no vehicle detection
 - ③ Serves as Flashing Yellow Time
- Typically 4-7 seconds
- See STD. NO. 6.0 For Ped Clear Times. Set to
Flashing Yellow Time for Vehicle Phases
- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1
- Usually not selected
- ON or not selected, usually selected

TIMING CHART				
ASC/3-2070LXN2 CONTROLLER				
PHASE	Ø2	Ø4 PED	Ø6	Ø8 PED
• MINIMUM GREEN *	10 SEC.	7 SEC.	10 SEC.	7 SEC.
• VEHICLE EXT *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• YELLOW CHANGE INT* →	3.8 SEC.	3.0 SEC.	3.8 SEC.	← 3.0 SEC.
• RED CLEARANCE * →	5.0 SEC.	0.0 SEC.	5.0 SEC.	← 0.0 SEC.
• MAX 1 *	30 SEC.	7 SEC.	30 SEC.	7 SEC.
• RECALL POSITION	PED RECALL	-	PED RECALL	-
• LOCK DET.	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
• WALK*	7 SEC.	7 SEC.	7 SEC.	7 SEC.
• PED CLEAR →	5 SEC.	19 SEC.	5 SEC.	← 19 SEC.
• ACTUATION B4 ADD*	- VEH.	- VEH.	- VEH.	- VEH.
• SEC PER ACTUATION *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• MAXIMUM INITIAL *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• TIME B4 REDUCTION *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• TIME TO REDUCE *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• MINIMUM GAP	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• DUAL ENTRY	-	-	-	-
• SIMULTANEOUS GAP	ON	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Advance Walk (LPI) is not typically used with Pedestrian Hybrid "HAWK" Signal
 All Time parameters entered for Phase 2 and Phase 6 must be identical
 All Time parameters entered for Phase 4 PED and Phase 8 PED must be identical

Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB) Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.2.2

SHEET 4 OF 5

2023-02

SE-PAC 2070 Timing Chart (Hickory and Raleigh Signal Systems)

(Based on SE-PAC Version 5)

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase. Use 7 for Ped Phase(s).
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0.0.
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase. Use Total of Walk and Pedestrian Clear Time (W+PC) for Ped Phase(s).
- Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2. Use default 3.0 seconds for Ped phase(s).
- Red clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2. Use 0.0 seconds for Ped phase(s).
- Typically 4-7 seconds for 2 PED
- See STD. NO. 6.0 for 2 PED
- Volume Density Timing
Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1
- Program for MIN/PED RECALL if no vehicle detection used
- None ("-") or YELLOW
- Usually not selected
- ON or not selected, usually selected

SE-PAC 2070 TIMING CHART		
FEATURE	PHASE	
	1 PED	2 PED
• Min Green *	10	7
• Passage Gap *	0.0	0.0
• Maximum Green *	30	26
• Yellow Change	5.0	3.0
• Red Clear	2.0	0.0
• Walk *	10	7
• Pedestrian Clear	5	19
• Added Initial *	-	-
• Maximum Initial *	-	-
• Time Before Reduction *	-	-
• Time To Reduce *	-	-
• Minimum Gap	-	-
• Recall Mode	MIN/PED RECALL	-
• Vehicle Call Memory	-	-
• Dual Entry	-	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 1 and 2 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

- Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time
- Serves as AllRed Clearance Time
- Minimum Dark Time Between Activations
- Serves as Flashing Yellow Time

Advance Walk (LPI) is not typically used with Pedestrian Hybrid "HAWK" Signal

PHASING DIAGRAM

EV PREEMPT PHASES
(Medium Priority)

TABLE OF OPERATION

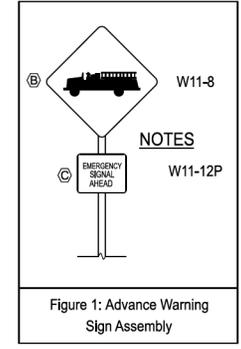
SIGNAL FACE	PHASE					
	2+6	2	4	6	4	2+6
21,22	DRK	FY	Y	R	FR*	Y
23,24	DRK	FY	Y	R	FR*	Y
41	DRK	DRK	DRK	DRK	FY	DRK

* Alternating Flash
 Y - Steady Yellow
 FY - Flashing Yellow
 R - Steady Red
 FR - Flashing Red
 DRK - Dark

MAXTIME PREEMPTION CHART

FUNCTION	PRE 2
Type	EMERG VEH
Exit Phases	2
Delay	--
Call Extend Time	-
Max Presence	120
Enter Min Green	1
Enter Walk	255*
Enter Ped Clear	255*
Enter Yellow Change	25.5*
Enter Red Clear	25.5*
Track Green	-
Track Yellow Change	25.5*
Track Red Clear	25.5*
Dwell Green	0
Exit Min Green	255*
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*
Exit Type	EXIT PHASES
Ped Clear Through Yellow	-
Require All Red Entry	-

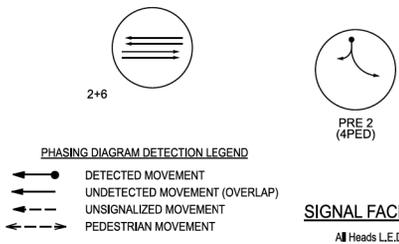
* Directs controller to use default phase timing
 ** See Note 5.



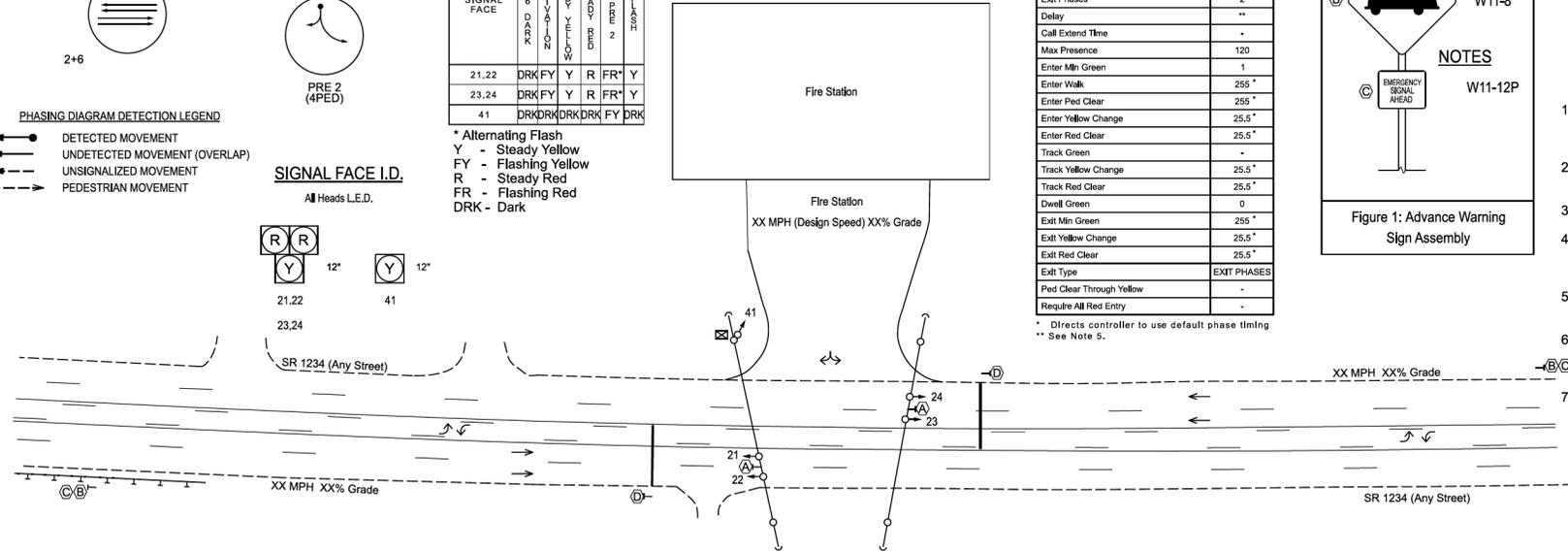
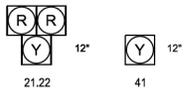
2 Phase
 Semi-Actuated
 Emergency Hybrid Beacon
 (Anytown Signal System)

NOTES

1. Refer to "Roadway Standard Drawings NCDOT" dated January 2024 and "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated January 2024.
2. Locate new cabinet so as not to obstruct sight distance of vehicles turning right on red.
3. Locate emergency vehicle preemption switch in Fire Station.
4. The Division Traffic Engineer will determine the Delay before Preempt and Preempt Dwell Min Green time for the emergency vehicle preemption timing. Signal head 41 shall remain Dark except during the phase 4 green interval (flashing yellow display.)
5. Maximum times shown in timing chart are for free-run operation only. Coordinated signal system timing values supersede these values.
6. Locate advance signs in accordance with Table 2C-3 in Section 2C.04 of the 2023 MUTCD or as otherwise directed by the engineer.



SIGNAL FACE I.D.
 All Heads L.E.D.



-EV Preempt Phase should be programmed as PRE 2.
 -Vehicle Phase should be phase 2 for MAXTIME, OASIS, and SE-PAC software; use phases 2+6 for ASC/3 software.
 -Vehicle detection is not required for phase 2 (2+6 for ASC/3 software). The initial Flashing Yellow display provides additional warning that the beacon is activating.
 -Signs W11-8 and W11-12P (shown in Figure 1) are required and should be installed in advance of an emergency vehicle hybrid beacon based on roadway speed as recommended in the MUTCD.
 -A steady all red interval should follow the steady yellow interval and precede the alternating flashing red display.
 -Signal head 41 may be either a 8" or 12" yellow beacon; its location may vary so that it is most visible to the exiting emergency vehicle.
 -An emergency vehicle beacon may be combined for use with with a pedestrian hybrid beacon.
 -During flashing operation, hybrid beacons shall flash yellow.

MAXTIME TIMING CHART

FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	6
Walk *	-	0	-
Ped Clear	-	**	-
Min Green *	12	7	12
Passage *	-	-	-
Max 1 *	30	30	30
Yellow Change	5.0	3.0	5.0
Red Clear	2.0	3.0	2.0
Added Initial *	-	-	-
Maximum Initial *	-	-	-
Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-
Time To Reduce *	-	-	-
Minimum Gap	-	-	-
Advance Walk	-	-	-
Pre Clearance	5.0	-	5.0
Non Lock Detector	-	-	-
Vehicle Recall	MIN RECALL	-	MIN RECALL
Dual Entry	-	-	-

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.
 ** See Note 5.

SIGNS

PROPOSED	EXISTING
(A) "EMERGENCY SIGNAL STOP ON FLASHING RED" Sign (R10-14a)	(A)
(B) Emergency Vehicle Sign (W11-8)	(B)
(C) "EMERGENCY SIGNAL AHEAD" Sign (W11-12P)	(C)
(D) "STOP HERE ON FLASHING RED" Sign (R10-14b)	(D)

Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.3.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-10

MAXTIME Timing Chart

- Typically not used with EVP
- See STD. NO. 6.0
Ped Clear for the EV phase serves as the dwell interval
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for
Vehicle Phase
Use 7 sec. for Ped Phases
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- Phase 2 and 6 Yellow Serves as Steady Yellow Time. Use STD. 5.2.2 to calculate Yellow Clear time.
Use 3.0 sec for EV phase 4.
- Use 3.0 sec for Phase 4 Red.
Use STD. 5.2.2 to calculate Red Clear time for phase 2 and 6.
- Volume Density Timing
Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1
- Leading Pedestrian Interval
(See STD. 6.0)
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- MIN RECALL if no vehicle detection used
- Usually not selected

MAXTIME TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4	6
Walk *	-	0	-
Ped Clear	-	**	-
Min Green *	10	7	10
Passage *	-	-	-
Max 1 *	30	30	30
Yellow Change	5.0	3.0	5.0
Red Clear	2.0	3.0	2.0
Added Initial *	-	-	-
Maximum Initial *	-	-	-
Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-
Time To Reduce *	-	-	-
Minimum Gap	-	-	-
Advance Walk	-	-	-
Pre Clearance	5.0	-	5.0
Non Lock Detector	-	-	-
Vehicle Recall	MIN RECALL	-	MIN RECALL
Dual Entry	-	-	-

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Passage time for phase 2 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.
 ** The Division Traffic Engineer will determine the Delay before Preempt and the phase 4 Ped Clear time for the emergency vehicle preemption timing.

Serves as Preempt Dwell Time

Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time

Serves as AllRed Clearance Time

Serves as Flashing Yellow Interval

Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.3.2

SHEET 1 OF 5

2024-05

OASIS 2070 Timing Chart

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase
Use 7 sec. for EV Phase
Use 5 sec. for Overlap

- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0.

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- Phase 2 Yellow Serves as Flashing Yellow Time. Use STD. 5.2.2 to calculate Yellow Clear time for phase 4.

Serves as Flashing Yellow Time

- Use 2.0 sec for Phase 2 Red. Use STD. 5.2.2 to calculate Red Clear time for phase 4.

- Typically not used with EVP
- See STD. NO. 6.0 Typically not used with EVP

- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1

- MAX RECALL if no vehicle detection used

- None (-) or YELLOW

- Usually not selected (-)

- ON or not selected, usually selected

OASIS 2070 TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4 (PRE 2)	OLA
• Min Green 1 *	10	7	5
• Extension 1 *	0.0	0.0	
• Max Green 1 *	30	30	
• Yellow Clearance	5.0	3.0	3.8
• Red Clearance	2.0	3.6	5.0
• Walk 1 *	-	-	
• Don't Walk 1	-	-	
• Seconds Per Actuation *	-	-	
• Max Variable Initial *	-	-	
• Time Before Reduction *	-	-	
• Time To Reduce *	-	-	
• Minimum Gap	-	-	
• Recall Mode	MAX RECALL	-	
• Vehicle Call Memory	-	-	
• Dual Entry	-	-	
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phase 2 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

OLA Min Green must be the same as Phase 2 Yellow clearance time (Flashing Yellow Time)

OLA Yellow is vehicle steady Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2

Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time

Serves as AllRed Clearance Time

OLA Red should be at least time calculated in STD. 5.2.2, but may be increased up to 5.0

Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

7.3.2

SHEET 2 OF 5

ASC/3 Timing Chart w/170 Cabinet

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase;
Use 7 for EV Phase.

- Typically not used with EVP

- See STD. NO. 6.0
Typically not used with EVP

Serves as Flashing Yellow Time

- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0 sec

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1

- Yellow clearance time as calculated in
STD. 5.2.2 for all phases.

Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time

Serves as AllRed Clearance Time

- Red Clear should be calculated as in STD. 5.2.2
for all phases, but may be increased up to 5.0.

- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
If used, see STD. 5.2.1

- None (-) if no vehicle detection

- MAX RECALL if no vehicle detection

- Usually not selected (-)

- ON or not selected, usually selected

ASC/3 TIMING CHART			
FEATURE	PHASE		
	2	4 (PRE 2)	6
• Min Green *	10	7	10
• Walk *	-	-	-
• Ped Clear *	▶ 5	-	▶ 5
• Veh. Extension *	0.0	0.0	0.0
• Max 1 *	30	30	30
• Yellow	▶ 3.8	3.0	▶ 3.8
• Red Clear	▶ 5.0	3.6	▶ 5.0
• Actuations B4 Add *	-	-	-
• Seconds /Actuation *	-	-	-
• Max Initial *	-	-	-
• Time Before Reduction *	-	-	-
• Time To Reduce *	-	-	-
• Minimum Gap	-	-	-
• Locking Detector	-	-	-
• Recall Position	MAX RECALL	-	MAX RECALL
• Dual Entry	-	-	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

All Time parameters entered for Phase 2 and Phase 6 must be identical.

Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

7.3.2

SHEET 3 OF 5

2021-07

ASC/3 NEMA Timing Chart (For Cary 2070LXN2 Signal System)

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phases; Use 7 for EV Phase.
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set as dash
- Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2 for all phases.
 - Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time
 - Serves as AllRed Clearance Time
- Red Clear should be calculated as in STD. 5.2.2 for all phases, but may be increased up to 5.0.
- See STD. NO. 5.2.1
- MAX RECALL if no vehicle detection
- OFF if no vehicle detection
 - Serves as Flashing Yellow Time
- Typically not used with EVP
- Typically not used with EVP. Set to Flashing Yellow Time for Vehicle Phases
- OFF if Volume Density Timing Not Used
- Volume Density Timing Normally Not Used
 - If used, see STD. 5.2.1.
- Usually not selected (-)
- ON or not selected, usually selected

TIMING CHART			
ASC/3-2070LXN2 CONTROLLER			
PHASE	Ø2	Ø4 (PRE 2)	Ø6
• MINIMUM GREEN *	10 SEC.	7 SEC.	10 SEC.
• VEHICLE EXT *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• YELLOW CHANGE INT*	▶ 3.8 SEC.	3.0 SEC.	▶ 3.8 SEC.
• RED CLEARANCE *	▶ 5.0 SEC.	3.6 SEC.	▶ 5.0 SEC.
• MAX 1 *	30 SEC.	30 SEC.	30 SEC.
• RECALL POSITION	MAX RECALL	-	MAX RECALL
• LOCK DET.	OFF	OFF	OFF
• WALK*	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• PED CLEAR	▶ 5 SEC.	- SEC.	▶ 5 SEC.
• VOLUME DENSITY	OFF	OFF	OFF
• ACTUATION B4 ADD*	- VEH.	- VEH.	- VEH.
• SEC PER ACTUATION *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• MAXIMUM INITIAL *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• TIME B4 REDUCTION *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• TIME TO REDUCE *	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• MINIMUM GAP	- SEC.	- SEC.	- SEC.
• DUAL ENTRY	-	-	-
• SIMULTANEOUS GAP	ON	ON	ON

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

All Time parameters entered for Phase 2 and Phase 6 must be identical

Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon ("HAWK") Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

7.3.2

SHEET 4 OF 5

SE-PAC 2070 Timing Chart (Hickory and Raleigh Signal Systems)

(Based on SE-PAC Version 5)

- See STD. NO. 5.2.1 for Vehicle Phase. Use 7 for Ped Phase(s).
- Unless vehicle phase is detected, set to 0.0.
- Set for same as MIN GREEN. Controller rests in Phase 1 until preempt activation.
- Yellow clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2 for each phase.
- Red clearance time as calculated in STD. 5.2.2 for Phase 1 PED. Use 0.0 for 2 PED (not used).
- Since preempt activated, this value generally not used. Preempt will begin immediately unless a delay time is used. Use 1.
- Flashing Yellow Time for 1 PED. For 2 PED, this is the Preempt Dwell time, which is usually field adjusted.
- Volume Density Timing Not Used
- Program for MIN/PED RECALL if no vehicle detection used
- None ("-") or YELLOW
- Usually not selected
- ON or not selected, usually selected

SE-PAC 2070 TIMING CHART		
FEATURE	PHASE	
	1 PED	2 PED
• Min Green	10	7
• Passage Gap	0.0	0.0
• Maximum Green	10	7
• Yellow Change	5.0	3.0
• Red Clear	2.0	0.0
• Walk	1	1
• Pedestrian Clear	5	10*
• Added Initial	-	-
• Maximum Initial	-	-
• Time Before Reduction	-	-
• Time To Reduce	-	-
• Minimum Gap	-	-
• Recall Mode	MIN/PED RECALL	-
• Vehicle Call Memory	-	-
• Dual Entry	-	-
• Simultaneous Gap	ON	ON

See Note X. This value may be field adjusted. No other values should be field adjusted.

- Serves as Steady Yellow Clearance Time
- Serves as AllRed Clearance Time
- Serves as Preempt Dwell Time
- Serves as Flashing Yellow Time

Emergency Vehicle Hybrid Beacon ("HAWK") Timing Charts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

7.3.2

SHEET 5 OF 5

<u>Sign No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Graphic</u>	<u>Sign No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Graphic</u>
R1-1	"STOP" Sign		R3-5L R3-5R	Left Arrow "ONLY" Sign Right Arrow "ONLY" Sign	 
R1-2	"YIELD" Sign		R3-6L R3-6R	Combined Through and Left Arrow Sign Combined Through and Right Arrow Sign	 
R3-1 R3-2	No Right Turn Sign No Left Turn Sign	 	R3-18	No U-Turn/No Left Turn Sign	
R3-3	"NO TURNS" Sign		R8-8	"DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS" Sign	
R3-4	No U Turn Sign		R10-6	"STOP HERE ON RED" Sign	
R3-5a	Through Arrow "ONLY" Sign		R10-7	"DO NOT BLOCK INTERSECTION" Sign	

Commonly Used Signs

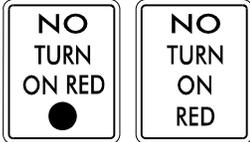
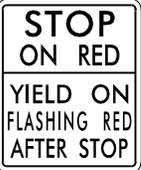
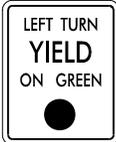
SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

8.0

SHEET 1 OF 3

2024-05

<u>Sign No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Graphic</u>	<u>Sign No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Graphic</u>
R10-10R	"RIGHT TURN SIGNAL" Sign		R10-16	"U-TURN YIELD TO RIGHT TURN" Sign	
R10-11	"NO TURN ON RED" ● Sign		R10-22	Bicycle Signal Actuation "TO REQUEST GREEN WAIT ON SYMBOL" Sign	
R10-11a	"NO TURN ON RED" Sign		R10-23a	"STOP ON RED - YIELD ON FLASHING RED AFTER STOP" Sign	
R10-11b	"NO TURN ON RED" Sign		R10-40	Bicycle "SIGNAL" Left "ONLY" Sign	
R10-12	"LEFT TURN YIELD ON GREEN" ● Sign		R10-40a	Bicycle "SIGNAL" Through "ONLY" Sign	
R10-13	"EMERGENCY SIGNAL" Sign		R10-41	Bicycle "SIGNAL" Through-Right "ONLY" Sign	
R10-14	"EMERGENCY SIGNAL STOP ON FLASHING RED" Sign		R10-41a	Bicycle "SIGNAL" Dual Turn "ONLY" Sign	
R10-15L	Left (Right) "TURNING VEHICLES" Yield "TO" Pedestrians Sign		R10-41b	Bicycle "SIGNAL" Full Movement "ONLY" Sign	
R10-15R			R10-41c	Bicycle "SIGNAL" Through-Left "ONLY" Sign	

Commonly Used Signs

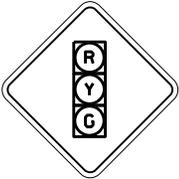
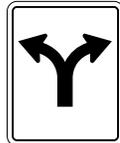
SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

8.0

SHEET 2 OF 3

<u>Sign No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Graphic</u>	<u>Sign No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Graphic</u>
W3-3	Signal Ahead Sign		W25-1	"ONCOMING TRAFFIC HAS EXTENDED GREEN" Sign	
W3-4	"BE PREPARED TO STOP" Sign		W25-2	"ONCOMING TRAFFIC MAY HAVE EXTENDED GREEN" Sign	
W11-2	Pedestrian Crossing Sign			Dual Turn Arrows Sign	
W11-8	Emergency Vehicle Sign			Dual Turn and Through Arrows Sign	
W11-12p	"EMERGENCY SIGNAL AHEAD" Plaque			"RIGHT TURN YIELD TO U-TURN" Sign	
W16-7pL W16-7pR	Left (Right) Downward Diagonal Arrow Plaque			Bus "SIGNAL" Sign	
W16-9p	"AHEAD" Plaque				

Commonly Used Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

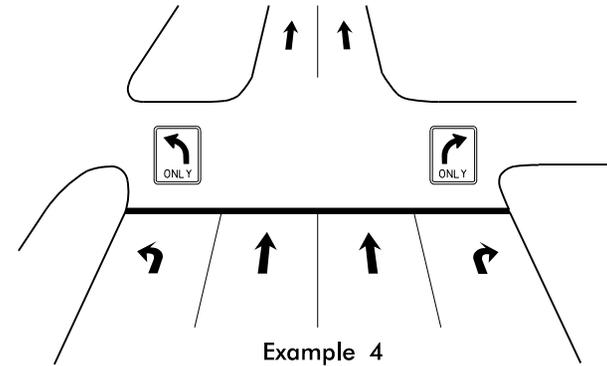
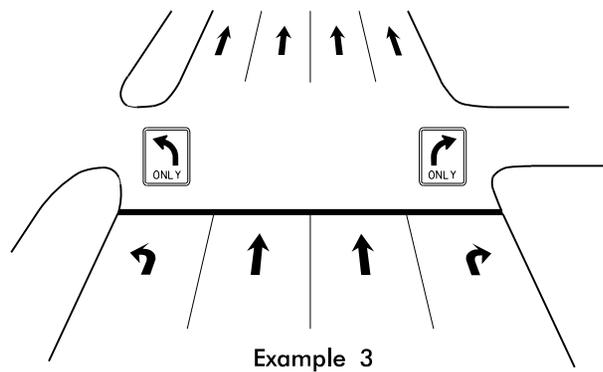
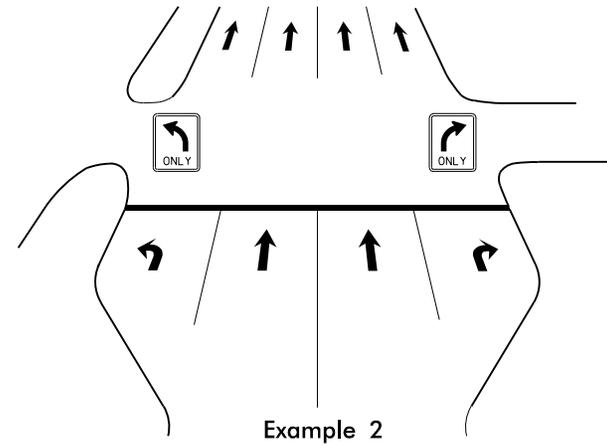
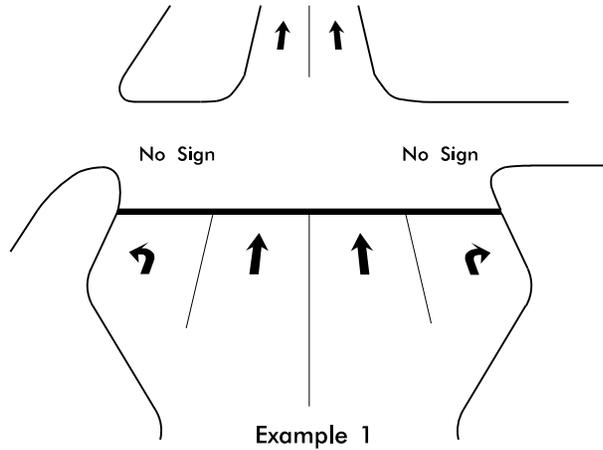
2021-07

STD. NO.

8.0

SHEET 3 OF 3

- 1) In general, lane-use control signs are not required when a vehicle must shift into a turning bay to make a turning movement (Example 1).
- 2) In general, lane-use control signs should be used when:
 - A) Lane geometrics allow a through movement, but a mandatory turn is required (Examples 2 and 3).
 - B) A lane without a turn bay ends abruptly (Example 4).
- 3) Advanced signage prior the the intersection does not negate required signs at the intersection.



Application of Lane-Use Control Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

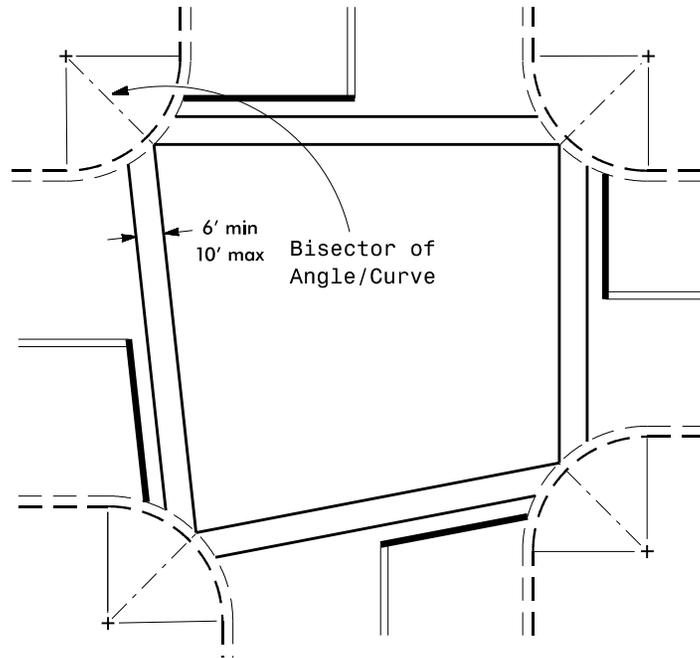
8.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

CASE 1

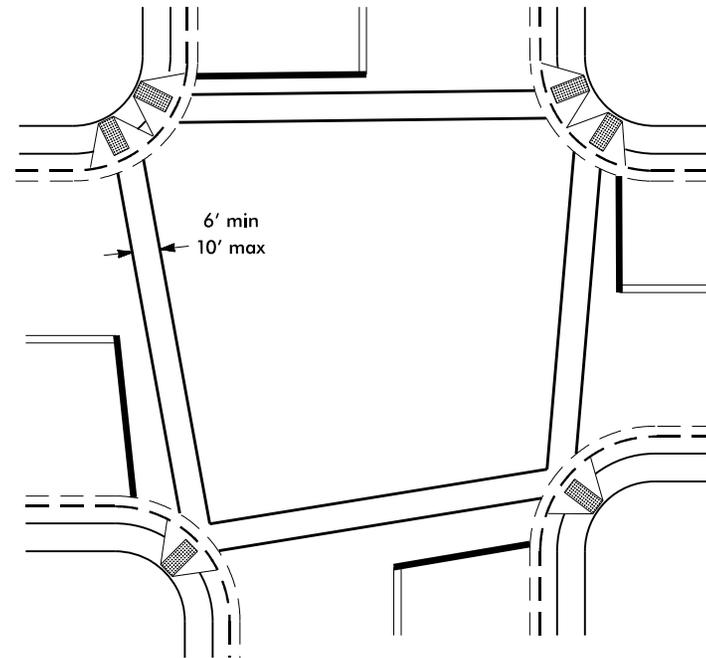
Locate Crosswalks from Center of Curve



Per Division and/or municipal agreement, crosswalk markings may be transverse or high visibility.

CASE 2

Connect Curb Ramps



When practical, it is preferred to have 2 curb ramps per quadrant.

Reference: Roadway Standard Drawing 1205.07

Crosswalks

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

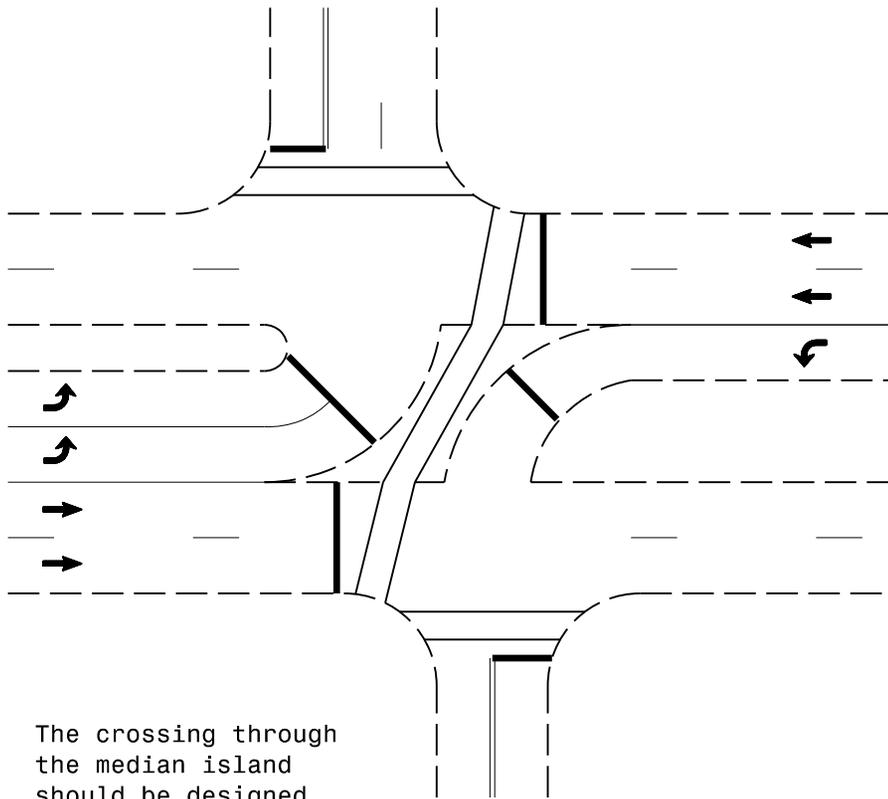
2021-07

STD. NO.

9.0

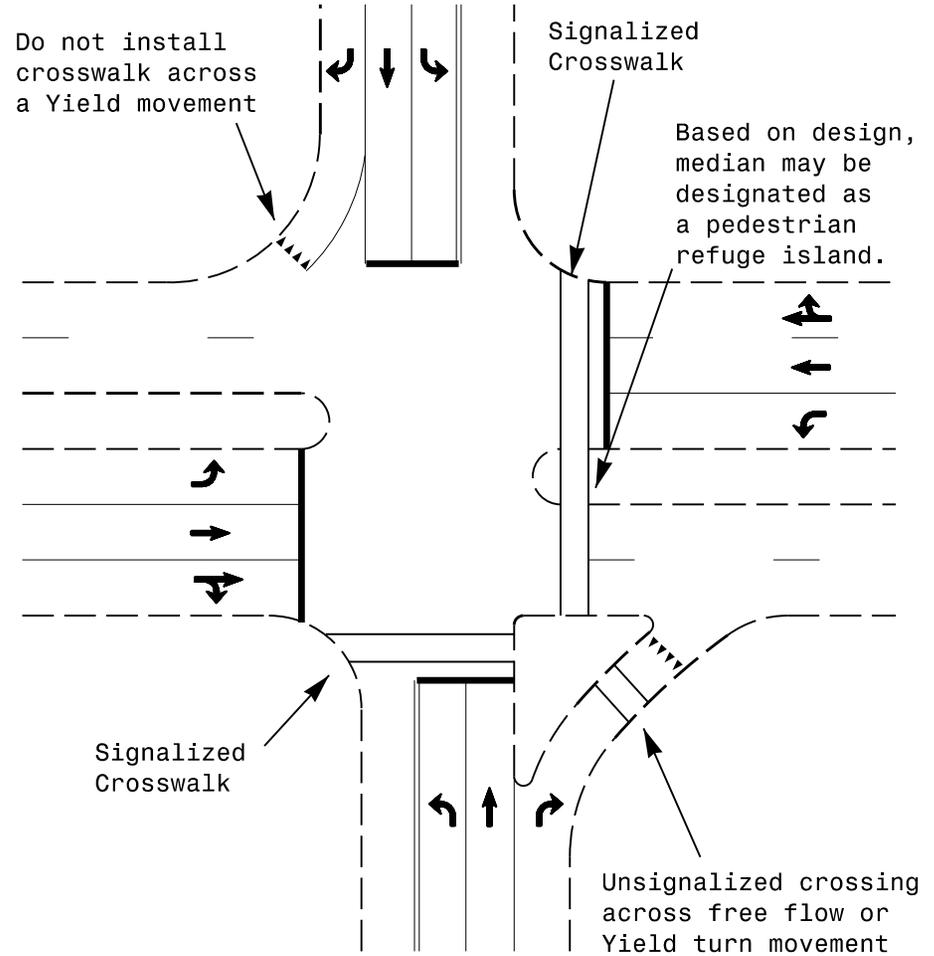
SHEET 1 OF 2

Crosswalk Across Superstreet



The crossing through the median island should be designed as a 2 stage crossing.

Intersection with Median and/or Pork Chop Island



Reference: Roadway Standard Drawing 1205.07

Crosswalks

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

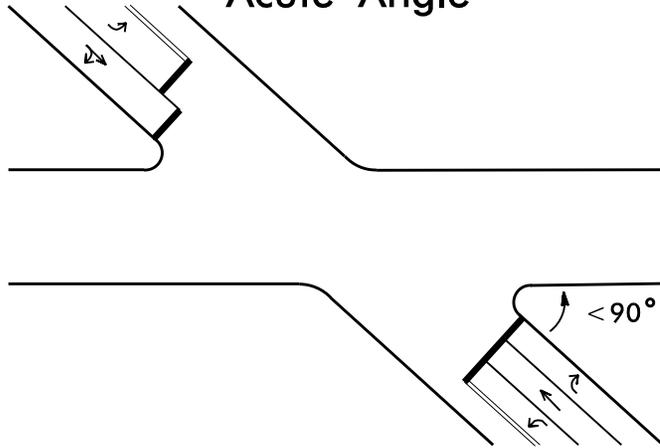
STD. NO.

9.0

SHEET 2 OF 2

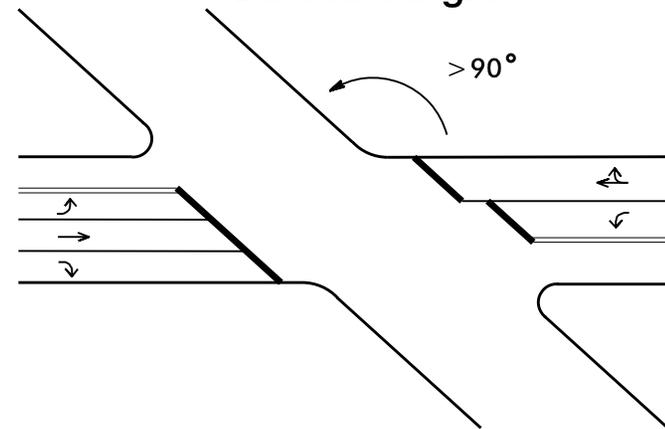
2021-07

**CASE 1
Acute Angle**



For approaches with intersection angles less than 90 degrees, place stop lines perpendicular to the centerline of the approach.

**CASE 2
Obtuse Angle**



For approaches with intersection angles greater than 90 degrees, place stop lines parallel to the edge of the intersecting roadway.

Notes

- "Intersection angle" is defined as the angle between the approach in question and the intersection roadway to the right.
- Typically, place stop lines no more than 30 feet nor less than 4 feet from the nearest edge of the intersecting travel way.
- The offset (stagger) of a stop line between adjacent lanes should be no more than 20 feet.
- For stop line locations at crosswalks, locate stop line 4 feet behind and parallel to the nearest crosswalk line, but not within the area of a curb ramp.
- When practical, locate stop lines to allow for installation of a future crosswalk based on guidelines above.

Reference: Roadway Standard
Drawings 1205.04 and 1205.07

Stop Lines

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

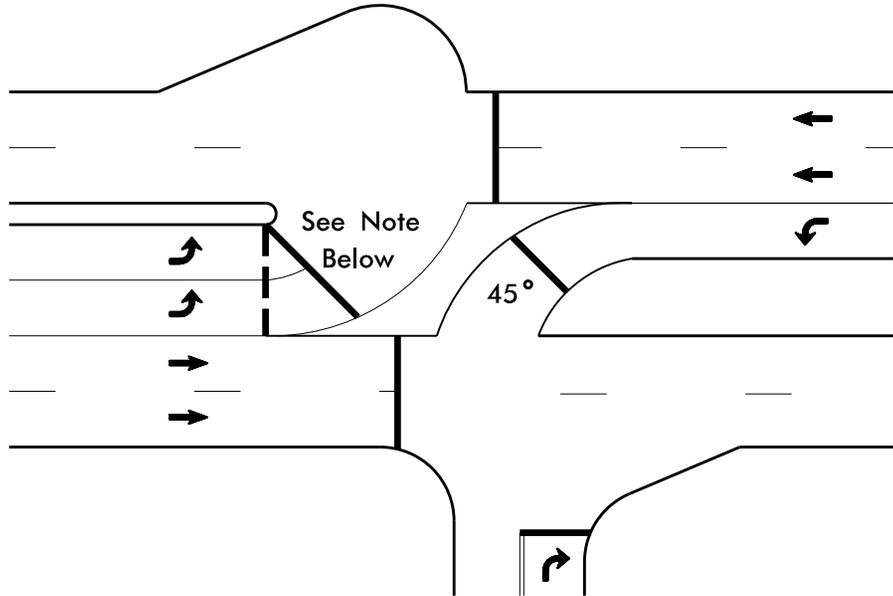
STD. NO.

9.1

SHEET 1 OF 2

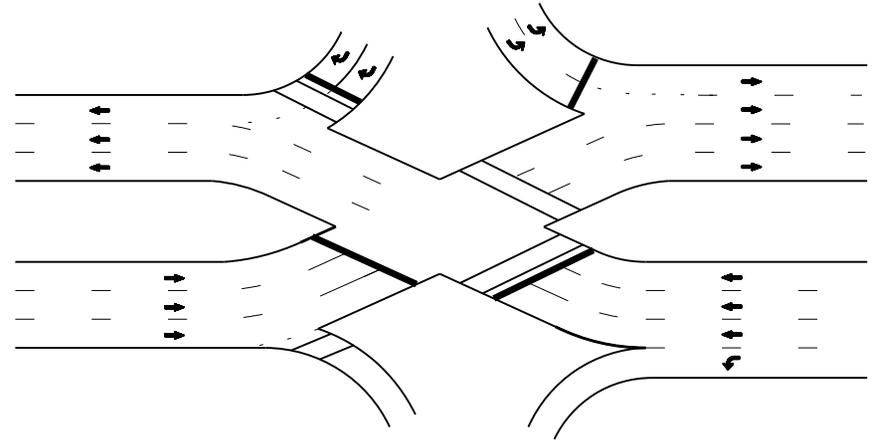
2021-07

CASE 3 Superstreet Left and/or U-Turn



- As many superstreet U-turns and left turns operate in a protected/permmissive or variable phasing mode, stop line should be located to allow vehicle to be at stop line, still be on detection loop, and have visual clearance to make a permmissive turn.
- Angle stop lines for U-Turns and left turns to be at 45° angle, so they are approximately halfway around the radius of the turn.
- Stop line should still be angled so it is perpendicular to vehicle as it is turning in lane.
- If dual turn lanes are present and the signal will only allow the movement in a protected mode, the stop line may extend perpendicular from the edge of the tangent island rather than at an angle.

CASE 4 Diverging Diamond Interchange



Notes

- Stop line should be a straight line across all lanes, not staggered or offset for each lane, that maintains at least a 40 foot distance to the overhead signal heads for all lanes.
- Where a crosswalk exists, locate stop lines 4 feet from and parallel to the crosswalk crossing travel lanes.
- When there is no crosswalk, locate stop line parallel to the tangent edge of travel for the intersecting lanes, or if needed to maintain a 40 foot distance to the signal heads, perpendicular to the travel lanes.
- For left turns off ramps, locate stop line perpendicular across travel lanes.

Reference: Roadway Standard Drawings
1205.04, 1205.07, and 1205.15

Stop Lines

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

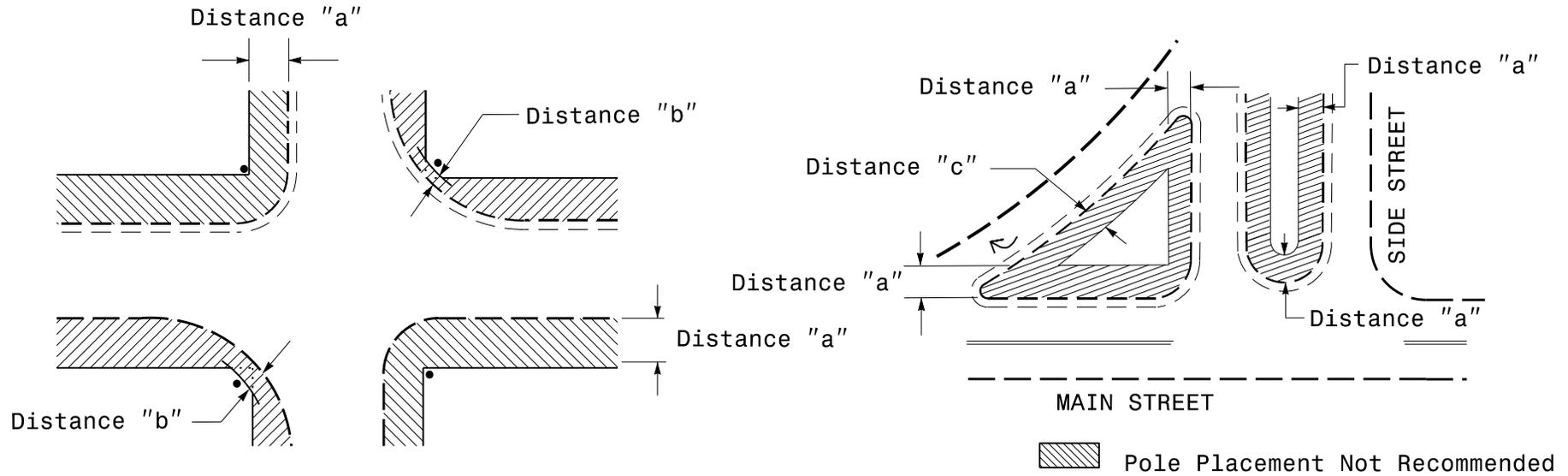
2024-05

STD. NO.

9.1

SHEET 2 OF 2

Pole Placement Guidelines



Design Speed MPH	Distance "a"		Distance "b"		Distance "c"		
	Distance from Face of Curb feet	Distance from EOP feet	Face of Curb feet	EOP feet	Side St. Speed MPH	Distance from Face of Curb feet	Distance from EOP feet
≤40	12	14	7	10	≤40	7	7
					45-50	7	7
					≥55	10	12
45-50	16	18			≤40	7	7
					45-50	10	12
					≥55	12	14
≥55	22	22			≤40	7	7
					45-50	10	12
					≥55	12	14

Note 1: The signal supports should be placed as far away from the roadway as practical.

Note 2: Painted islands should not be used for pole locations unless a method of protection is provided (such as a guardrail).

Distances are the desired minimum from the face of pole

Reference: AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide", 4th Edition, 2011

Recommended Pole Placement

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

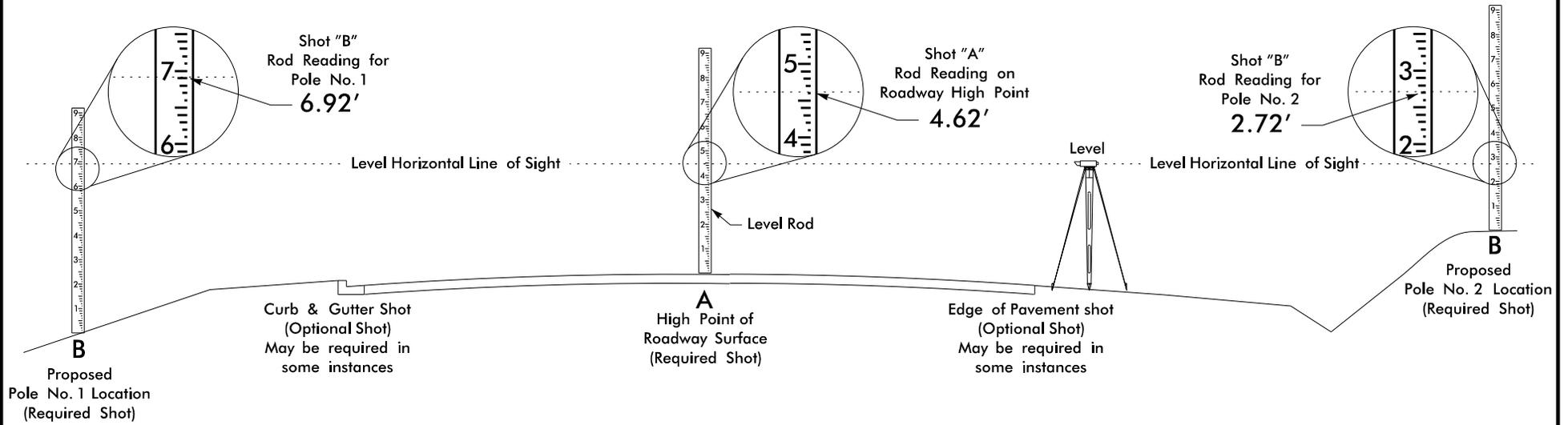
10.0

SHEET 1 OF 1

Survey Level With Rod Method

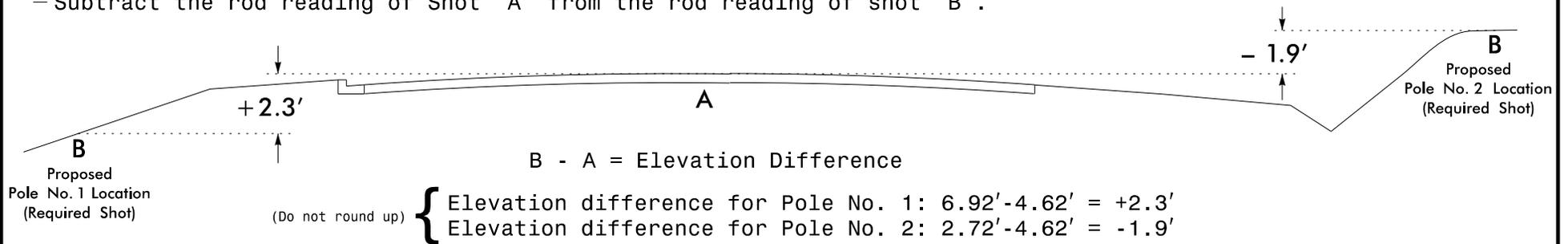
Step 1: Using a standard Survey Level and Level Rod:

- Take elevation shots on high point of roadway (shot "A") and at proposed pole foundation centerline (Shot "B").



Find the elevation difference between the proposed foundation and the high point of the roadway

- Subtract the rod reading of Shot "A" from the rod reading of shot "B".



Determining Elevation Difference for Metal Poles

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

10.1.1

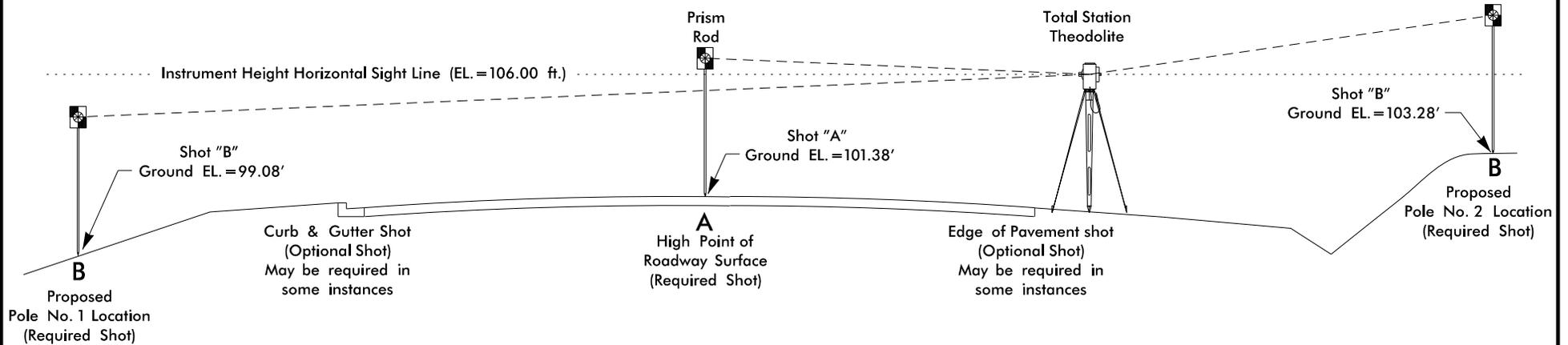
SHEET 1 OF 2

2004-07

Total Station And Data Collector With Prism Rod Method

Step 1: Using a Total Station and Data collector with Prism Rod:

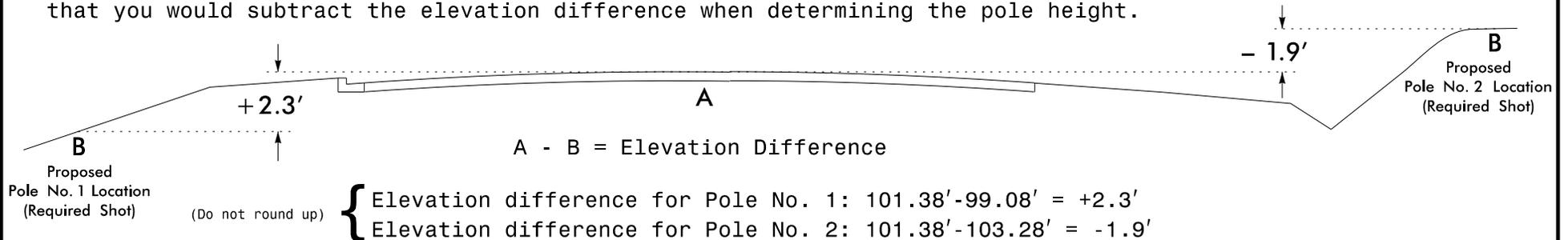
- Take elevation shots on high point of roadway (shot "A") and at proposed pole foundation centerline (Shot "B").



Step 2: Find the elevation difference between Shot "A" and Shot "B"

- Subtract the ground elevation of Shot "B" from the roadway elevation of shot "A".

Notice the difference in the equation when different survey methods are used. A positive number should reflect that you would add the elevation difference to the pole height, where a negative number would mean that you would subtract the elevation difference when determining the pole height.



Determining Elevation Difference for Metal Poles

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

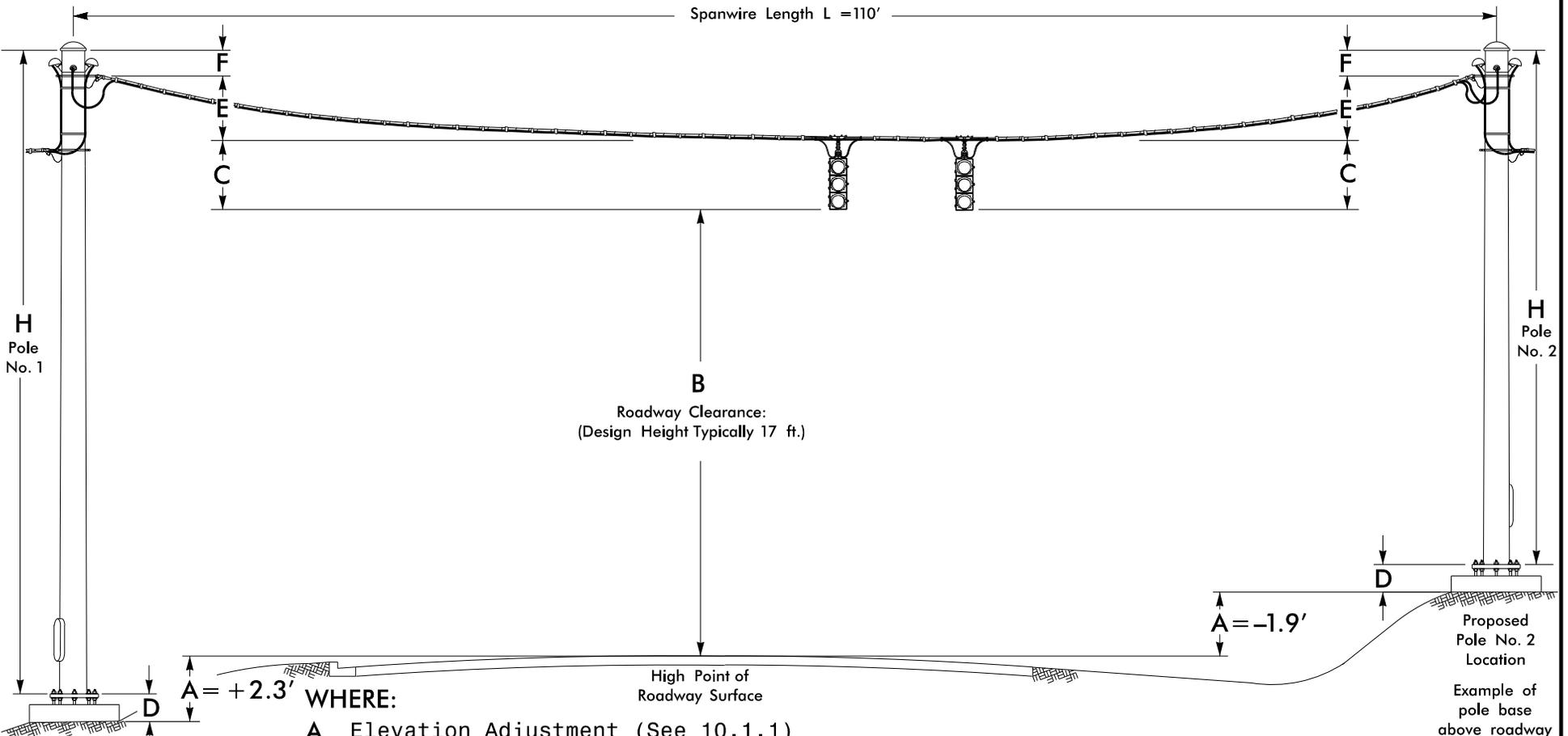
2004-07

STD. NO.

10.1.1

SHEET 2 OF 2

$$\text{MINIMUM STRAIN POLE HEIGHT (H)} = A + B + C - D + E + F$$



WHERE:

- A Elevation Adjustment (See 10.1.1)
- B Roadway Clearance Distance (Design Height typically 17')
- C Signal Head Height for Spanwire Mounting (See 10.1.3)
- D Top of pole base above ground = 0.75'
- E Spanwire Sag = 4% of total Spanwire Length "L"
- F Spanwire Attachment Point (Minimum) = 1.5' Below Top of Pole

Calculating H
(Round up to .5 ft.)

- Pole height for pole No. 1 (H): $+2.3' + 17' + 4.25' - .75' + 4.4' + 1.5' = 28.7' \Rightarrow 29.0 \text{ ft.}$
- Pole height for pole No. 2 (H): $-1.9' + 17' + 4.25' - .75' + 4.4' + 1.5' = 24.5' \Rightarrow 24.5 \text{ ft.}$

Pole Height Determination – Strain Poles

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

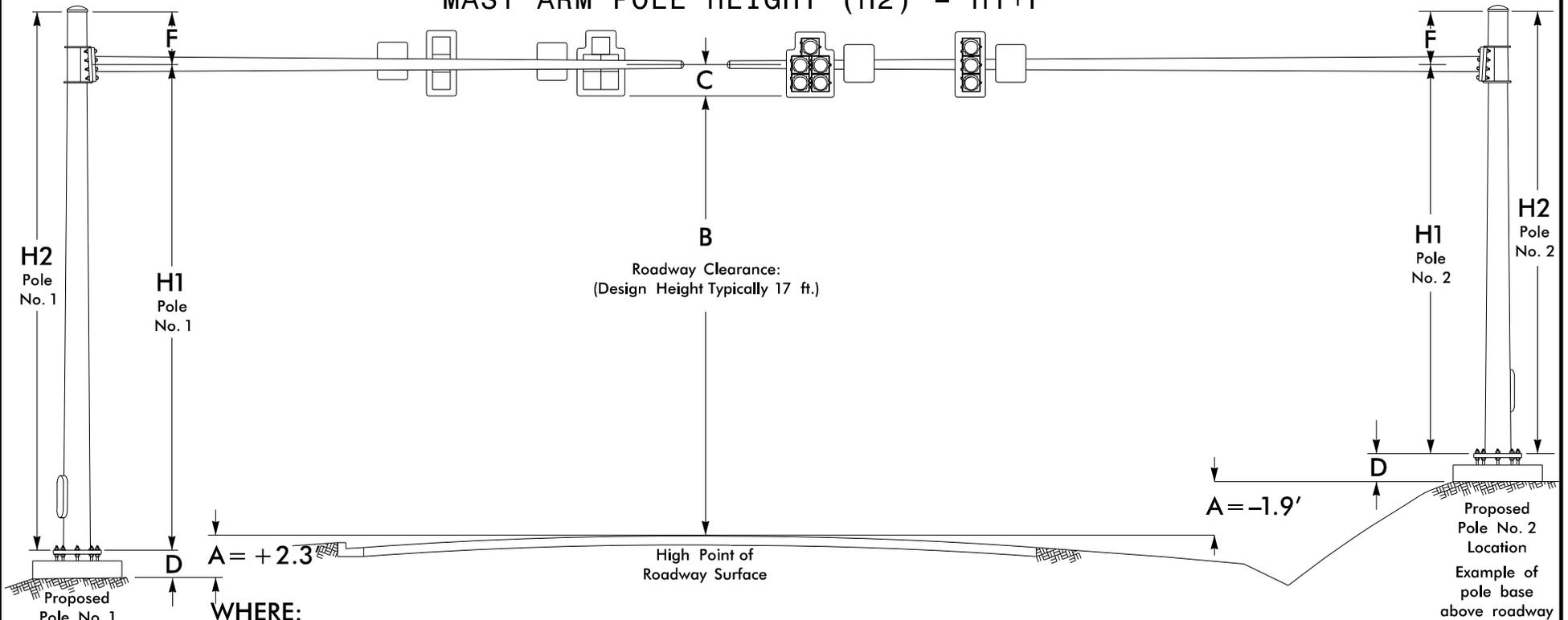
10.1.2

SHEET 1 OF 3

2004-07

$$\text{MAST ARM ATTACHMENT HEIGHT (H1)} = A+B+C-D$$

$$\text{MAST ARM POLE HEIGHT (H2)} = H1+F$$



WHERE:

- A Elevation Adjustment - (See 10.1.1)
- B Roadway Clearance Distance (Design Height typically 17')
- C 1/2 Signal Head Height for Mast Arm Mounting (See 10.1.3)
- D Top of Pole base above ground = 0.75'
- F ϕ Arm Attachment Point to Top of Pole = 2'

EXAMPLES:

Calculating H1 (Round up to .1 ft.)

- Mast Arm attachment height for pole No. 1 (H1): $+2.3' + 17' + (4.67'/2) - .75' = 20.885' \Rightarrow 20.9 \text{ ft.}$
- Mast Arm attachment height for pole No. 2 (H1): $-1.9' + 17' + (4.67'/2) - .75' = 16.685' \Rightarrow 16.7 \text{ ft.}$

Calculating H2 (Round up to .5 ft.)

- Pole height for pole No. 1 (H2): $20.9' + 2' = 22.9' \Rightarrow 23.0 \text{ ft.}$
- Pole height for pole No. 2 (H2): $16.7' + 2' = 18.7' \Rightarrow 19.0 \text{ ft.}$

Pole Height Determination – Straight Mast Arms

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

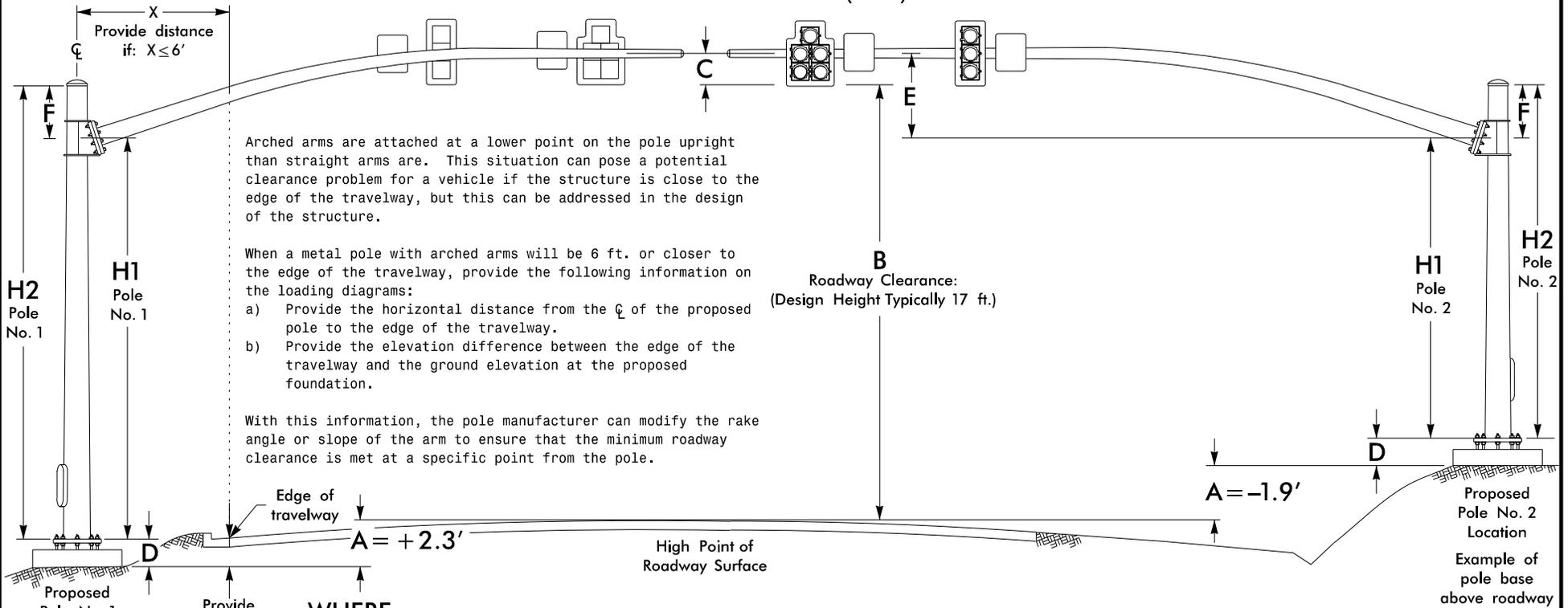
10.1.2

SHEET 2 OF 3

2004-07

$$\text{MAST ARM ATTACHMENT HEIGHT (H1)} = A+B+C-D-E$$

$$\text{MAST ARM POLE HEIGHT (H2)} = H1+F$$



Arched arms are attached at a lower point on the pole upright than straight arms are. This situation can pose a potential clearance problem for a vehicle if the structure is close to the edge of the travelway, but this can be addressed in the design of the structure.

When a metal pole with arched arms will be 6 ft. or closer to the edge of the travelway, provide the following information on the loading diagrams:

- Provide the horizontal distance from the centerline of the proposed pole to the edge of the travelway.
- Provide the elevation difference between the edge of the travelway and the ground elevation at the proposed foundation.

With this information, the pole manufacturer can modify the rake angle or slope of the arm to ensure that the minimum roadway clearance is met at a specific point from the pole.

WHERE:

- A Elevation Adjustment (See 10.1.1)
- B Roadway Clearance Distance (Design Height typically 17')
- C 1/2 Signal Head Height for Mast Arm Mounting (See 10.1.3)
- D Top of pole base above ground = 0.75'
- E Nominal Rise in Mast Arm = 5'
- F Centerline Arm Attachment Point to Top of Pole = 2'

EXAMPLES:

Calculating H1 (Round up to .1 ft.)

- Mast Arm attachment height for pole No. 1 (H1): $+2.3' + 17' + (4.67' / 2) - .75' - 5.0' = 15.885' \Rightarrow 15.9 \text{ ft.}$
- Mast Arm attachment height for pole No. 2 (H1): $-1.9' + 17' + (4.67' / 2) - .75' - 5.0' = 11.685' \Rightarrow 11.7 \text{ ft.}$

Calculating H2 (Round up to .5 ft.)

- Pole height for pole No. 1 (H2): $15.9' + 2' = 17.9' \Rightarrow 18.0 \text{ ft.}$
- Pole height for pole No. 2 (H2): $11.7' + 2' = 13.7' \Rightarrow 14.0 \text{ ft.}$

Pole Height Determination – Curved /Arched Mast Arms

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

10.1.2

SHEET 3 OF 3

2004-07

LOADING SCHEDULE FOR STRAIN POLES			
DESCRIPTION	AREA	SIZE	WEIGHT
SIGNAL HEAD 12"-3 SECTION-WITH BACKPLATE, HANGER, AND BALANCE ADJUSTER	9.5 S.F.	25.5" W x 53.5" L	56 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD 12"-3 SECTION (T-TYPE HYBRID BEACON)-WITH BACKPLATE, HANGER, AND BALANCE ADJUSTER	10.5 S.F.	39.0" W x 39.0" L	58 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD 12"-4 SECTION (T-TYPE)-WITH BACKPLATE, HANGER, AND BALANCE ADJUSTER	14.0 S.F.	39.0" W x 52.0" L	83 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD 12"-4 SECTION (VERTICAL)-WITH BACKPLATE, HANGER, AND BALANCE ADJUSTER	11.75 S.F.	25.5" W x 65.5" L	69 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD 12"-5 SECTION-WITH BACKPLATE, HANGER, AND BALANCE ADJUSTER	16.5 S.F.	42.0" W x 56.5" L	95 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD 8"-3 SECTION-WITH BACKPLATE, HANGER, AND BALANCE ADJUSTER	6.75 S.F.	22.0" W x 40.5" L	43 LBS
LED BLANKOUT SIGN WITH HANGER	6.0 S.F.	24.0" W x 36.0" L	110 LBS
SIGN WITH HANGER	5.0 S.F.	24.0" W x 30.0" L	11 LBS
SIGN WITH HANGER	7.5 S.F.	30.0" W x 36.0" L	14 LBS
STREET NAME SIGN, WITH HANGER	16.0 S.F.	24.0" W x 96.0" L	36 LBS
PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEAD WITH MOUNTNG HARDWARE	2.2 S.F.	18.5" W x 17.0" L	21 LBS
LUMINAIRE	0.87 S.F.	13.25" W x 26.25" L	35 LBS

LOADING SCHEDULE FOR MAST ARM POLES			
DESCRIPTION	AREA	SIZE	WEIGHT
SIGNAL HEAD RIGID MOUNTED 12"-3 SECTION-WITH BACKPLATE	9.3 S.F.	25.5" W x 52.5" L	60 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD RIGID MOUNTED 12"-3 SECTION (T-TYPE HYBRID BEACON)- WITH BACKPLATE	10.5 S.F.	39.0" W x 39.0" L	62 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD RIGID MOUNTED 12"-4 SECTION (T-TYPE)-WITH BACKPLATE	14.0 S.F.	39.0" W x 52.0" L	83 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD RIGID MOUNTED 12"-4 SECTION (VERTICAL)-WITH BACKPLATE	11.7 S.F.	25.5" W x 66.0" L	74 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD RIGID MOUNTED 12"-5 SECTION-WITH BACKPLATE	16.3 S.F.	42.0" W x 56.0" L	103 LBS
SIGNAL HEAD RIGID MOUNTED 8"-3 SECTION-WITH BACKPLATE	6.75 S.F.	24.0" W x 40.5" L	43 LBS
LED BLANKOUT SIGN RIGID MOUNTED	6.0 S.F.	24.0" W x 36.0" L	110 LBS
SIGN RIGID MOUNTED	5.0 S.F.	24.0" W x 30.0" L	11 LBS
SIGN RIGID MOUNTED	7.5 S.F.	30.0" W x 36.0" L	14 LBS
STREET NAME SIGN, RIGID MOUNTED	16.0 S.F.	24.0" W x 96.0" L	36 LBS
PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEAD WITH MOUNTNG HARDWARE	2.2 S.F.	18.5" W x 17.0" L	21 LBS
LUMINAIRE	0.87 S.F.	13.25" W x 26.25" L	35 LBS

Loading Schedules For Metal Poles

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

10.1.3

SHEET 1 OF 1

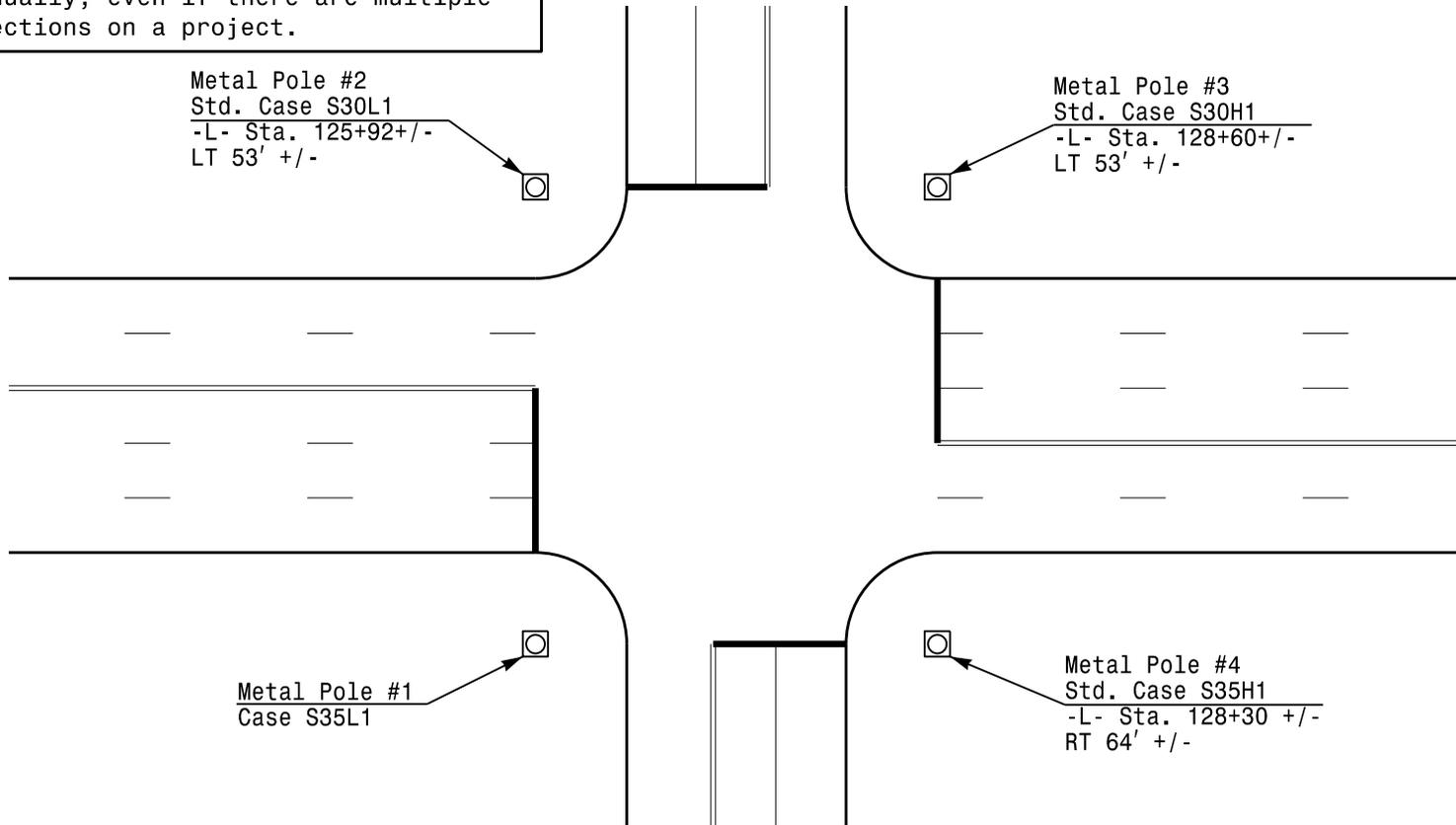
2021-07

Metal Pole Numbers and Locations

Number metal poles clockwise starting from the lower left quadrant of the signal plan. Signal pedestals do not need numbered.

Each intersection should be numbered individually, even if there are multiple intersections on a project.

Include the pole number and standard case number, if available, for all new or existing metal poles and metal poles with mastarms on signal plan.



Metal Pole #2
Std. Case S30L1
-L- Sta. 125+92 +/-
LT 53' +/-

Metal Pole #3
Std. Case S30H1
-L- Sta. 128+60 +/-
LT 53' +/-

Metal Pole #1
Case S35L1

Metal Pole #4
Std. Case S35H1
-L- Sta. 128+30 +/-
RT 64' +/-

Metal Pole Numbering and Labeling

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

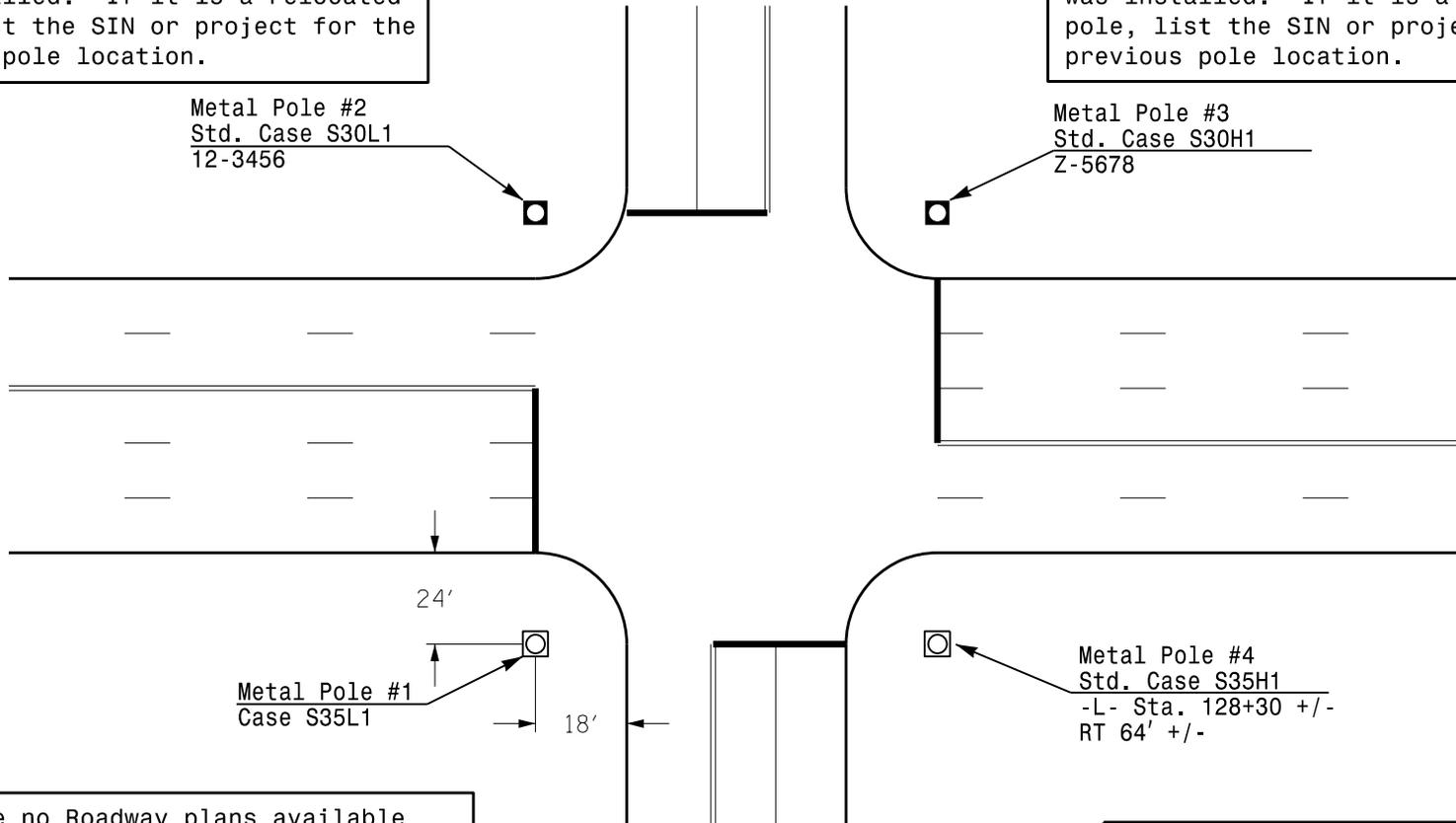
10.2

SHEET 1 OF 3

Metal Pole Numbers and Locations

When known, include the metal pole number, standard case number (if applicable), and project that pole was installed. If it is a relocated pole, list the SIN or project for the previous pole location.

When known, include the metal pole number, standard case number (if applicable), and project that pole was installed. If it is a relocated pole, list the SIN or project for the previous pole location.



If there are no Roadway plans available for stations and offsets, in a plan Inset (preferably) dimension pole locations from edge of pavement, back of curb, or some other definitive reference point.

When available on projects, use Roadway plan station and offsets for pole locations. Round locations to the nearest foot.

Metal Pole Numbering and Labeling

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

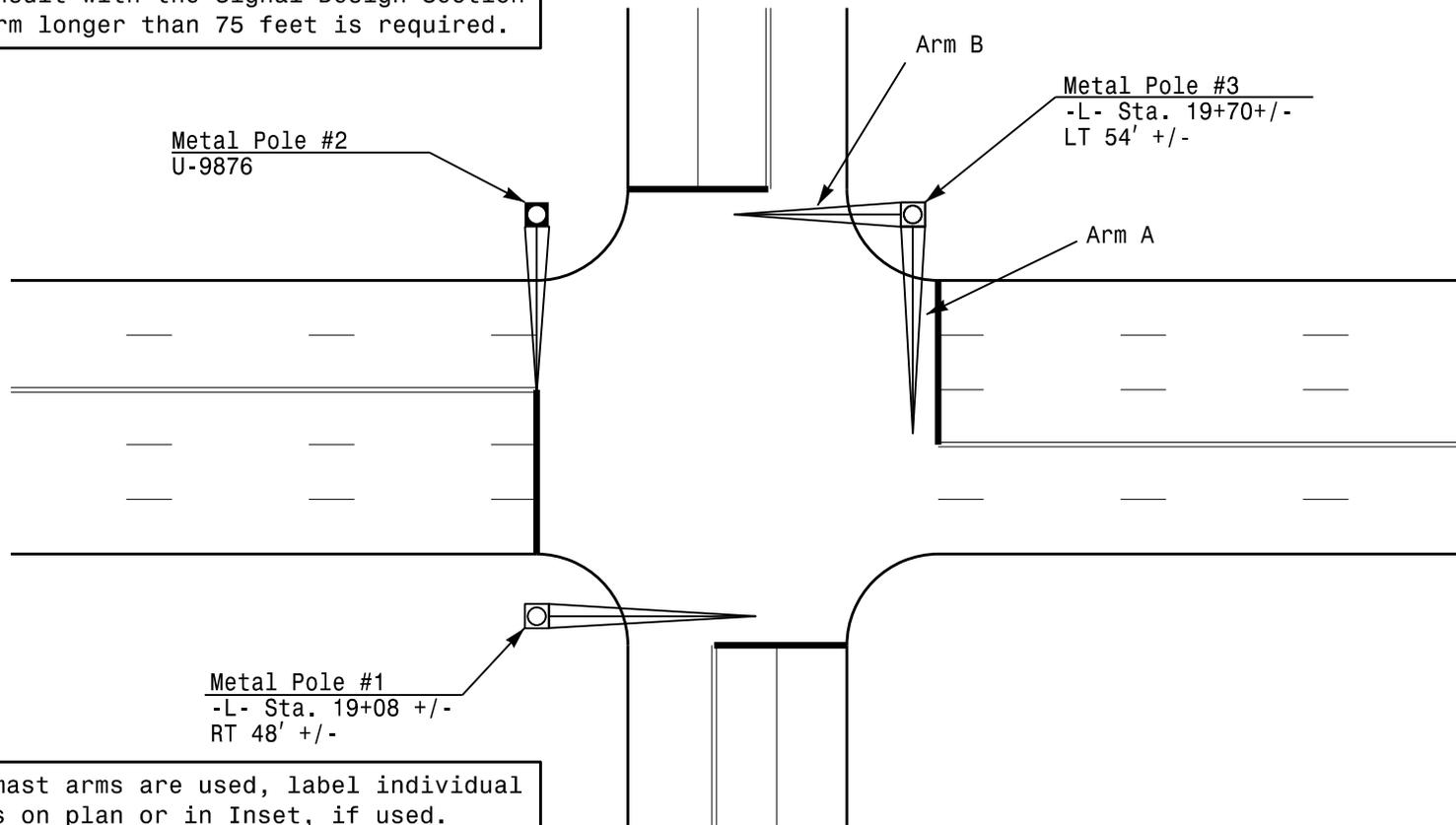
STD. NO.

10.2

SHEET 2 OF 3

Metal Pole with Mastarms

Mast arms should be a maximum of 75 feet in length. Consult with the Signal Design Section if a mast arm longer than 75 feet is required.



If Dual mast arms are used, label individual mast arms on plan or in Inset, if used. Arm A should be over the major street, and Arm B should be over the minor street. Do not show dimensions of mast arms on plans.

Metal Pole Numbering and Labeling

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

10.2

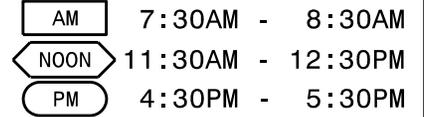
SHEET 3 OF 3

2024-10

Typical Count Diagram Complete Traffic Counts

If a "Noon" (between 10:30AM and 2:30PM) peak occurs, show in this fashion:

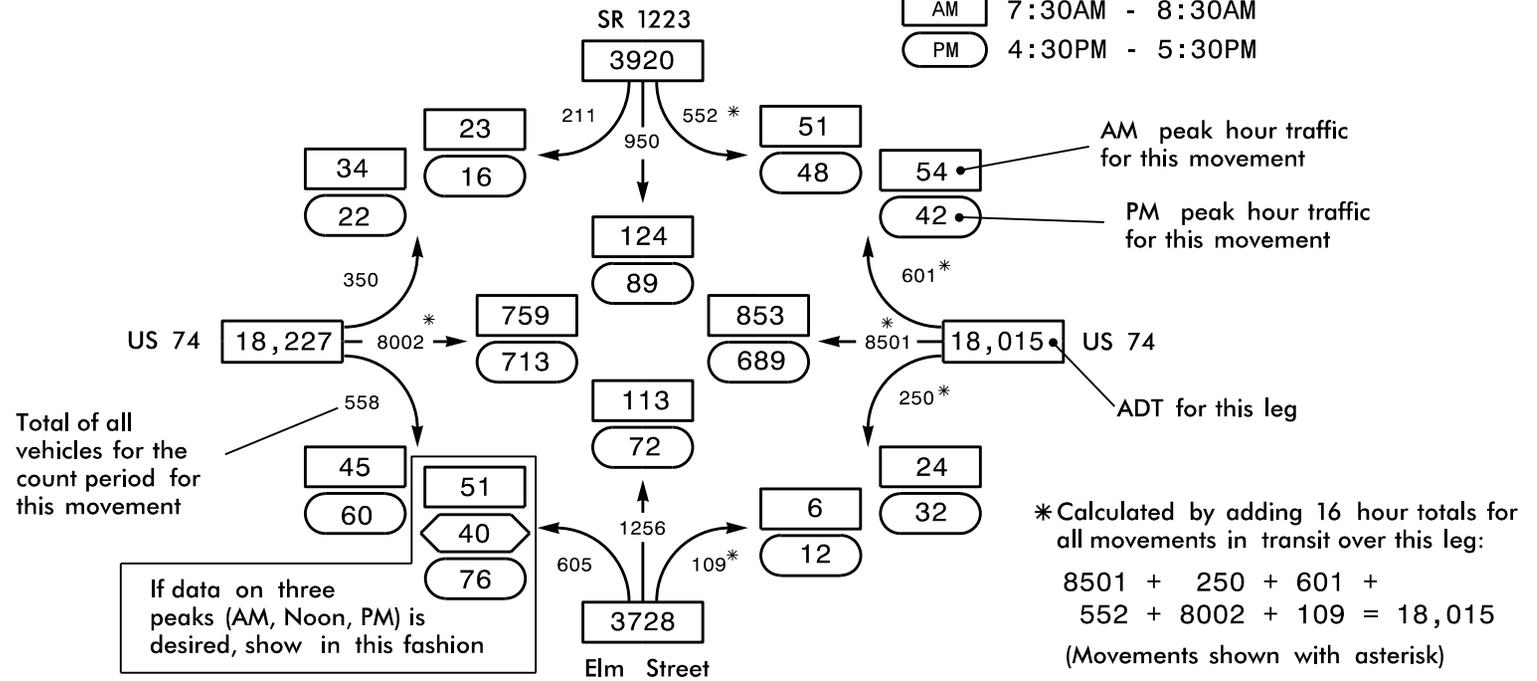
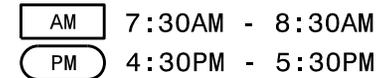
PEAKS



COUNTS

Type or duration of counting ——— 16 Hour Counts
Date of counting ————— July 13 & 14, 2020

PEAKS



Traffic Counts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

11.0

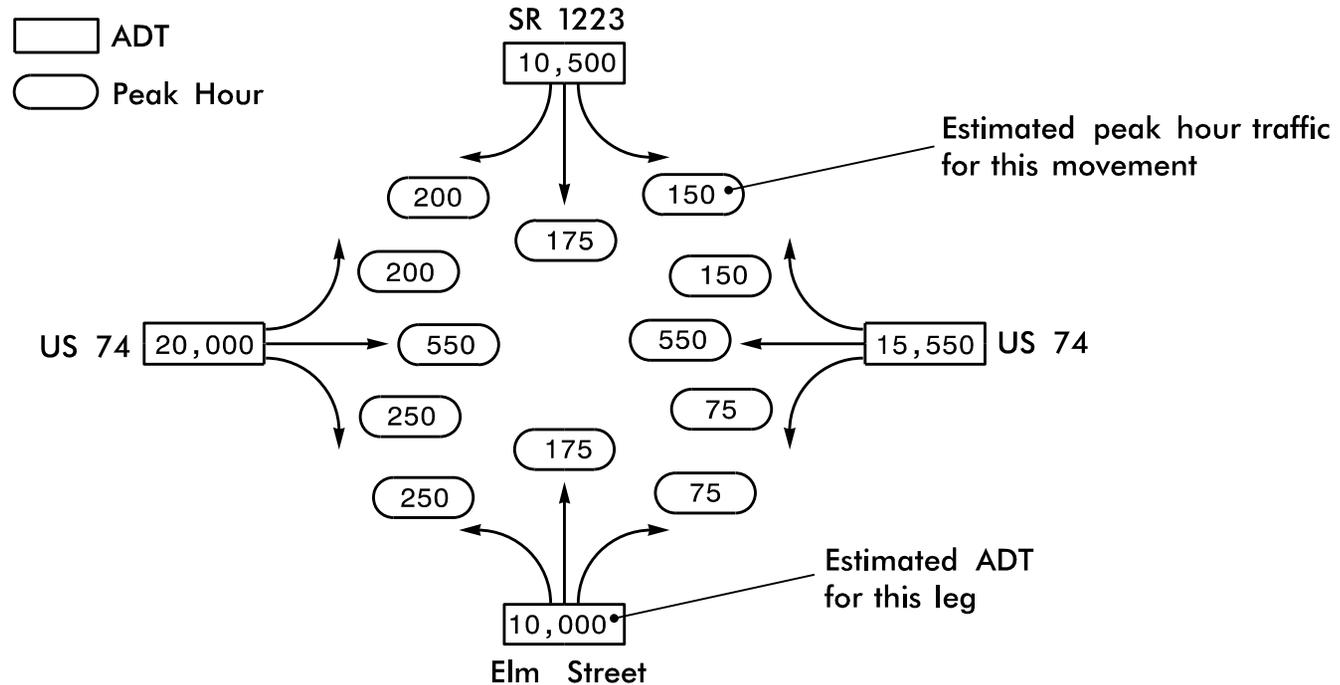
SHEET 1 OF 3

2021-07

Typical Count Diagram

Estimated Traffic Counts

Year 2050 Projected Volumes



Traffic Counts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

11.0

SHEET 2 OF 3

2021-07

Conversion from Estimated ADT to Estimated DDHV – Example

GIVEN Project Letting Date=2025
 Design Year=Letting Date+5 years=2030
 D=60%
 DHV=10%

ADT in hundreds

	55	
	92	
11	/	19
18		32
160		202
261		331
13	\	47
22		78
	85	
	142	

STEP 1 Interpolate to find 2025 ADT.
 For the north leg, $55 + (92-55)(9/20) = 72$

2025 ADT in hundreds

	72	
15	/	25
205		260
17	\	61
	110	

STEP 2 Convert to DDHV: $(ADT)(DHV)(D) = DDHV$.
 For the north leg, $(7200)(.10)(.60) = 432$

DDHV (veh/hr)

	432	
90	/	150
1230		1560
102	\	366
	660	

STEP 3 Determine through volumes by subtracting turning volume from total volume.
 For the north leg, $432 - 90 - 150 = 192$

STEP 4 Complete count diagram.

NOTES

- ADT = Average Daily Traffic
- DHV = Design Hour Volume
- DDHV = Directional Design Hour Volume
- D = Directional Split
- Use the highest directional split for each movement. Do not attempt to determine the direction of the peak flow for both the morning and afternoon peak hours.
- Because of the uncertainty of the data, a peak hour factor of 1.0 should be used when these peak hour volumes are used for analysis.

Traffic Counts

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2021-07

STD. NO.

11.0

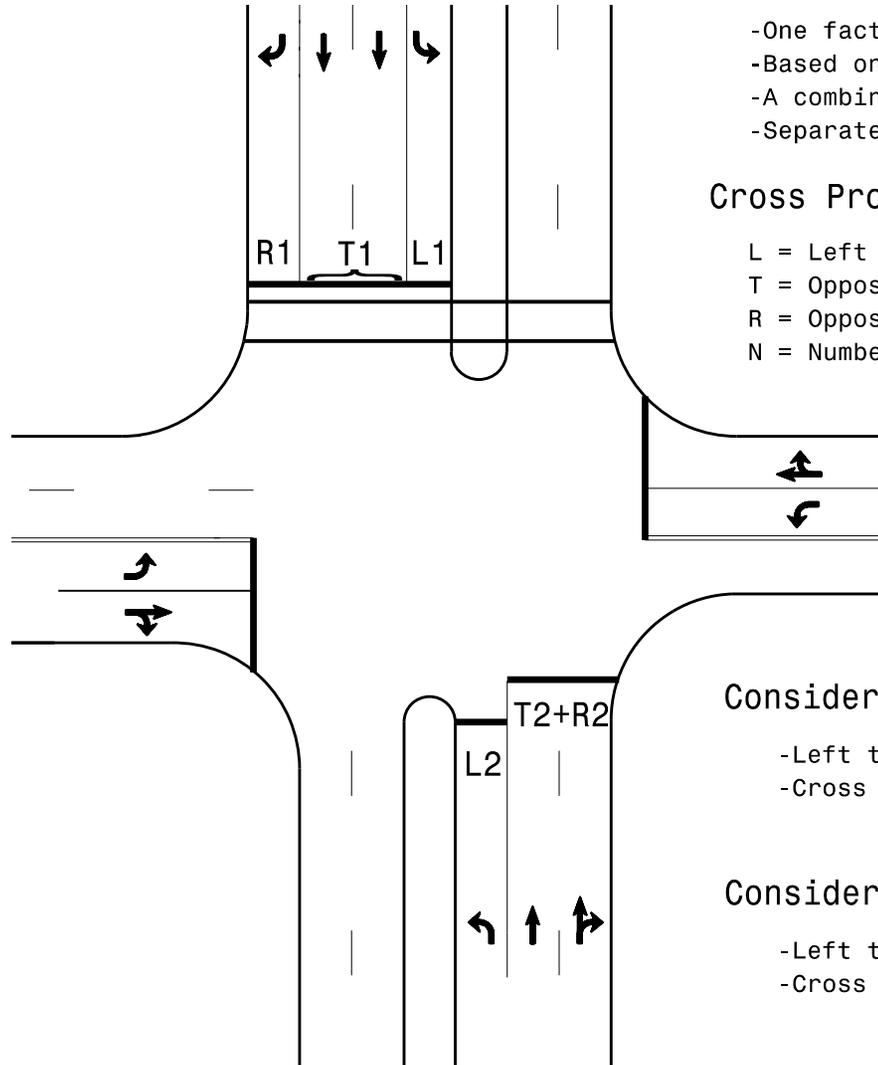
SHEET 3 OF 3

Cross Products

- One factor in determining left turn phasing treatment
- Based on Opposing Peak Hour Volumes per Lane
- A combined through and right movement is 1 lane
- Separate through and right lanes are 2 lanes

$$\text{Cross Product} = L * \left(\frac{T+R}{N}\right)$$

- L = Left Turn Volume (vph)
- T = Opposing Through Volume (vph)
- R = Opposing Right Turn Volume (vph)
- N = Number of Opposing Through and Right Lanes



$$\text{Northbound CP} = L2 * ((T1 + R1) / 3)$$

$$\text{Southbound CP} = L1 * ((T2 + R2) / 2)$$

Consider Protected/Permissive Left Turn Phasing:

- Left turn volume > 125 vph
- Cross Product > 50,000 vph

Consider Protected Only Left Turn Phasing:

- Left turn volume > 125 vph
- Cross Product > 100,000 vph

Cross Products

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

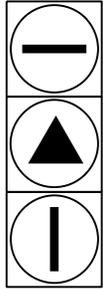
STD. NO.

11.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

2021-07

Bus Transit Signals



Bus Transit Signals shall be used at intersections where it is desired to give transit vehicles priority movement by the display of separate signals heads. The priority movement given to a transit vehicle may be an exclusive phase movement or a movement concurrent with another nonconflicting vehicle phase.

When used, the following guidelines should be used:

- At least two 3-section transit signal heads shall be displayed per approach where priority is desired.
- All transit signal displays shall be white in color:
 - Horizontal Bar = STOP
 - Solid Triangle = YELLOW CHANGE INTERVAL/PREPARE TO STOP
 - Vertical Bar = PROCEED
- A "Bus Signal" sign may be displayed adjacent to each transit signal head for clarity if the signal display is also visible to other traffic or may be confusing to drivers.

Bus Transit Signals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

12.0

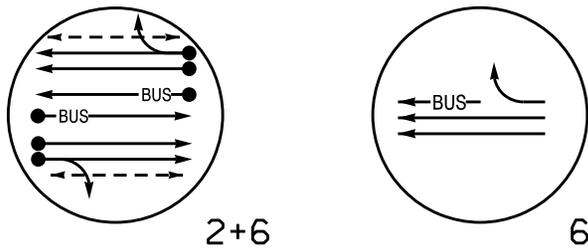
SHEET 1 OF 2

Standard Signal Face Clearance Chart

STANDARD SIGNAL FACE CLEARANCES FOR TRANSIT SIGNAL					
		TO			
		1		2	
MORT		—	—	▲	—
		—	—	—	—

The Standard Signal Face Clearance For Transit Signals Chart (shown at left) should be included on every signal plan that uses bus transit signals. The Transit Signal displays are included in the Standard Signal Face Clearance standard included in the 2024 NCDOT Standard Drawings, however, the chart contains an error in the clearance displays for transit signals. This chart should be included on single signal plans using bus transit signals until the NCDOT Roadway Standard Drawings is updated. For projects where a bus transit signal is part of a TIP project, a standard plate sheet has been developed and should be used until the NCDOT Roadway Standard Drawings is updated.

Phasing Diagram



- ← BUS ● DETECTED BUS RAPID TRANSIT MOVEMENT
- ← BUS — UNDETECTED BUS RAPID TRANSIT MOVEMENT

When exclusive transit lanes, movements, or phases are provided at an intersection, the movements need to be shown in the phasing diagram. For a bus (Bus Rapid Transit), the symbol is a solid line with an arrow and the word BUS in the solid line. This symbol should be used if the movement is exclusive to the bus or the bus has an exclusive lane. It is not needed if the bus shares the same lane(s) and movement(s) as regular traffic. The symbol should also be part of the Phasing Diagram Legend.

Bus Transit Signals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

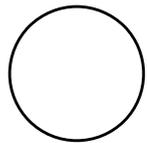
12.0

SHEET 2 OF 2

Emergency Vehicle Preemption (EVP) Phasing

EV PREEMPT PHASES

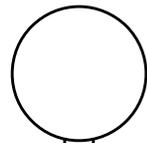
(Medium Priority)



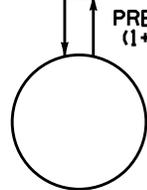
PRE 3
(2+6)

EV PREEMPT PHASES

(Medium Priority)



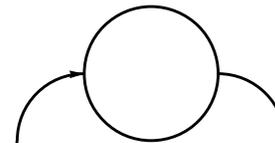
PRE 3
(1+6)



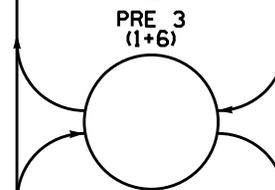
PRE 5*
(2+5)

EV PREEMPT PHASES

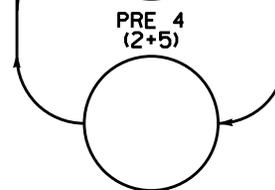
(Medium Priority)



PRE 3
(1+6)



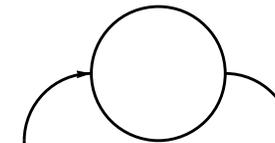
PRE 4
(2+5)



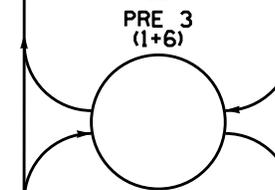
PRE 5
(4+8)

EV PREEMPT PHASES

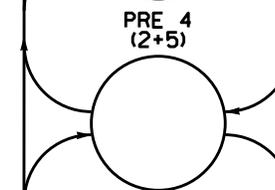
(Medium Priority)



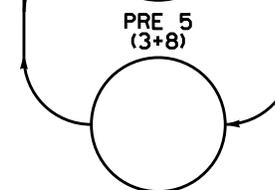
PRE 3
(1+6)



PRE 4
(2+5)



PRE 5
(3+8)



PRE 6
(4+7)

Phasing Design Considerations:

- 1) EV Preemption (EVP) is Medium Priority.
- 2) EVP Diagram is a separate diagram and should be independent of the main phasing diagram for normal (non-preempt) operation.
- 3) Pedestrian phases and movements are normally not active during EVP.
- 4) Right turn overlaps that operate with concurrent left turn phases during normal operation are omitted during EVP.
- 5) Alternate Phasing can impact the operation of signal heads during EVP. Alternate Preemption phasing programs may also be required.
- 6) If a preemption phase is intended for one direction only, it should incorporate backup protection and a GREEN ARROW for the left turn movement if appropriate.
- 7) Preemption phases should be labeled as "PRE #".
- 8) For pushbutton activatee preemption, use PRE 2.
- 9) For Optical and/or GPS type operation:
 - For 1 preempt, use PRE 3.
 - For 2 preempts, use PRE 3 and 5 (* For Cary Signal System, use PRE 3 and 4).
 - For 3 preempts, use PRE 3, 4, and 5.
 - For 4 preempts, use PRE 3, 4, 5, and 6.
- 10) Include corresponding regular phase numbers in the EVP phasing diagram.

Emergency Vehicle Preemption Phasing

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.0.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

2021-07

MAXTIME EV Preemption Chart (Part 1)

Select Type of Preemption from toggled list. This also determines the hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. EV Preemption (EVP) has medium priority and overrides most other preempts except railroad.

Select Exit Phase(s) to be served after exiting EVP. Normally a concurrent through phase to the EVP movement. If EV Phase was on the main street, and proper signal heads for clearance exist, use 2+6. If EV Phase was on the minor street, and proper signal heads for clearance exist, use 4+8. Separate multiple phases by a comma (2, 6 or 4, 8).

Delay between time Preempt call is received and Preempt sequence is activated. Usually 0 sec. for EV Preempts 3-6, but time could vary if pushbutton preempt (EVP 2) is used.

Number of seconds the preempt call extends after the call terminates. Typically used for Optical and GPS systems. Default time is 2.0 for EV Preempt.

Maximum time (in seconds) preemption dwell phase(s) will be serviced. After this time is reached, the preemption sequence will terminate and proceed to the exit phase(s). Usually 120 for EV Preemption.

Minimum green time assured for current phase before transition into preempt phase. Usually 1 second.

Minimum walk time assured for current phase before transition into preempt phase. Usually 1 second if need to clear ped phase. Use 0 if no peds.

Time provided to display Flashing "DON'T WALK" for pedestrians to clear intersection before beginning preemption sequence. Enter 255, which is default if no ped is used but will also use full (normal) time for phase if ped is used. Ped clearance is not shortened when entering EVP in most cases.

MAXTIME EV PREEMPT				
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 4	PRE 5	PRE 6
Type	EMERGENCY VEH	EMERGENCY VEH	EMERGENCY VEH	EMERGENCY VEH
Exit Phases	2, 6	2, 6	4, 8	4, 8
Delay	0	0	0	0
Call Extend Time	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0
Max Presence	120	120	120	120
Enter Min Green	1	1	1	1
Enter Walk	1	1	1	1
Enter Ped Clear	255*	255*	255*	255*
Enter Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Enter Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Track Green	0	0	0	0
Track Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Track Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Dwell Green	7	7	7	7
Exit Min Green	255*	255*	255*	255*
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Exit Type	EXIT PHASES	EXIT PHASES	EXIT PHASES	EXIT PHASES
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y	Y	Y	Y
Require All Red Entry	-	-	-	-

* Controller uses lesser of time shown and the normal time used for phase.

Notes:
Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

Emergency Vehicle Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.0.2

SHEET 1 OF 7

2024-10

MAXTIME EV Preemption Chart (Part 2)

Clearance times provided to clear current phase before transition into preemption. Enter the default time of 25.5, which allows controller to use the lesser yellow and red time based on the time shown and the actual time needed for the phase(s) being cleared. The Yellow Change and Red Clear times may be from separate phases.

Not used with EVP. Use 0, which is default setting.

Not used with EVP. Use 25.5, which is default setting.

Minimum time preemption dwell phase will run. Optical and GPS systems typically use the same time as the phase in normal operation, but then preempt phase can be extended as needed; usually 7 seconds. Minimum time for pushbutton locations needs to be based on trial runs (typically by the Division).

Designates Min Green time of Exit Phase. Use 255 for default time.

Yellow and Red times of Dwell interval to exit preempt. Select 25.5 to use yellow and red time of dwell phase that is same time as used during normal operation, or time(s) programmed in Timing Chart is Dwell Phase is a special phase used only during preemption.

Designates how controller will exit preempt/what phase is served when preempt is over. Normally use Exit Phases for EV Preemption.

Select "Y" (Yes) if any pedestrian phases exist at the signal, which will time the "Ped Clear Before Pre" (FDW) and "Yellow Clear Before Pre" simultaneously, thereby reducing overall clearance time needed before preemption. Yes indicates to enable feature by checking the box. A "-" (dash), which is default setting, indicates this feature is disabled.

Select "Y" (YES) to clear to all red before going into preemption to prevent yellow trap. Select "-" (dash) if Flashing YELLOW ARROWS are present and/or there is no potential for a yellow trap when clearing into preempt phase. Yes indicates to enable feature by checking the box. A "-" (dash), which is default setting, indicates this feature is disabled. Yellow traps are to be avoided when entering EVP when possible.

MAXTIME EV PREEMPT				
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 4	PRE 5	PRE 6
Type	EMERGENCY VEH	EMERGENCY VEH	EMERGENCY VEH	EMERGENCY VEH
Exit Phases	2, 6	2, 6	4, 8	4, 8
Delay	0	0	0	0
Call Extend Time	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0
Max Presence	120	120	120	120
Enter Min Green	1	1	1	1
Enter Walk	1	1	1	1
Enter Ped Clear	255*	255*	255*	255*
Enter Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Enter Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Track Green	0	0	0	0
Track Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Track Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Dwell Green	7	7	7	7
Exit Min Green	255*	255*	255*	255*
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Exit Type	EXIT PHASES	EXIT PHASES	EXIT PHASES	EXIT PHASES
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y	Y	Y	Y
Require All Red Entry	-	-	-	-

* Controller uses lesser of time shown and the normal time used for phase.

Notes:
Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

Emergency Vehicle Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.0.2

SHEET 2 OF 7

2024-10

2070 OASIS EV Preemption Chart

Designate this interval as the preemption Dwell interval.
 Select 255 to indicate Dwell (HOLD) phase(s), which serves Dwell phase(s) and Dwell Min. Time below.

Clearance times for Dwell phase(s); times entered here override normal phase time. Only enter a time if the dwell phase is not a normal phase used and is not in the Timing Chart. 0.0 is default time and the controller will use corresponding phase times set for normal operation.

Amount of time signal is in exit phase before preemption ends. Select 0 for controller to return to next corresponding phase in normal operation after preemption. Select 1 to designate an exit phase and return controller to that phase for normal operation. If another time is entered, that is amount of time exit phase will be served before serving next phase in normal operation.

Not used when Interval 5 is exit interval. Enter 0.0.

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases.

Select Priority of Preemption (MED). This determines hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are simultaneous preempt calls. In the event of conflicting calls of the same priority, the lowest number preempt is served.

See Sheet 1, Delay.

See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green.

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear.

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear.

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green.

See Sheet 1, Max Presence (in Minutes).

See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry.

See Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow.

See Sheet 2, Dwell Extend Time.

OASIS 2070 EV PREEMPT				
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 4	PRE 5	PRE 6
Interval 1 – Dwell Green	255	255	255	255
Interval 1 – Dwell Yellow	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*
Interval 1 – Dwell Red	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*
Interval 5 – Exit Green	1	1	1	1
Interval 5 – Yellow	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Interval 5 – Red	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Exit Phase(s)	2+6	2+6	4+8	4+8
Priority	MED	MED	MED	MED
Delay Time	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Min Green Before Pre	1	1	1	1
Ped Clear Before Pre	0*	0*	0*	0*
Yellow Clear Before Pre	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*
Red Clear Before Pre	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*	0.0*
Dwell Min Time	7	7	7	7
Dwell Max Time (min)	2	2	2	2
Enable Backup Protection	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y	Y	Y	Y
Preempt Extend**	2	2	2	2

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation
 ** Program Timing on Optical Detection Unit

Notes:
 Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

Emergency Vehicle Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.0.2

SHEET 3 OF 7

2024-05

ASC/3 170 Cabinet EV Preemption Chart

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases. _____

Similar to Priority, this establishes a hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Normally OFF for EV Preempt. In the event of conflicting calls, the lowest number preempt has priority and is served first.

See Sheet 1, Delay. _____

See Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow. _____

See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry. _____
 Select Y to clear to all red to avoid yellow trap or N if there is no potential yellow trap. This setting overrides programming for normal operation.

See Sheet 1, Enter Walk. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. _____

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green. _____

See Sheet 2, Preempt Extend. _____

See Sheet 2, Max Presence (in seconds). _____

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. _____

ASC/3 EV PREEMPT				
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 4	PRE 5	PRE 6
Exit Phase(s)	2+6	2+6	4+8	4+8
Preempt Override	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Delay Time	0	0	0	0
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y	Y	Y	Y
Terminate Phases	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N
Entrance Walk	1	1	1	1
Entrance Ped Clear	255*	255*	255*	255*
Entrance Min Green	1	1	1	1
Entrance Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Entrance Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Minimum Dwell Time	7	7	7	7
Preempt Input Extension Time **	2	2	2	2
Preempt Max Time	120	120	120	120
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*	25.5*

* Allows normal phase times to be used.
 ** Program Timing on Optical Detection Unit

Notes:
 Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

ASC/3 NEMA Cabinet EV Preemption Chart

See Sheet 1, Delay. _____

Similar to Priority, this establishes a hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Normally OFF for EV Preempt. In the event of conflicting calls, the lowest number preempt has priority and is served first. _____

See Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow. _____

See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry. Select Y to clear to all red to avoid yellow trap or N if there is no potential yellow trap. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Walk. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. _____

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green. _____

See Sheet 2, Max Presence (in seconds). _____

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases. _____

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. _____

See Sheet 2, Dwell Extend Time. _____

EMERGENCY VEHICLE PREEMPTION		
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 4
DELAY BEFORE PREEMPT	0	0
PMT OVERRIDE	OFF	OFF
PED CLEAR THROUGH YELLOW	Y	Y
TERMINATE PHASES	Y/N	Y/N
ENTRANCE WALK	1	1
ENTRANCE PED CLEAR	255 *	255 *
ENTRANCE MIN GREEN	1	1
ENTRANCE YELLOW CLEAR	25.5*	25.5*
ENTRANCE RED CLEAR	25.5*	25.5*
MIN DWELL GREEN	7	7
MAX CALL TIME	120	120
EXIT PHASE(S)	2+6	2+6
EXIT YELLOW CLEAR	25.5*	25.5*
EXIT RED CLEAR	25.5*	25.5*
PREMPT EXTEND **	2	2

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation.
 ** Program Timing on Optical Detection Unit

Notes:
 Additional columns may be added to the chart as needed.
 Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

Emergency Vehicle Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.0.2

SHEET 5 OF 7

2024-05

SE-PAC EV Preemption Chart

See Sheet 2, Enter Min Green and Enter Walk
Usually set to 1 second.

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases.

See Sheet 1, Delay.

See Sheet 1, Max Presence (in seconds).

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. This time can overlap with the Enter Yellow Change interval, but this overlap is not an adjustable setting and must also be set for normal operation. When entering EVP, use the highest required FDW time of all ped phases used in normal operation. A default time cannot be entered for SE-PAC.

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. 0 (Zero) is the default time and the controller will use corresponding phase times set for normal operation. Times are entered as whole numbers which will be divided by 10 (40 = 4.0 seconds).

These entries are only used for Railroad Preemption, or if there is a multi-phase EV Preemption sequence. Usually 0 (Zero). Times are entered as whole numbers which will be divided by 10 (40 = 4.0 seconds).

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green.

Return Pedestrian Clean - Time to Clear a pedestrian (FDW) during a preempt Dwell phase. Usually 0 since pedestrian phases are normally not active during preemption phases.

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. 0 (Zero) is default time and the controller will use the corresponding phase times set for normal operation. Times are entered as whole numbers which will be divided by 10 (40 = 4.0 seconds).

SE-PAC Preemption				
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 4	PRE 5	PRE 6
MIN GRN / WLK	1	1	1	1
EXIT PHASES	2+6	2+6	4+8	4+8
DELAY	0	0	0	0
MXCALL	120	120	120	120
SEL PED CLR	22	22	22	22
SEL YEL / 10	0*	0*	0*	0*
SEL RED / 10	0*	0*	0*	0*
TRACK GREEN	0	0	0	0
TRK PED CLR	0	0	0	0
TRK YEL / 10	0	0	0	0
TRK RED / 10	0	0	0	0
DWELL GRN	7	7	7	7
RET PED CLR	0	0	0	0
RET YEL / 10	0*	0*	0*	0*
RET RED / 10	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation.

Notes:
Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

Emergency Vehicle Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.0.2

SHEET 6 OF 7

2024-05

Trafficware Apogee EV Preemption Chart

See Sheet 1, Delay. _____

Minimum duration that a preempt call is active. _____
 Begins at the end of any delay period and prevents an exit until minimum time (in seconds) has elapsed.

See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Walk. _____

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. _____

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green. _____

Time to Clear a pedestrian (FDW) during a preempt Dwell phase. Usually 0 since pedestrian phases are normally not active during preemption phases.

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. _____
 Times entered here will override normal phase time if used. Only enter a time if the dwell phase is not a phase used in normal operation and is not in the Timing Chart. 25.5 is a default time and the controller will use the corresponding phase times set for normal operation.

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. _____
 25.5 is default time and the controller will use corresponding phase times set for normal operation.

See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry. _____
 Select ON to clear to all red to avoid yellow trap or OFF if there is no potential yellow trap.

Ensures that Delay, Min Dwell, and Min Duration are served even if preempt call is removed before actual preempt sequence begins. Usually ON.

Similar to Priority, this establishes a hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Normally OFF for EV Preempt. Conflicting calls of the same priority are served in the order the call was received.

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases. _____

EMERGENCY VEHICLE PREEMPTION		
FUNCTION	PRE 3	PRE 5
DELAY BEFORE PREEMPT	0	0
MINIMUM DURATION	16	16
MIN GREEN BEFORE PREEMPT	1	1
MIN WALK BEFORE PREEMPT	1	1
PED CLEAR BEFORE PREEMPT	255*	255*
MINIMUM DWELL	7	7
EXIT PED CLEAR	0	0
EXIT YELLOW CHANGE	25.5*	25.5*
EXIT RED CLEAR	25.5*	25.5*
ENTER YELLOW CHANGE	25.5*	25.5*
ENTER RED CLEAR	25.5*	25.5*
ALL-RED B4 PREEMPT	OFF	OFF
LOCK INPUT	ON	ON
OVERRIDE HIGHER # PREEMPT	OFF	OFF
EXIT PREEMPT TO	02+6	02+6

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation.

Notes:
 Additional columns may be added to the chart as needed.
 Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

MAXTIME Pushbutton EV Preemption Chart

See 13.0.2, Sheet 1, Type. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 1, Exit Phases. _____

Delay between time Preempt call is received and Preempt sequence is activated. Usually 0 sec., but time may vary based on individual sight needs and should be coordinated with the local agency and Division based on trial runs.

For Pushbutton Preemption, usually the pushbutton activates the Dwell phase for the predetermined minimum green time and there is not a way to extend the Preemption time without placing a new preempt call. Usually 0.

See 13.0.2, Sheet 1, Max Presence (in seconds). Since pushbutton activates Dwell Green and there is no extension, this is disabled. Use 0.

See 13.0.2, Sheet 1, Enter Min Green and Enter Walk. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 2, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. _____

Not used with EVP. Use 0, which is default setting. _____

Not used with EVP. Use 25.5, which is default setting. _____

Minimum green time preemption Dwell phase. Minimum time for pushbutton preemption may vary based on individual sight needs and should be coordinated with the local agency and Division based on trial runs (typically by the Division), but should be a minimum of 7 seconds.

See 13.0.2, Sheet 2, Exit Min Green. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 2, Exit Type. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow. _____

See 13.0.2, Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry. _____

MAXTIME EV PREEMPT	
FUNCTION	PRE 2
Type	EMERGENCY VEH
Exit Phases	2, 6
Delay	0 #
Call Extend Time	0.0
Max Presence	0
Enter Min Green	1
Enter Walk	1
Enter Ped Clear	255*
Enter Yellow Change	25.5*
Enter Red Clear	25.5*
Track Green	0
Track Yellow Change	25.5*
Track Red Clear	25.5*
Dwell Green	7 #
Exit Min Green	255*
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*
Exit Type	EXIT PHASES
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y
Require All Red Entry	-

* Controller uses lesser of time shown and the normal time used for phase.
See Note 71.

Note: Unused phase columns should be removed from the chart.

Pushbutton Activated Emergency Vehicle Preemption

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

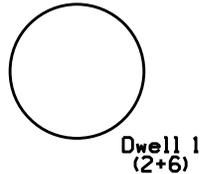
13.0.3

SHEET 1 OF 2

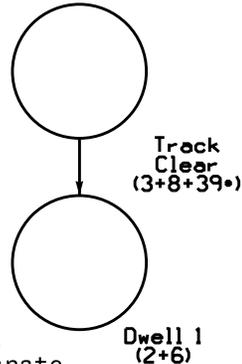
2024-10

Railroad Preemption Phasing

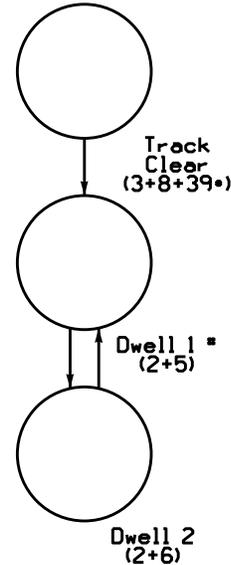
RAIL PREEMPT PHASES
(High Priority)



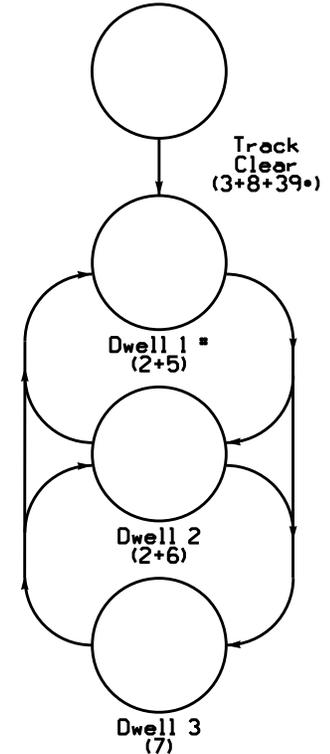
RAIL PREEMPT PHASES
(High Priority)



RAIL PREEMPT PHASES
(High Priority)



RAIL PREEMPT PHASES
(High Priority)



* See Note 7
See Note 11

Phasing Design Considerations:

- 1) Railroad Preemption is High Priority.
- 2) Railroad Preemption Diagram is a separate diagram and should be independent of the main phasing diagram for normal (non-preempt) operation.
- 3) Pedestrian phases and movements are normally not active during Railroad Preemption.
- 4) Right turn overlap that may operate with concurrent left turn phase during normal operation is omitted during the Track Clearance Phase.
- 5) Alternate Phasing can impact the operation of signal heads during Railroad Preemption. Alternate Preemption phasing programs may also be required.
- 6) Railroad Preemption should be PRE 1.
- 7) For MAXTIME, Phase 39 should be included as a part of Track Clearance when Advance Preemption is used.
- 8) A GREEN ARROW should be used for the left turn movement with the Track Clearance phase.
- 9) Backup protection is not required when entering Railroad Preemption. Yellow traps are allowed, however, signs (W25-1 or W25-2) and/or Flashing YELLOW ARROW displays should be used to minimize potential yellow traps as much as practical.
- 10) Include corresponding regular phase numbers in the Railroad Preemption phasing diagram.
- 11) When the railroad tracks cross the main street (phase 2 or 6) and there are multiple Dwell phases, show Dwell 1 as Phase 4+8.
- 12) Depending on the individual characteristics of the intersection and railroad crossing, it may be necessary to have multiple track clearance phases or only a dwell phase during Railroad Preemption.

Railroad Preemption Phasing

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.1

SHEET 1 OF 1

2024-05

MAXTIME Railroad Preemption Chart (Part 1)

Select Type of Preemption from toggled list. This also determines the hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Railroad Preemption is the highest priority and overrides other preempts.

Select Exit Phase(s) to be served after exiting Railroad Preemption. Normally it is a phase whose movement was blocked by the train. It may be a left turn phase or a through phase. Separate multiple phases by a comma (4,8).

Delay between time Preempt call is received and Preempt sequence is activated. Usually 0 sec. for Railroad Preempt.

Number of seconds the preempt call extends after the call terminates. Use 1.0 for Railroad Preemption.

Maximum time (in seconds) preemption dwell phase(s) will be serviced. After this time is reached, the preemption sequence will terminate and proceed to the exit phase(s). Setting to 0 disables the feature. Usually 0 for Railroad Preemption.

Minimum green time assured for current phase before transition into preempt. Usually 1 second; using 0 sec. may cause minimum green to truncate immediately.

Minimum walk time assured for current phase before transition into preempt. Use 1 second if ped phase is present; use 0 sec. if no ped phase is present.

Time provided to display Flashing "DON'T WALK" for pedestrians to clear intersection before beginning Railroad Preemption sequence. Uses lesser of this value and ped clear times programmed for normal operation. Due to variability of having to clear actuated pedestrian phases, this time is normally set to the rounded up integer of the Enter Yellow Change time, as these times will overlap and clear simultaneously (4.1-4.9 => 5). There should be less than 1 second difference Enter Ped Clear and Enter Yellow Change. Use 0 sec. if no ped phase is present.

Clearance times provided to clear current phase before transition into preemption. Uses lesser of these values and yellow and red times used in normal operation. To ensure consistent signal operation with railroad warning devices, enter the highest Yellow Change and Red Clear times among normal phases that are not Track Clearance phases. The Yellow Change and Red Clear times may be from separate phases.

MAXTIME PREEMPTION CHART	
FUNCTION	PRE 1
Type	RAIL ROAD
Exit Phases	4, 8
Delay	0
Call Extend Time	1.0
Max Presence	0
Enter Min Green	1
Enter Walk	1
Enter Ped Clear	5
Enter Yellow Change	4.9*
Enter Red Clear	2.4*
Track Green	16
Track Yellow Change	4.2
Track Red Clear	1.3
Dwell Green	0
Exit Min Green	255*
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*
Exit Type	EXIT PHASES
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y
Require All Red Entry	-

* Controller uses lesser of time shown and the normal time used for phase.

This signal was designed for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

SHEET 1 OF 7

2024-10

MAXTIME Railroad Preemption Chart (Part 2)

Based on Greenshield's Formula, see STD. 13.1.5, Sheet 1.
Typical minimum is 10 seconds. Time may be adjusted based on if Simultaneous or Advanced Preemption is used.

Times for Track Clearance Phase based on STD. 5.2.2.
Should be the same times as if the phase(s) were used in normal operation.

Minimum Green Time for Dwell (hold) phase. Typically, same as time used for phase when in normal operation.

Designates Min Green time of Exit Phase. Use 255 for default time.

Yellow and Red times of Dwell interval to exit preempt.
Select 25.5 to use yellow and red time of dwell phase that is same time as used during normal operation, or time(s) programmed in Timing Chart is Dwell Phase is a special phase used only during preemption.

Designates how controller will exit preempt/what it serves when preempt is over. Normally use Exit Phases for RR Preemption.

Select "Y" (Yes) if any pedestrian phases exist at the signal, which will time the "Ped Clear Before Pre" (FDW) and "Yellow Clear Before Pre" simultaneously, thereby reducing overall clearance time needed before preemption. Select "-" (dash) if not used, which is also default setting.

Select "Y" (YES) to clear to all red before going into preemption to prevent yellow trap. Select "-" (dash) if Flashing YELLOW ARROWS are present and/or there is no potential for a yellow trap when clearing into preempt phase. Dash (-) is default setting.

Show if signal preemption timing is designed for Advance or Simultaneous Preemption to work with railroad equipment.

MAXTIME PREEMPTION CHART	
FUNCTION	PRE 1
Type	RAIL ROAD
Exit Phases	4, 8
Delay	0
Call Extend Time	1.0
Max Presence	0
Enter Min Green	1
Enter Walk	1
Enter Ped Clear	5
Enter Yellow Change	4.9*
Enter Red Clear	2.4*
Track Green	16
Track Yellow Change	4.2
Track Red Clear	1.3
Dwell Green	0
Exit Min Green	255*
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*
Exit Type	EXIT PHASES
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y
Require All Red Entry	-

* Controller uses lesser of time shown and the normal time used for phase.

This signal was designed for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

SHEET 2 OF 7

2024-10

2070 OASIS Railroad Preemption Chart

- See Sheet 2, Track Green. _____
- See Sheet 2, Track Yellow Change and Track Red Clear. _____
- Designates this as Dwell Interval. Enter 255. _____
- See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. Use 0.0 which designates default times are used. _____
- Amount of time signal is in Exit phase before preemption ends. Select 0 for controller to return to next phase in normal operation after preemption. Any other number is Min Green of designated Exit Phase, amount of time designated Exit phase will be served before serving next phase in normal operation. _____
- Time not used when Interval 5 is Exit interval. Enter 0.0. _____
- See Sheet 1, Exit Phases. _____
- Select Priority of Preemption (OFF, LOW, MED, HIGH). This determines the hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Railroad Preemption is a High (HIGH) priority. _____
- See Sheet 1, Delay. _____
- See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green. _____
- See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. _____
- See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Clear and Enter Red Clear. _____
- Minimum Green Time for Dwell (hold) phase. Typically, same as time used for phase when in normal operation. _____
- See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry. _____
- See Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow. _____
- List any overlaps that operate during normal operation that should not operate during Railroad Preemption. This also includes overlap P, which is a background timer during all normal phases and must clear prior to entering preemption. _____
- See Sheet 2, Advance or Simultaneous Preemption. _____

OASIS 2070 RR PREEMPT	
FUNCTION	PRE 1
Interval 1 – Track Clearance Green	16
Interval 1 – Track Clearance Yellow	4.2
Interval 1 – Track Clearance Red	1.3
Interval 2 – Dwell Green	255
Interval 2 – Dwell Yellow	0.0*
Interval 2 – Dwell Red	0.0*
Interval 5 – Exit Green	1
Interval 5 – Yellow	0.0
Interval 5 – Red	0.0
Exit Phase(s)	4, 8
Priority	HIGH
Delay Time	0.0
Min Green Before Pre	1
Ped Clear Before Pre	5
Yellow Clear Before Pre	4.9
Red Clear Before Pre	2.4
Dwell Min Time	10
Enable Backup Protection	N
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y
Omit Overlaps	P

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation

This signal was designed for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

SHEET 3 OF 7

2024-05

ASC/3 170 Cabinet Railroad Preemption Chart

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases.

Similar to Priority, this establishes a hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Usually ON for Railroad Preemption to indicate the highest priority. The lowest number preempt has priority in ASC/3.

See Sheet 1, Delay.

See Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow.

See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry.

Select Y (Yes). Allows preemptor to reservice the track clearance phase if the preempt call goes way and returns before the preemption sequence terminates.

See Sheet 1, Enter Walk.

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear.

See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green.

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. Uses lesser of this value and normal yellow and red times used in normal operation.

See Sheet 2, Track Green.

See Sheet 2, Track Yellow Change and Track Red Clear. Uses lesser of this value and normal yellow and red times used in normal operation. Default times are 25.5.

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green.

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. Default times are 25.5.

See Sheet 2, Advance or Simultaneous Preemption.

ASC/3 RR PREEMPT	
FUNCTION	PRE 1
Exit Phase(s)	4, 8
Preempt Override	ON
Delay Time	0
Ped Clear Through Yellow	Y
Terminate Phases	N
Track Clear Reservice	Y
Entrance Walk	1
Entrance Ped Clear	5
Entrance Min Green	1
Entrance Yellow Change	4.9
Entrance Red Clear	2.4
Track Clear Min Green	16
Track Clear Yellow Change	4.2
Track Clear Red Clear	1.3
Min Dwell Time	10
Exit Yellow Change	25.5*
Exit Red Clear	25.5*

* Allows normal phase times to be used.

This signal was designed for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

SHEET 4 OF 7

2024-05

ASC/3 NEMA Cabinet Railroad Preemption Chart

See Sheet 1, Delay.

Similar to Priority, this establishes a hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Usually ON for Railroad Preemption to indicate the highest priority. The lowest number preempt has priority in ASC/3.

See Sheet 2, Ped Clear Through Yellow.

See Sheet 2, Require All Red Entry.

Select Y (Yes). Allows preemptor to reservice the track clearance phase if the preempt call goes way and returns before the preemption sequence terminates.

See Sheet 1, Enter Walk.

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear.

See Sheet 1, Enter Min Green.

See Sheet 1, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. Uses lesser of this value and normal yellow and red times used in normal operation.

See Sheet 2, Track Green.

See Sheet 2, Track Yellow Change and Track Red Clear. Uses lesser of this value and normal yellow and red times used in normal operation. Default times are 25.5.

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green.

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases.

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. Default times are 25.5.

See Sheet 2, Advance or Simultaneous Preemption.

RAILROAD PREEMPTION	
FUNCTION	SECONDS
DELAY BEFORE PREEMPT	0
PMT OVERRIDE	ON
PED CLEAR THROUGH YELLOW	Y
TERMINATE PHASES	N
TRACK CLEAR RESERVICE	Y
ENTRANCE WALK	1
ENTRANCE PED CLEAR	5
ENTRANCE MIN GREEN	1
ENTRANCE YELLOW CLEAR	4.9
ENTRANCE RED CLEAR	2.4
TRACK CLEAR MIN GREEN	16
TRACK CLEAR YELLOW CLEAR	4.2
TRACK CLEAR RED CLEAR	1.3
MIN DWELL GREEN	10
EXIT PHASE(S)	4, 8
EXIT YELLOW CLEAR	25.5*
EXIT RED CLEAR	25.5*

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation.

This signal was designed for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

SHEET 5 OF 7

2024-05

SE-PAC Railroad Preemption Chart

See Sheet 2, Enter Min Green and Enter Walk
Usually set to 1 second.

See Sheet 1, Exit Phases.

See Sheet 1, Delay.

See Sheet 1, Max Presence. Set to 0 for Railroad
Preemption.

See Sheet 1, Enter Ped Clear. Ped Clear Time can
overlap with the Yellow Clear Before Pre, but this
overlap is not an adjustable setting in SE-PAC and
must also be set for normal operation.

See Sheet 2, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear.
Zero (0) is the default time and the controller will
use corresponding phase times set for normal operation.
Times are entered as whole numbers which will be
divided by 10 (40 = 4.0 seconds).

See Sheet 2, Track Green.

Usually 0. Pedestrian WALK phases are not active during
Track Clear Green.

See Sheet 2, Track Yellow Change and Track Red Clear.
Zero (0) is Default time. Times are entered as whole
numbers which will be divided by 10 (40 = 4.0 seconds).

See Sheet 2, Dwell Green.

Return Pedestrian Clear - Time to Clear a pedestrian (FDW)
during a preempt Dwell phase. Usually 0 since pedestrian
phases are normally not active during preemption phases.

See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear.
Zero (0) is default time and the controller will use the
corresponding phase times set for normal operation. Times are
entered as whole numbers which will be divided by 10
(40 = 4.0 seconds).

See Sheet 2, Advance or Simultaneous Preemption.

SE-PAC Preemption	
FUNCTION	PRE 1
MIN GRN / WLK	1
EXIT PHASES	4, 8
DELAY	0
MXCALL	0
SEL PED CLR	5
SEL YEL / 10	49
SEL RED / 10	24
TRACK GREEN	16
TRK PED CLR	0
TRK YEL / 10	42
TRK RED / 10	13
DWELL GRN	10
RET PED CLR	0
RET YEL / 10	0*
RET RED / 10	0*

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation.

This signal was designed
for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

SHEET 6 OF 7

2024-05

Trafficware Apogee Railroad Preemption Chart

- See Sheet 1, Delay. _____
- Minimum duration that a preempt call is active. _____
Begins at the end of any delay period and prevents an exit until minimum time (in seconds) has elapsed.
- See Sheet 2, Enter Min Green. _____
- See Sheet 1, Enter Walk. _____
- See Sheet 2, Enter Ped Clear. _____
- See Sheet 2, Track Green. _____
- See Sheet 2, Dwell Green. _____
- Time to Clear a pedestrian (FDW) during a preempt Dwell phase. Usually 0 since pedestrian phases are normally not active during preemption phases.
- See Sheet 2, Exit Yellow Change and Exit Red Clear. _____
25.5 is the default to use normal phase timing.
- See Sheet 2, Enter Yellow Change and Enter Red Clear. _____
25.5 is the default to use normal phase timing.
- See Sheet 2, Track Yellow Change and Track Red Clear. _____
25.5 is the default to use normal phase timing.
- See Sheet 1, Enable Backup Protection _____
Select OFF for Railroad Preemption, even if there is potential for a yellow trap when entering preemption.
- Ensures that Delay, Min Dwell, and Min Duration are served even if preempt call is removed before actual preempt sequence begins. Usually ON.
- Similar to Priority, this establishes a hierarchy of preempt phases served in the event there are conflicting preempt calls simultaneously. Normally ON for Railroad Preemption.
- See Sheet 1, Exit Phases. _____
- See Sheet 2, Advance or Simultaneous Preemption. _____

RAILROAD PREEMPTION	
FUNCTION	PRE 1
DELAY BEFORE PREEMPT	0
MINIMUM DURATION	20
MIN GREEN BEFORE PREEMPT	1
MIN WALK BEFORE PREEMPT	1
PED CLEAR BEFORE PREEMPT	5
TRACK GREEN	16
MINIMUM DWELL	10
EXIT PED CLEAR	0
EXIT YELLOW CHANGE	25.5*
EXIT RED CLEAR	25.5*
ENTER YELLOW CHANGE	4.9
ENTER RED CLEAR	2.4
TRACK YELLOW CHANGE	4.2
TRACK RED CLEAR	1.3
ALL-RED B4 PREEMPT	OFF
LOCK INPUT	ON
OVERRIDE HIGHER # PREEMPT	ON
EXIT PREEMPT TO	4, 8

* Time defaults to time used for phase during normal operation.

This signal was designed for advanced preemption.

Railroad Preemption Timing Chart

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.2

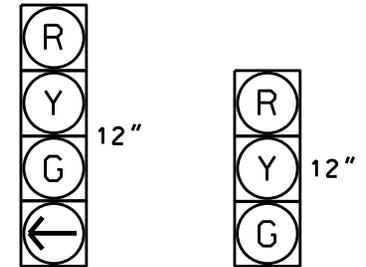
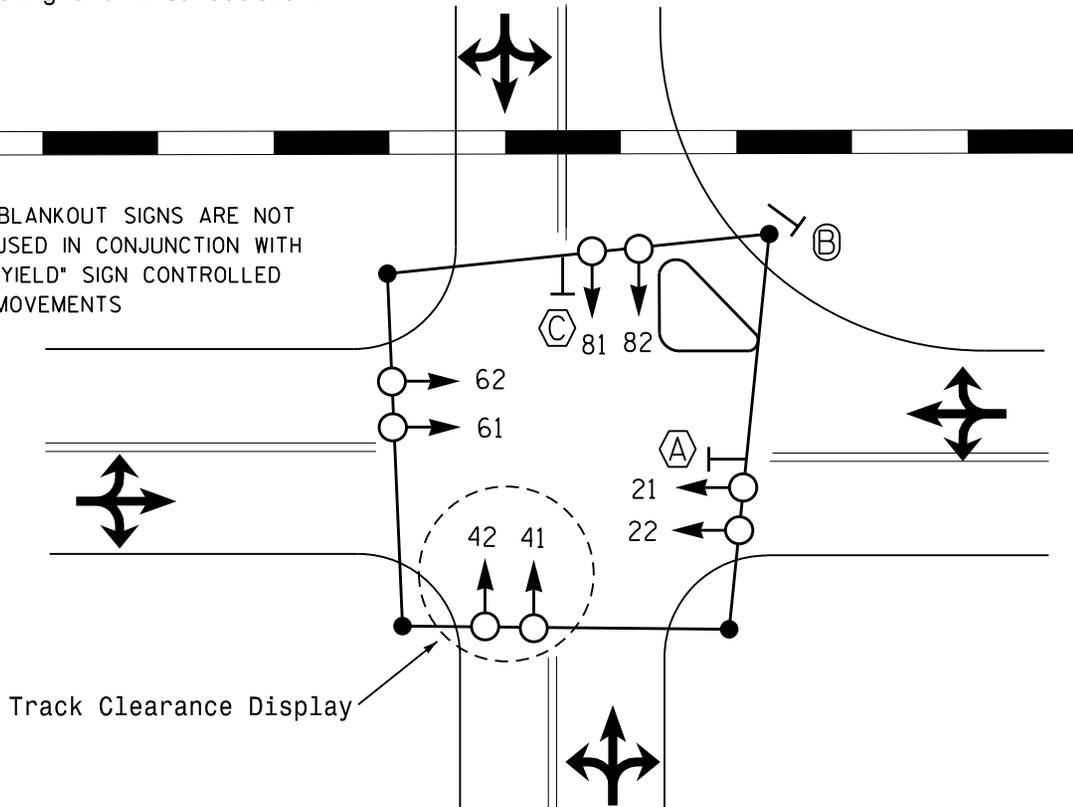
SHEET 7 OF 7

2024-05

Permissive Only Displays without Flashing YELLOW ARROWS

NOTE: Pre-signal may be used to control vehicles prior to railroad crossing to address queuing between crossing and intersection.

NOTE: BLANKOUT SIGNS ARE NOT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH "YIELD" SIGN CONTROLLED MOVEMENTS



41

21, 22
42
61, 62
81, 82

- (A) "NO LEFT TURN" L.E.D. Blankout Sign
- (B) "YIELD" Sign (R1-2)
- (C) "ONCOMING TRAFFIC MAY HAVE EXTENDED GREEN" Sign (W25-2)

TABLE OF OPERATION

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE		
	R	Y	F
	R	G	FLASH
21, 22	R	G	R
41	G	R	R
42	G	R	R
61, 62	R	G	R
81, 82	R	R	R
SIGN A	ON	ON	*

* SEE NOTE X

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

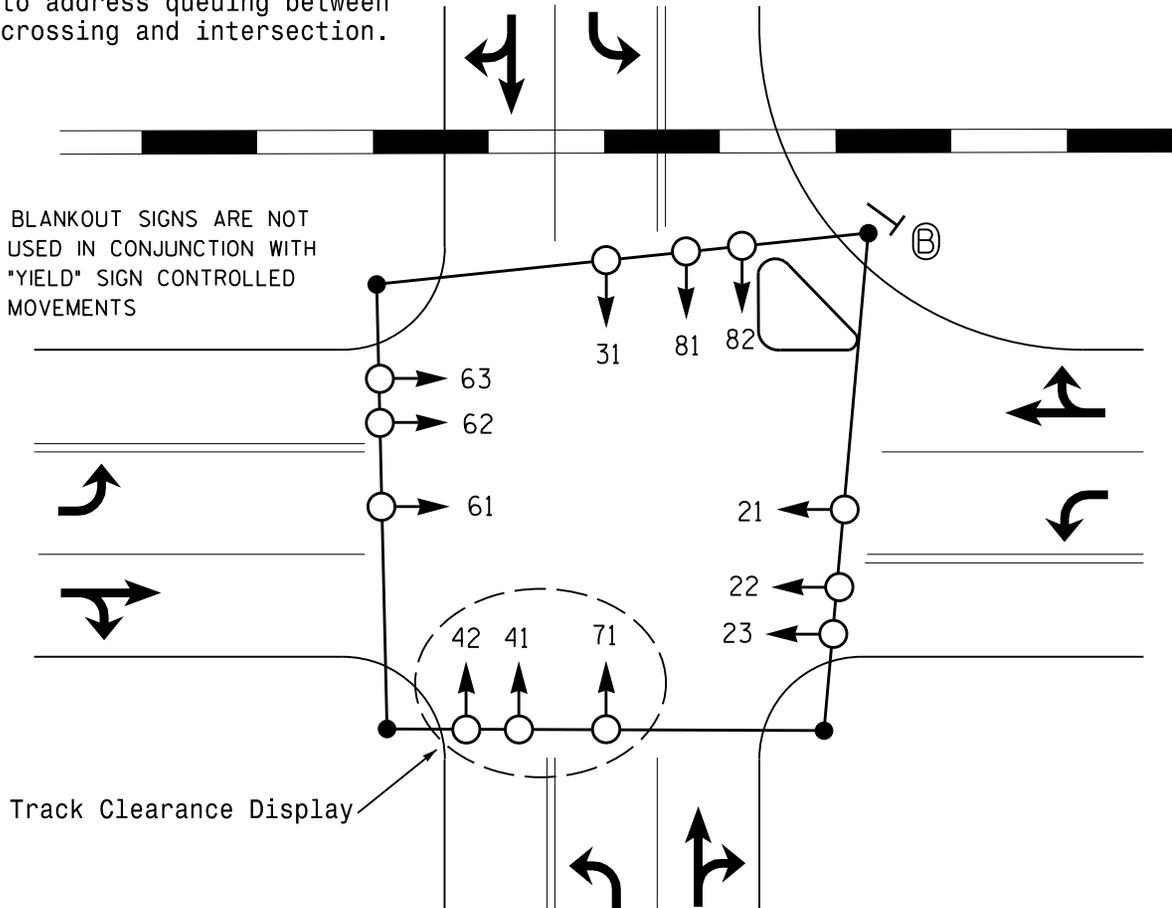
SHEET 1 OF 10

2024-05

Permissive Only Displays with Flashing YELLOW ARROWS

NOTE: Pre-signal may be used to control vehicles prior to railroad crossing to address queuing between crossing and intersection.

NOTE: BLANKOUT SIGNS ARE NOT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH "YIELD" SIGN CONTROLLED MOVEMENTS



31
71

12"



21
61

12"



22, 23
41, 42
62, 63
81, 82

12"

ⓑ "YIELD" Sign (R1-2)

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				
	R C L R	R C L Y	R C L G	R C L R	F L A S H
21	-R	-Y	-R	-R	-
22, 23	R	G	R	R	-
31	-Y	-R	-	-R	-
41, 42	G	R	R	R	-
61	-R	-R	-R	-R	-
62, 63	R	G	R	R	-
71	-	-R	-R	-R	-
81, 82	R	R	R	R	-

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

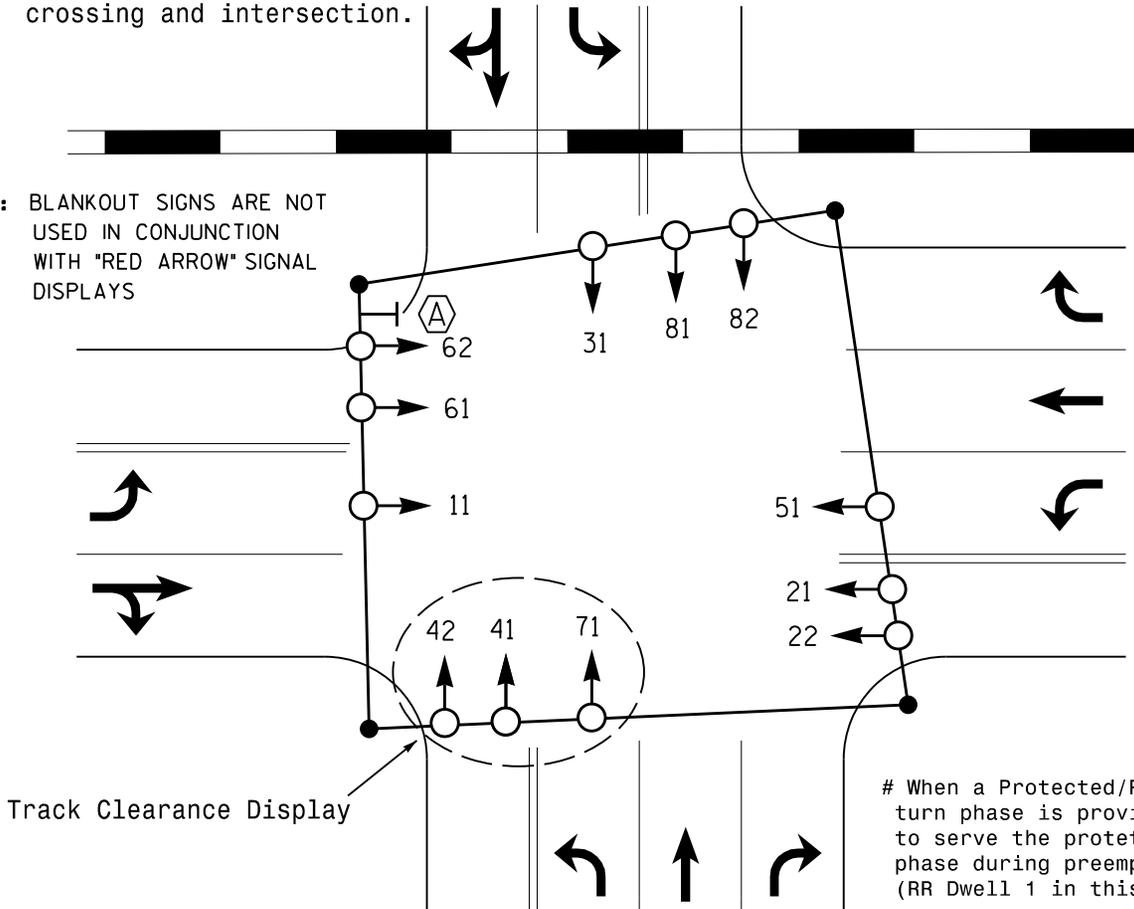
SHEET 2 OF 10

2024-05

Protected /Permissive Displays

NOTE: Pre-signal may be used to control vehicles prior to railroad crossing to address queuing between crossing and intersection.

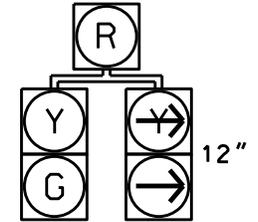
NOTE: BLANKOUT SIGNS ARE NOT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH "RED ARROW" SIGNAL DISPLAYS



11
31
51
71



21, 22
41, 42
61
81



62
82

"NO RIGHT TURN"
L.E.D. Blankout Sign

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE				
	R	R	R	R	F
	C	D	D	D	L
11	-R	-R	-R	-R	-R
21, 22	R	G	G	R	R
31	F	-R	-R	-	-R
41, 42	G	R	R	R	R
51	-R	-	F	-R	-R
61	R	R	G	R	R
62	R	R	G	R	R
71	-	-R	-R	-R	-R
81	R	R	R	R	R
82	R	R	R	R	R
SIGN A	ON	ON	ON	ON	*

* SEE NOTE X

When a Protected/Permissive left turn phase is provided, programming to serve the protected left turn phase during preempt may be optional (RR Dwell 1 in this example)

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

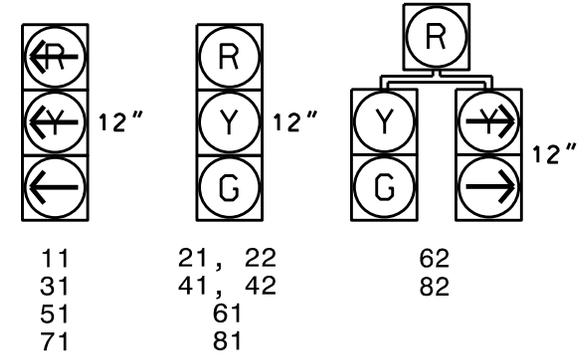
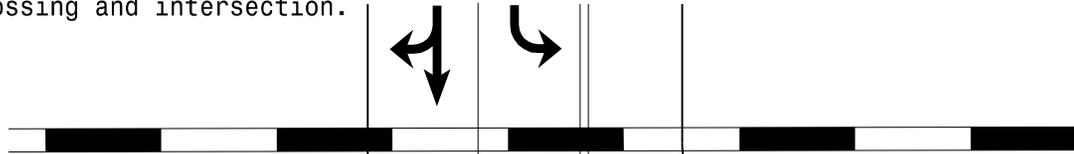
13.1.3

SHEET 3 OF 10

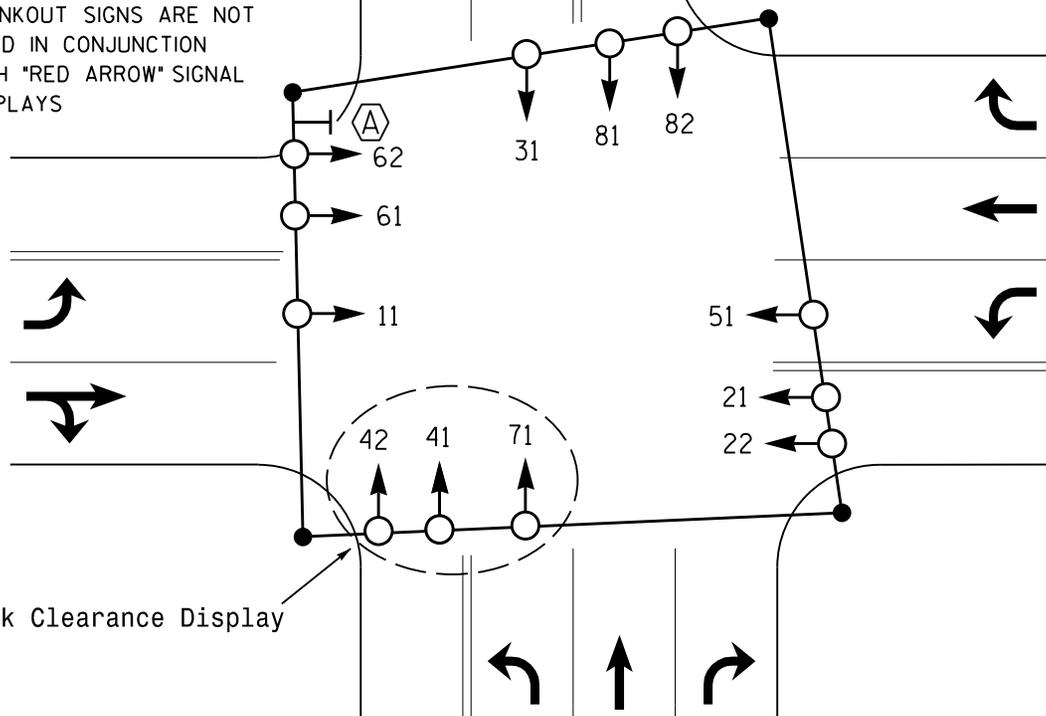
2024-05

Protected Only Displays

NOTE: Pre-signal may be used to control vehicles prior to railroad crossing to address queuing between crossing and intersection.



NOTE: BLANKOUT SIGNS ARE NOT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH "RED ARROW" SIGNAL DISPLAYS



"NO RIGHT TURN" L.E.D. Blankout Sign

SIGNAL FACE		PHASE				
		R	R	Y	Y	Y
		CL	1	2	3	
11		—	—	—	—	—
21, 22	R	R	G	R	R	R
31				—	—	—
41, 42	G	R	R	R	R	R
51						
61	R	G	G	R	R	R
62	R	G	G	R	R	R
71	—					
81	R	R	R	R	R	R
82	R					R
SIGN A	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	*

* SEE NOTE X

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 4 OF 10

2024-05

Pre-Signals

A pre-signal may be used to help stop vehicular traffic prior to a railroad crossing in an effort to reduce the potential for vehicles queuing from a downstream intersection onto the railroad crossing. The pre-signal can also work in conjunction with active railroad warning devices, such as flashers and gates, to keep a crossing clear in advance of an approaching train movement. A pre-signal is considered a primary signal; a minimum of two signal signal heads are required. The operation of a pre-signal is often coordinated with the downstream signal at the intersection. When a pre-signal is used, the green displays of the downstream signal should be visibility limited.

A pre-signal should be used if there are railroad warning flashers but no gates present at the crossing, but is also recommended for other situations. It should be considered when the clear storage distance (throat between crossing and downstream intersection) is less than the length of the design vehicle. If a pre-signal is used, a protected only or lagging protected/permissive left turn should be used at the downstream intersection for the approach that crosses the tracks to reduce potential for vehicles to be queued on the tracks during a red signal.

The pre-signal may be in advance of (upstream) or after (downstream) the crossing, but the stop line should be a minimum of 40 feet from the pre-signal. When a pre-signal is located prior to the railroad crossing, the stop line for the pre-signal may also serve as the stop line for the railroad crossing, meaning a separate stop line at the railroad flashers is not required. When a pre-signal is mounted on the far side of the railroad tracks, the stop line for the railroad warning flashers may serve as a stop line for the pre-signal. Pre-signal heads should not block or obstruct railroad warning flashers mounted on a cantilever (if used), nor should they be obstructed by the warning flashers. Pre-signals may be mounted on the railroad cantilever with railroad approval.

When an approaching train is detected, a pre-signal shall transition from a green to a red display prior to or immediately upon activation of the railroad warning flashers. The steady red indication of the pre-signal shall be displayed during the Track Clearance interval to prohibit additional vehicles from crossing the railroad tracks, and shall remain red at least until the passage of the train.

A pre-signal should be designed to operate in conjunction with the downstream intersection signal as part of normal operation. The signal heads shall consist of 12-inch CIRCULAR RED, CIRCULAR YELLOW, and straight-through GREEN ARROW sections. The use of a GREEN ARROW may deter a confused or disoriented driver from inadvertently turning onto the railroad tracks. The pre-signal should operate in a way to help keep vehicles from queuing in the area between the intersection and the tracks (throat). This may include the use of a short overlap between the clearance of the pre-signal and the clearance of the intersection signal. The use of lagging protected/permissive or protected only left turn phasing should also be considered to help minimize the potential for queuing.

Reference: "Preemption of Traffic Signals Near Railroad Crossings - An ITE Recommended Practice," 2020

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 5 OF 10

2021-07

Pre-Signal (With Minimal or No Storage Between Railroad Crossing and Downstream Intersection)

Design Considerations for Use:

Simultaneous Preemption

When there is minimal to no distance to queue a single (design) vehicle between the railroad tracks or exit gates (if present) and the intersection.

Traffic shall stop for intersection signal and railroad crossing at stop line prior to railroad track. A "NO TURN ON RED" (R10-11) sign shall be used.

A minimal Track Clearance Green (10 seconds) is generally used.

Signal clearance times for intersection should be calculated to clear a vehicle from the stop line before the railroad track.

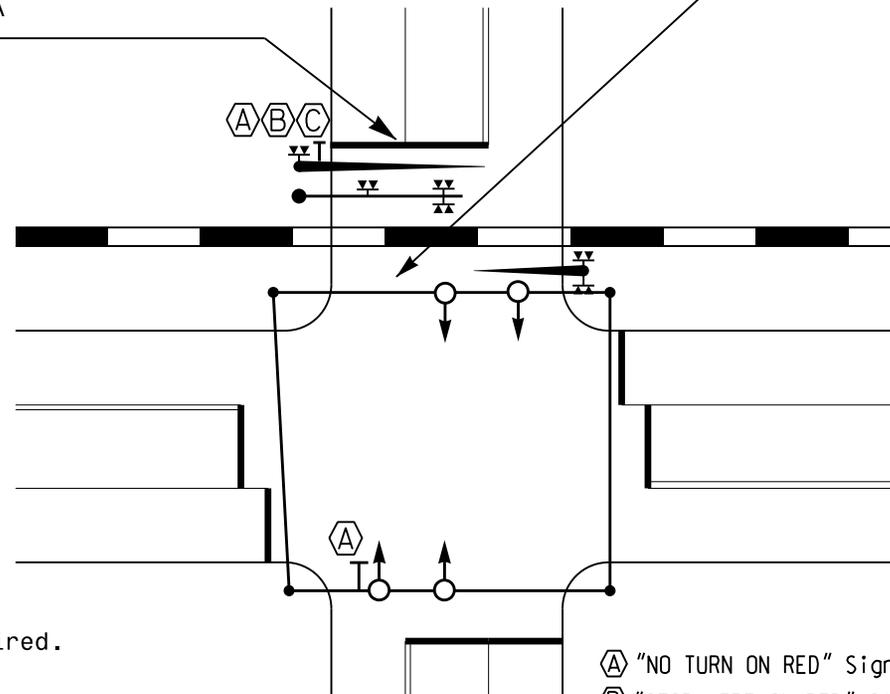
Pre-signal should be used if no railroad gates are present at the crossing.

If a pre-signal is used, it should be designed to operate with the normal operation of the intersection signal. The displays should be identical to the downstream signal heads, except when entering preempt and during the Track Clearance Phase. A timed overlap between the pre-signal and downstream signal may not be required.

For the left turns crossing the railroad tracks, consider either a protected only left turn or a lagging protected left (if P/P) to prevent turning traffic queuing on the tracks.

Engineering Judgement and Diagnostic Team of Individual Crossing should determine if Pre-Signal is needed.

If signal heads are on far span, a supplemental (near) side head may be required for distance.



- Ⓐ "NO TURN ON RED" Sign (R10-11)
- Ⓑ "STOP HERE ON RED" Sign (R10-6)
- Ⓒ "DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS" Sign (R8-8)

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 6 OF 10

2021-07

Pre-Signal (With Limited Storage Between Railroad Crossing and Downstream Intersection)

Design Considerations for Use:

Advance Preemption

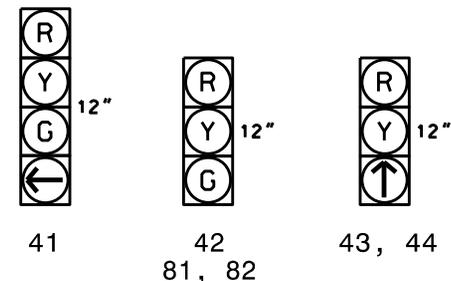
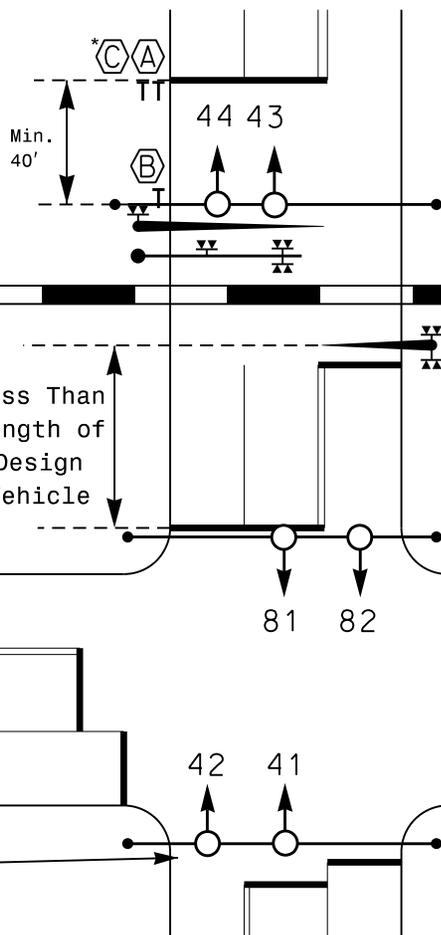
When active crossing warning devices consist only of flashers (no gates present) OR queue distance for vehicles between the tracks (or exit gate) and the intersection is less than the length required for the queue of a design vehicle.

Pre-signal heads may be placed downstream of (across) the railroad tracks.

During normal operation, pre-signal should be designed so it begins green simultaneously with the downstream intersection signal, but a short overlap should be used between the (red and yellow) clearance of the pre-signal and the downstream signal to minimize queue of vehicles in storage throat.

For the left turns off the approach crossing the tracks, consider either a protected only left turn or a lagging protected left (if P/P).

When pre-signal is used, consider visibly limiting the Flashing YELLOW ARROW (if used) and green (proceed) signal indications for the approach from the railroad at the intersection.



- Ⓐ "STOP HERE ON RED" Sign (R10-6)
 - Ⓑ "DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS" Sign (R8-8)
 - * Ⓒ "STOP HERE WHEN FLASHING" Sign (R8-10)
- * Optional

SIGNAL FACE		PHASE				
		4 + 8	T O L	R R C L R	R R D W L	F L A S H
41		G	G	G	R	R
42		G	G	G	R	R
43, 44		↑	R	R	R	R
81, 82		G	G	R	R	R

Engineering Judgement and Diagnostic Team of Individual Crossing should determine if Pre-Signal is needed.

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 7 OF 10

2024-05

Pre-Signal (With Storage Between Railroad Crossing and Downstream Intersection)

Design Considerations for Use:

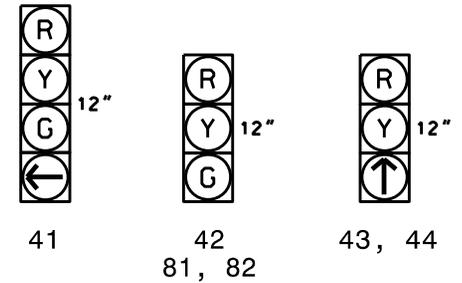
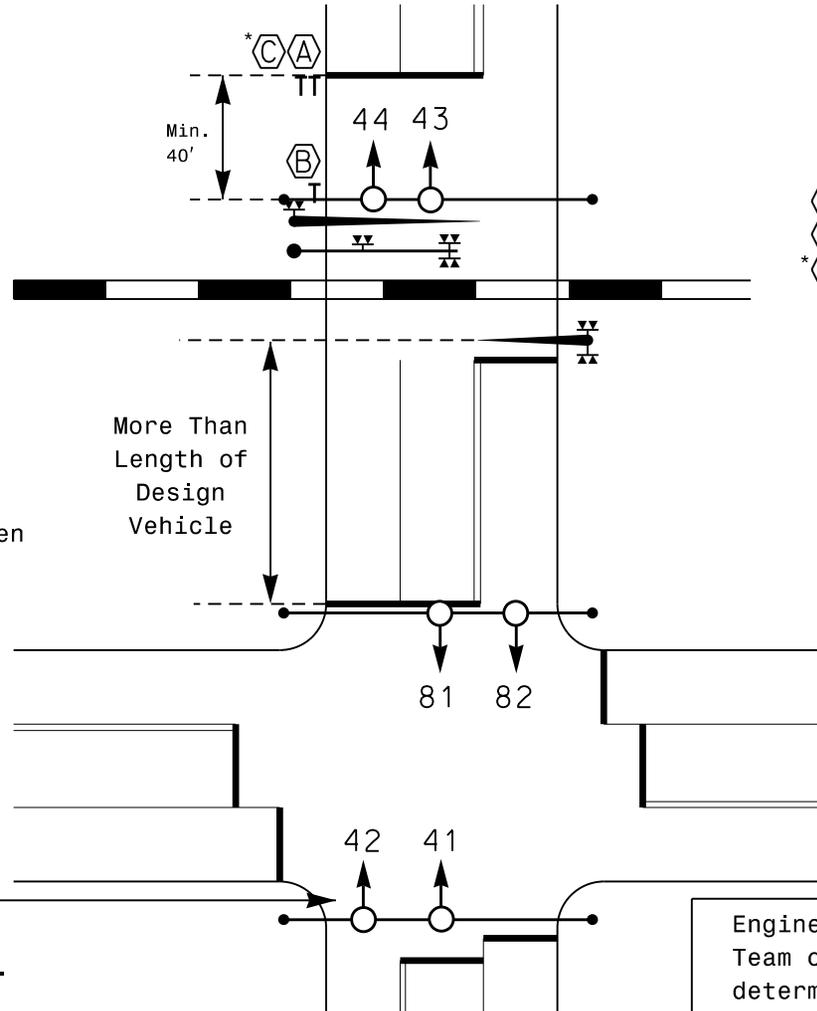
Advance Preemption where there may be a longer offset between the beginning of traffic signal preemption and activation of railroad warning devices.

When active crossing warning devices consist only of flashers (no gates present) OR queue distance for vehicles between the tracks (or exit gate) and the intersection is the more than the length required for the queue of a design vehicle.

Pre-signal should display red and green indications simultaneously with the downstream intersection signal during normal operation.

Pre-signal heads may be placed downstream of (across) the railroad tracks.

When pre-signal is used, consider visibly limiting the Flashing YELLOW ARROW (if used) and green (proceed) signal indications for the approach from the railroad at the intersection.



- (A) "STOP HERE ON RED" Sign (R10-6)
- (B) "DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS" Sign (R8-8)
- (C) "STOP HERE WHEN FLASHING" Sign (R8-10)
- * Optional

SIGNAL FACE		PHASE			
		4 + 8	R C L R	R D W L	F L A S H
41	G	G	R	R	
42	G	G	R	R	
43, 44	↑	R	R	R	
81, 82	G	R	R	R	

Engineering Judgement and Diagnostic Team of Individual Crossing should determine if Pre-Signal is needed.

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 8 OF 10

2024-05

Queue Cutter

A queue cutter is a form of a pre-signal which only controls vehicular traffic approaching railroad crossing in one direction and operates independently of other adjacent traffic signals. It should be considered where there is potential for traffic from a downstream signal (or other traffic situation) to regularly queue to the railroad crossing, but the downstream signal is too far from the railroad crossing to effectively rely on track clearance via railroad preemption due to a long clearance distance and warning time required. It is always interconnected to the railroad crossing to provide preemption for an approaching train and may also be connected to a downstream signal. It may be located in advance of or downstream of the adjacent grade crossing to provide the most effective display. A queue cutter should follow the guidelines for pre-signals relative to the placement of signal heads and stop lines.

Since the queue cutter is near a railroad crossing where no turns are desired, the display shall consist of a (12-nch) CIRCULAR RED, CIRCULAR YELLOW, and straight-through GREEN ARROW section to deter accidental turns onto the railroad tracks by a disoriented motorist.

The queue cutter uses vehicle detection loops (6'X15') to determine that the storage area (throat) between the railroad crossing and the downstream intersection is full. When the loops detect a steady queue of traffic, they direct the queue cutter signal heads to change to red to stop additional vehicles from crossing the tracks and adding to the back of queue. The queue loops should be placed so that the queue can be detected and the queue cutter signal changed to a red display before the downstream queue extends to or across the railroad tracks. The queue cutter will also change to red as soon as notice of an approaching train detected by the track circuitry, even if the railroad warning devices have not begun to activate (advance preemption). This prevents additional traffic from crossing the tracks and adding to the queue of vehicles that need to be cleared.

The queue cutter signal will remain red until the train passes and the preemption call is released or when the vehicle detectors no longer detect a steady queue. In some cases, the queue cutter signal may be interconnected to the downstream signal. This has several advantages. When the downstream signal turns green, the queue cutter may also release to green, allowing traffic to enter the throat knowing that the downstream signal is green and not likely to immediately queue. By changing to green simultaneously with the downstream signal and not as soon as the queue detector loops are clear, it prevents a situation where the loops may initially clear and think the queue has released, but the addition of one vehicle to the queue would reactivate the queue cutter signal to turn red, potentially leading to quick cycles that can be confusing and frustrating to motorists.

Reference: "Preemption of Traffic Signals Near Railroad Crossings - An ITE Recommended Practice," 2020

Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 9 OF 10

2021-07

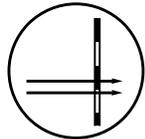
Queue Cutter

RAIL PREEMPT PHASES
(High Priority)

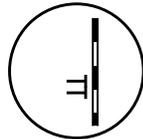
QUEUE PREEMPT PHASES
(Medium Priority)

SIGNAL FACE	PHASE			
	Ø 2	P R R 1	P R R 2	F L A S H I N G
21, 22	↑	R	R	R

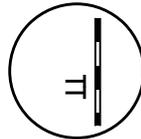
- Ⓐ "STOP HERE ON RED" Sign (R10-6)
- Ⓑ "DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS" Sign (R8-8)
- * Ⓒ "STOP HERE WHEN FLASHING" Sign (R8-10)
- * Optional



2

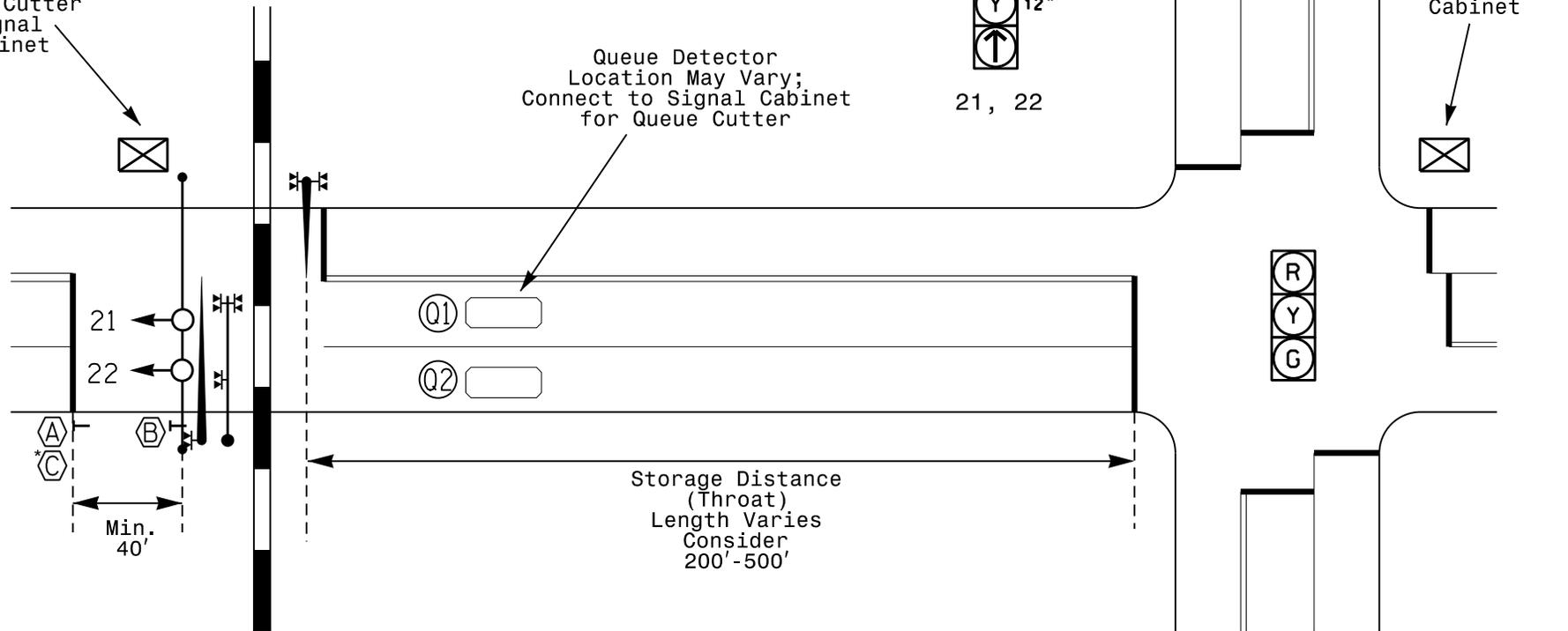


PRE 1



PRE 2

Queue Cutter
Signal
Cabinet



Railroad Preemption: Use of Signal Heads and Blankout Signs

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.3

SHEET 10 OF 10

2021-07

Use of Railroad Preemption

A traffic signal should be interconnected to allow for railroad preemption when a highway-railroad grade crossing with active warning devices (at least flashing lights) exists within 200 feet on at least one of the approaches to a signalized intersection. Preemption or other mitigation should also be considered if there is potential for regular queuing from the intersection to extend close to or beyond the adjacent railroad grade crossing(s).

Blankout Signs

A blankout sign is used to reinforce a temporary turn restriction that is in place to the presence of a train. It is normally used for permissive turning movements or when a CIRCULAR indication is displayed during preemption. It is not used in conjunction with a (right or left) RED ARROW display. While a CIRCULAR GREEN indication may be displayed for a movement parallel to the railroad tracks, a "NO RIGHT TURN- TRAIN" blankout sign may be mounted next to the right most signal head to indicate that a right turn should not be made despite the green indication. If there is separate right turn signal head controlling a right turn across the tracks, a blankout sign should also be used with the CIRCULAR RED indication, unless a full time "NO TURN ON RED" sign is posted at the intersection.

The blankout sign is wired to the preempt box in the cabinet. A blankout sign shall illuminate as soon as the railroad preemption call is received and activated, usually during the 1 second Min Green. The sign shall remain on until the beginning of the exit interval, which is the green indication for the exit phase. Blankout signs should also be active while the signal is in a (programmed or failure) flashing mode operation.

Clearance Overlap /Clearance Phase

An active railroad grade crossing system includes flashing horizontal (wig-wag) red lights and may also include warning gates. While there is variability in normal signal phasing operation, it is imperative that there be some consistency in the traffic signal operation of the Railroad Preemption and Track Clearance sequence relative to the operation of the active railroad grade crossing warning system. In order to ensure consistency in the operation of the traffic signal preemption sequence relative to the operation of the railroad active warning system, an overlap phase for all normal phases should be used in the traffic signal controller. This overlap phase is a background timer that operates during all normal phases but must be cleared before the preemption sequence can begin. It ensures that the entire time designed for the preemption sequence is used, even if the signal may otherwise enter the preemption sequence sooner than normally intended. It is intended to make sure that the Track Clearance Green Phase does not begin timing early or terminate until after the entrance gates for the railroad crossing are horizontal. For example, if phases 3+8 are track clearance phases and the controller is already serving 3+8, the overlap phase must clear out before the Track Clear Green time can begin counting.

Railroad Preemption

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.4

SHEET 1 OF 3

2024-05

Simultaneous Preemption

Simultaneous Preemption is when the Traffic Signal begins the transition to the Preemption sequence at the same time the railroad active warning devices begin to activate in advance of an approaching train. It is typically used when the railroad provides only motion detection or presence detection of a train within the approach or island circuit.

For Simultaneous Preemption, the Track Clearance Green time is the same time provided by Greenshield's Formula, with a typical minimum of 12 seconds used. Simultaneous Preemption is recommended for locations where there is little to no storage room to queue vehicles between the intersection and the tracks and the vehicles approaching the intersection stop prior to the railroad crossing for the intersection traffic signal.

Advance Preemption

Advance Preemption is when the Traffic Signal begins the transition to the Preemption sequence before the railroad active warning devices begin to activate in advance of an approaching train. The time difference between beginning of the traffic signal preemption sequence and the activation of the railroad active warning devices (flashing lights) is known as the Advance Preemption Time. This time is usually determined by the railroad, but a time of 6-8 seconds is desired. Advance Preemption is typically used for crossings with long storage throats between the tracks and the intersection, or where a pre-signal may be used to help control traffic at the railroad grade crossing. A railroad must use a predictor (constant warning time) at a grade crossing to provide Advance Preemption.

Railroads are required to provide a minimum of 20 seconds (Minimum Warning Time or MWT) of warning time in advance of a train. While some railroads may provide warning longer times, most do not want to operate their devices for more than 35-40 seconds prior to the train arrival at a grade crossing. This offset between the time required for a traffic signal (Maximum Preemption Warning Time or MPWT) and the MWT creates the advance preemption time. A goal of advance preemption is to begin a Track Clearance Green display at the same time railroad warning devices begin to activate.

Due to the initial offset between the beginning of the Track Clearance phase and the activation of the warning devices, it may be necessary to add additional time to the Track Clearance Green (TCG) time to ensure that the railroad warning gates are fully horizontal and blocking the crossing prior to the termination of the Track Clearance Green. This additional time normally involves adding the Right of Way Transfer Time (RWTT) into the Track Clear Green, which accounts for initial offset between the beginning of traffic signal preemption and the activation of the railroad warning devices. Additional time adjustments may be needed based on the individual characteristics of the crossing and/or the use of a pre-signal.

Railroad Preemption

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.4

SHEET 2 OF 3

2021-07

Advance Preemption: Overlap P

As discussed above, an overlap phase must be used with advance preemption to ensure that the traffic signal preemption sequence operates in sync with the railroad warning devices. This will ensure that the Track Clearance Green phase does not begin or terminate earlier than intended. For OASIS and ASC/3 software, this overlap phase is known as Overlap P. Overlap P is not actually displayed on any signal heads, but serves as a background timer for all normal phases that must clear before the Track Clear Green time can begin counting. To program Overlap P, enter the highest Yellow Change and Red Clearance times of all nonclearance phases in normal operation. The Yellow and Red may come from different phases. For OASIS, the controller will actually count these times. For ASC/3, the controller will actually count the lower of the programmed time or the actual phase times. Notes 77B or 77C may also be needed on the signal plan.

Preemption with MAXTIME – Phases 39 and 40

When Railroad Preemption is used with MAXTIME, Phases 39 and 40 should be used to ensure proper preemption operation. Phase 39 is programmed as a Track Clearance Phase, in addition to the regular phase(s) that would otherwise be used for Track Clearance, and Phase 40 serves as the background timer. Note 77A is required. Programming is shown below. Phases 39 and 40 should be used for all railroad preemptions, but it is critical for safe operation with Advance Preemption.

MAXTIME TIMING CHART		
FEATURE	PHASE	
	39	40
Walk *		
Ped Clear		
Min Green *		
Passage *		
Max 1 *		
Yellow Change	4.2 ●	4.9 ●
Red Clear	1.3 ●	2.4 ●
Added Initial *		
Maximum Initial *		
Time Before Reduction *		
Time To Reduce *		
Minimum Gap		
Advance Walk *		
Non Lock Detector		
Vehicle Recall		MIN RECALL ●
Dual Entry		

All other entries are not used and should be shaded out.

Times for Phase 39 Yellow Change and Red Clear should be the same times as the Track Yellow Change and Track Red Clear times programmed in the Railroad Preemption chart. They should also mirror the similar phases used in normal operation. The controller will serve these times during preempt sequence.

Phase 40 Yellow Change should be the same as the Enter Yellow Change time programmed in the Railroad Preemption chart. This should also represent the highest Yellow Change time for all phases in normal operation that are not otherwise used for Track Clearance (nonclearance phase).

Phase 40 Red Clear should be the same as the Enter Red Clear time programmed in the Railroad Preemption chart. This should also represent the highest Red Clear time for all phases in normal operation that are not otherwise used for Track Clearance (nonclearance phase). The Red Clear Time for Phase 40 may be from a different phase than was used to determine the highest Yellow Change.

All other entries are not used and should be shaded out.

Program Phase 40 for MIN RECALL.

* These values may be field adjusted. Do not adjust Min Green and Extension times for phases 2 and 6 lower than what is shown. Min Green for all other phases should not be lower than 4 seconds.

Railroad Preemption

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.4

SHEET 3 OF 3

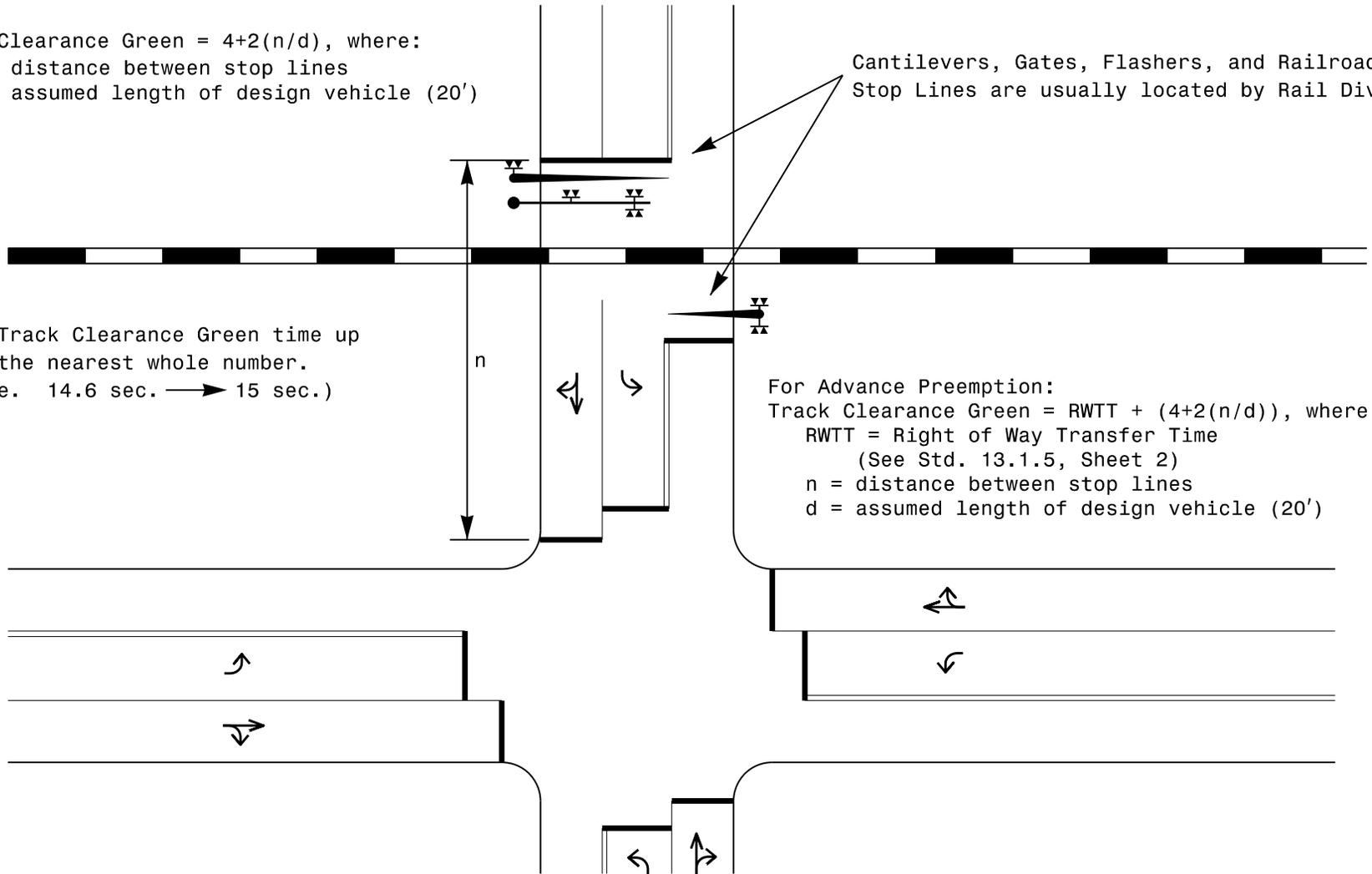
2024-10

Track Clearance Phase Times

Greenshield's Formula:

Track Clearance Green = $4 + 2(n/d)$, where:
 n = distance between stop lines
 d = assumed length of design vehicle (20')

Round Track Clearance Green time up to the nearest whole number.
 (i.e. 14.6 sec. → 15 sec.)



For Advance Preemption:
 Track Clearance Green = $RWTT + (4 + 2(n/d))$, where:
 RWTT = Right of Way Transfer Time
 (See Std. 13.1.5, Sheet 2)
 n = distance between stop lines
 d = assumed length of design vehicle (20')

Railroad Preemption Timing

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

13.1.5

SHEET 1 OF 2

2021-07

Elements for Calculating Maximum Preemption Warning Time (MPWT)

Right of Way Transfer Time (RWTT)	{	Delay Before Preempt Ped Clear Before Preempt * Min Green Before Preempt # Yellow Change Before Preempt * # Red Clear Before Preempt Track Clear Green
May Overlap w/ Train Arrival if Long Storage Throat	{	Track Clear Yellow ** Track Clear Red ** OR Time for Exit Gates ** Safety Equipment Reaction Time (Usually 5 Seconds)

Add the above to find the Maximum Preemption Warning Time (MPWT) needed to clear signal for preemption and request this time from Rail Division.

* These values may clear simultaneously with some types of traffic signal software.

Values associated with Overlap P or Phase 39.

** If 4 quadrant (exit) gates are used, do not include Track Clear Yellow and Track Clear Red times in this equation. Instead add:

12 Seconds for exit gates to descend to horizontal position.

5 seconds (exit gates should be horizontal 5 seconds prior to train arrival).

Elements on a Signal Plan with Railroad Preemption

- AAR DOT Crossing Number and Name of operating Railroad(s).
- Show all gates, flashers, and cantilevers on signal plan.
- Railroad Preemption Timing Chart for software used with appropriate times entered, including for Overlap P.
- Show if traffic signal is designed for Simultaneous or Advanced Preemption.
- Use Phases 39 and 40 with Advance Preemption for MAXTIME.
- Show Railroad Preemption Phasing Diagram(s), including Track Clearance Phase and all Dwell phases. If Alternate Phasing is used during normal operation, multiple preemption diagrams may be needed.
- Railroad Preemption should have priority over Emergency Vehicle Preemption and most other types of preemptions.
- Show "NO RIGHT (LEFT) TURN" L.E.D. Blankout signs as needed in Table of Operation. Illuminate blankout signs during track clearance and all preempt Dwell (hold) phases.
- Include note for blankout sign operation during flash mode.
- When entering the preemption sequence, yellow traps are permitted if necessary to provide immediate track clearance. Use a flashing YELLOW ARROW or an "ONCOMING TRAFFIC MAY HAVE EXTENDED GREEN" (W25-2) sign on the approach(es) if necessary to mitigate a potential yellow trap.
- Use a "DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS" sign (R8-8) on approach crossing tracks leading to signal (add any other time there is potential for traffic to queue across tracks).
- Use a "STOP HERE ON RED" sign (R10-6) if traffic is to stop prior to tracks for a signal or pre-signal. A "NO TURN ON RED" (R10-11) sign may also be required.
- All Red flash should allow a right of way for queued vehicles on the tracks to clear in the event preempt is inactive due to flashing operation of signal.
- An exit phase should be designated upon leaving Railroad Preemption. Typically, exit to the primary phase that was unable to move due to the presence of a train.

Railroad Preemption Timing

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

2024-05

STD. NO.

13.1.5

SHEET 2 OF 2

Bicycle Signals

Bicycle signal heads are used to provide separate control of bicyclist movements from a designated bicycle lane or separate facility, such as a shared use path. When used, they should meet the following guidelines:

R



Y



NOTE: The bottom display of the bicycle signal above is Green, even though the cell does not specifically designate as such.

- At least two 3-section bicycle signal heads shall be displayed per approach.
- If used where motor vehicle traffic can make the same movements as bicyclists, a bicycle signal face should only be used if the bicyclist movement controlled by the bicycle signal face is sometimes allowed to proceed or sometimes required to stop at times when motor vehicle traffic, making the same movement and controlled by other vehicular signal faces, is required to stop or allowed to proceed, respectively.
- Bicycle signal faces shall not be used for controlling any bicyclist movement that is sharing an approach lane with motor vehicle traffic.
- Bicycle signal faces shall not be used in any manner with respect to the design and operation of a hybrid beacon.
- GREEN and YELLOW BICYCLE indications shall not be in conflict with any simultaneous vehicle movements, including any turns on red.
- Bicycle signal faces shall consist of all bicycle symbol signal indications. CIRCULAR or ARROW signal indications shall not be used in a bicycle signal face.
- A 4" display may only be used for a near side, post-mounted supplemental bicycle signal face.
- A Bicycle signal sign ((R10-40, R10-40a, R10-41, R10-41a, or R10-41b) shall be displayed adjacent to each bicycle signal head, except a near side 4" supplemental signal face.

Reference: Chapter 4H, 2023 MUTCD.

Bicycle Signals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

14.0

SHEET 1 OF 2

2024-05

Standard Signal Face Clearance Chart

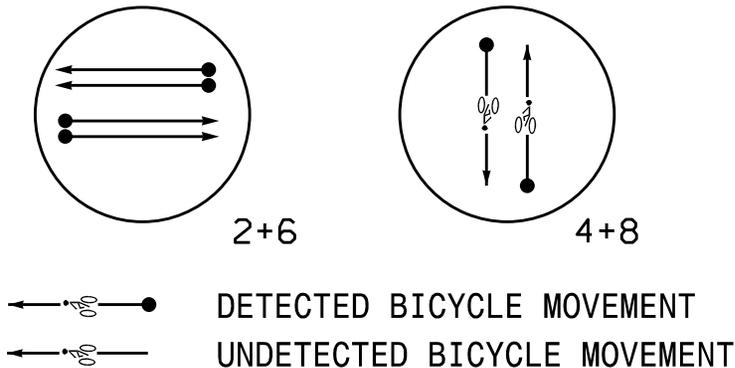
The Bicycle Signal displays are included in the Standard Signal Face Clearance standard included in the 2024 NCDOT Standard Drawings. There is no need to have a separate Clearance chart specifically for bicycle signal displays.

Bicycle Signal Face Clearance Times

The clearance times for Bicycle Signal displays are the same as standard vehicle signals. The design speed for bicycle signal clearance is 10 MPH. The minimum yellow change interval for a bicycle signal phase should be 3 seconds. The function of the yellow change interval is to warn bicyclists their right way (GREEN) is being terminated and they need to prepare to Stop. Providing clearance time to travel through the intersection or conflict area is the purpose of the red clearance interval. A red clearance interval should above 6 seconds may require a Stakeholder discussion, as discussed in Section 5.

Clearance times for bicycles are only calculated when bicycle signals are used as independent phase; they are not calculated when bicycles move concurrently with vehicles during a phase, whether in a shared lane or a designated bicycle lane, and the bicycles must obey the vehicle signal heads.

Phasing Diagram



When exclusive bicycle movements or phases are provided at an intersection, the movements need to be shown in the phasing diagram. For a bicycle, the symbol is a solid line with an arrow for the direction of travel and a bicycle symbol in the middle of the line. This symbol should only be used if the movement is exclusive to the bicycle during the phase and bicycle signals are used. It is not needed if the bicycle shares the same movements as vehicle or pedestrian traffic, whether via a separate or shared lane. The symbol should also be part of the Phasing Diagram Legend.

Reference: Chapter 4H, 2023 MUTCD.

Bicycle Signals

SIGNAL DESIGN SECTION
 TRANSPORTATION MOBILITY AND SAFETY DIVISION
 NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

STD. NO.

14.0

SHEET 2 OF 2

2024-05